



Operator's Manual

HDO6000B
High Definition
Oscilloscopes



HDO6000B High Definition Oscilloscopes Operator's Manual

© 2024 Teledyne LeCroy, Inc. All rights reserved.

This document does not contain export-controlled information.

Unauthorized duplication or resale of Teledyne LeCroy publications is strictly prohibited. Customers are permitted to duplicate and distribute Teledyne LeCroy, Inc. documentation for internal educational purposes only.

Teledyne LeCroy is a trademark of Teledyne LeCroy, Inc., Inc. Other product or brand names are trademarks or requested trademarks of their respective holders. Information in this publication supersedes all earlier versions. Specifications are subject to change without notice.

October 2024

hdo6000b-om-eng.pdf

Contents

Safety	1
Symbols	1
Precautions	1
Operating Environment	2
Measuring Terminal Ratings (C1-C4 and Ext)	2
Clearance and Ventilation	2
Power	2
Oscilloscope Overview and Set Up	3
Front of Oscilloscope	3
Side of Oscilloscope	4
Back of Oscilloscope	5
Front Panel	6
Signal Interfaces	8
Powering the Oscilloscope	10
Connecting to Other Devices/Systems	10
Using MAUI	12
MAUI Application	12
Touch Screen	13
Controlling Traces	19
MAUI with OneTouch	24
Waveform Acquisition	30
Auto Setup	30
Vertical	30
Digital (Mixed-Signal)	35
Timebase	39
Trigger	46
Viewing Acquisition Status	68
Display	69
Display Set Up	69
Q-Scape Display	71
Persistence Display	73
Math and Measure	75
Zooming	75
Cursors	79
Measure	83
Math	114
Memories	141
Saving Memories	141
Restoring Memories	142
Analysis Tools	143
WaveScan	143
PASS/FAIL Testing	149
CustomDSO Setups/Controls	153

Save/Recall Data (File Menu)	161
Save	161
Recall	171
LabNotebook	173
Report Generator	177
Print	178
File Sharing Dialog (send email)	179
Email & Report Settings	179
Using the File Browser	180
Utilities & Preferences	182
Utilities	182
Preferences	187
Disk Utilities	193
Digital Voltmeter	194
WaveSource Arbitrary Function Generator	196
Maintenance	198
Cleaning	198
Restart/Reboot Instrument	198
Restore Default Setup	198
Changing Screen Settings	198
Touch Screen Calibration	199
Switching Windows Users	199
MAUI Firmware Update	199
Windows 10 External Display Setup	201
Windows 10 File Management	202
Oscilloscope System Recovery	203
Returning a Product for Service	208
Technical Support	209
Certifications	210
Index	213

About This Manual

Thank you for purchasing a Teledyne LeCroy oscilloscope. We're certain you'll be pleased with the detailed features unique to our instruments.

This manual shows the HDO6000B, although much of it could be applied to earlier instruments in the series. With the introduction of later versions of the 64-bit MAUI® software, particularly version 8.3 and later, the graphical user interface on some instruments looked very different from what was offered on earlier instruments and included different touch screen capabilities. Despite the difference in appearance, however, the functionality is the same unless otherwise stated. Where there are differences or limitations in capabilities, these are explained in the text.

Documentation for implementing COM Automation and remote control, and for using optional software packages sold for Teledyne LeCroy instruments such as decoders and Serial Data Analysis software, can be downloaded from our free technical library at: teledynelecroy.com/support/techlib

Our website maintains the most current product specifications and should be checked for updates. Detailed specifications are listed on the product datasheet.



Note: Specifications are subject to change without notice.

Safety

Symbols

These symbols appear on the instrument or in documentation to alert you to important safety concerns:



Caution of potential damage to instrument or **Warning** of potential bodily injury. Refer to manual. Do not proceed until the information is fully understood and conditions are met.



Warning, risk of electric shock or burn.



Caution, contains parts/assemblies susceptible to damage by Electrostatic Discharge (ESD).



Frame or chassis terminal (ground connection).



Alternating current.



Standby power (front of instrument).

Precautions

Observe generally accepted safety procedures in addition to the precautions listed here. **The overall safety of any system incorporating this product is the responsibility of the assembler of the system.**

Use proper power cord. Use only the power cord shipped with the instrument and certified for the country of use.

Maintain ground. The AC inlet ground is connected directly to the chassis of the instrument. To avoid electric shock, connect only to a mating outlet with a safety ground contact.



Caution: Interrupting the protective conductor inside or outside the oscilloscope, or disconnecting the safety ground terminal, creates a hazardous situation. Intentional interruption is prohibited.

Connect and disconnect properly. Do not connect/disconnect probes, test leads, or cables while they are connected to a live voltage source.

Observe all terminal ratings. Do not apply a voltage to any input that exceeds the maximum rating of that input. Refer to the marking next to the terminals for maximum allowed values.

Use indoors only within the operational environment listed. Do not use in wet or explosive atmospheres.

Keep product surfaces clean and dry. See [Cleaning](#).

Do not block the cooling vents. Leave a minimum six-inch (15 cm) gap between the instrument and the nearest object. Keep the underside clear of papers and other objects.

Exercise care when lifting and carrying. Unplug the instrument to move it. Use the built-in carrying handle.

Do not remove the covers or inside parts. Refer all maintenance to qualified service personnel.

Do not operate with suspected failures. Check body and cables regularly. If any part is damaged, cease operation immediately and secure the instrument from inadvertent use.

Operating Environment

Temperature:	5 °C to 40 °C
Humidity:	Maximum relative humidity (RH) 90% up to 31 °C, decreasing linearly to 50% relative humidity at 40 °C
Altitude:	Up to 10,000 ft (3,048 m) at or below 30 °C

Measuring Terminal Ratings (C1-C4 and Ext)

Maximum Input Voltage:	50 Ω coupling \leq 5 Vrms
	1 M Ω coupling \leq 400 Vpk max. (Peak AC \leq 10 kHz + DC) derating at 15 dB/decade from 10 kHz to 1.6 MHz, 10 Vpk max.above 1.6 MHz



Caution: Measuring terminals have no rated measurement category per IEC/EN 61010-1:2010. Measuring terminals are not intended to be connected directly to supply mains.

Clearance and Ventilation

The instrument relies on forced air cooling with internal fans and vents. The internal fan control circuitry regulates the fan speed based on the ambient temperature. This is performed automatically after start-up.



Caution: Do not block the cooling vents.

Take care to avoid restricting the airflow to any part. In a benchtop configuration, leave a minimum of 15 cm (6 inches) around the sides between the instrument and the nearest object. The feet provide adequate bottom clearance. Follow rackmount instructions for proper rack spacing.

Power

The instrument automatically adapts to the line voltage; manual voltage selection is not required.

AC Power Source:	100-240 VAC (\pm 10%) at 50/60/400 Hz (\pm 5%)
	Automatic AC voltage selection
Maximum Consumption:*	320 W (320 VA)
Nominal Consumption:	220 W (220 VA)
Standby Consumption:	4 W

* All PC peripherals and active probes installed on four channels.

The provided power cords mate to a compatible power inlet on the instrument for making line voltage and safety ground connections. The AC inlet ground is connected directly to the chassis of the instrument. For adequate protection against electric shock, connect to a mating outlet with a safety ground contact.

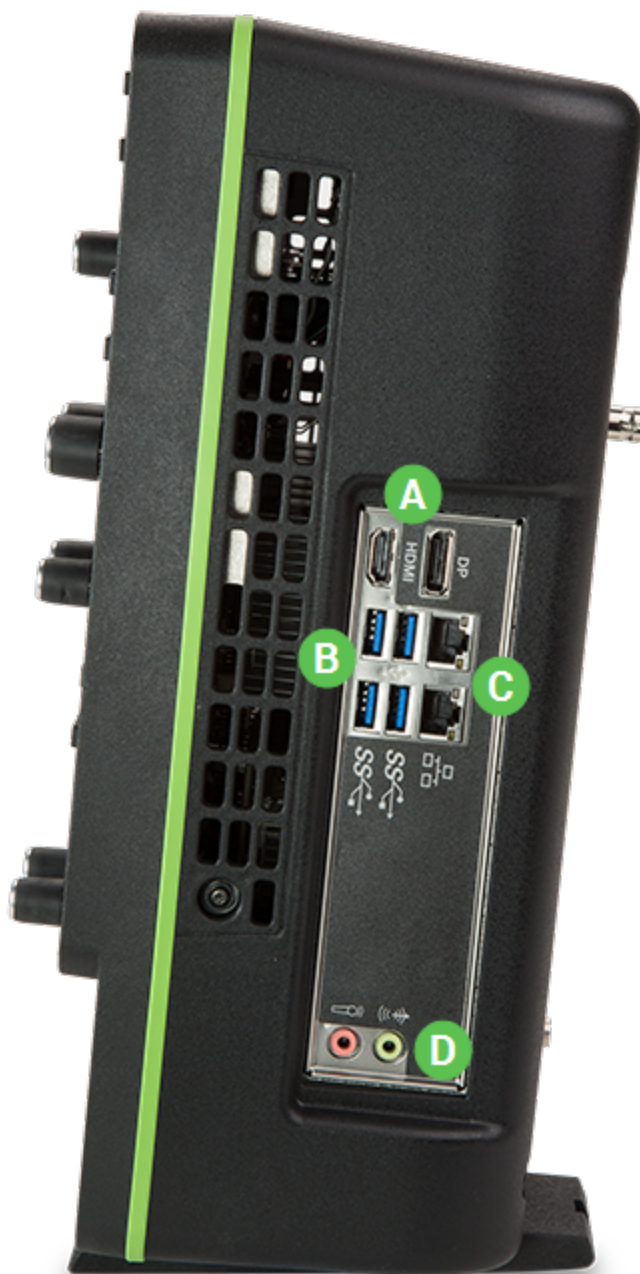
Oscilloscope Overview and Set Up

Front of Oscilloscope



- A. Touch Screen display
- B. Front Panel controls
- C. Standby Power button
- D. ProBus analog inputs (4)
- E. External trigger input
- F. Mixed Signal interface
- G. Ground and Cal Out terminals
- H. USB 3.1 ports (2)
- I. Tilting feet

Side of Oscilloscope



A. HDMI and DisplayPort
to external monitors

B. USB 3.1 Gen1 Ports (4)

C. Ethernet Ports (2)

D. Mic In and Speaker Out

Back of Oscilloscope



- | | |
|--------------------------------|--|
| A. Built-in carrying handle | E. 10 MHz Ref In / Out for reference clock |
| B. WaveSource output | F. USBTMC Port |
| C. Removable solid state drive | G. AC power inlet |
| D. Aux output | |

Front Panel



Front panel controls duplicate functionality available through the touch screen and are described here only briefly.

Knobs on the front panel function one way if turned and another if pushed like a button. The first label describes the knob's "turn" action, the second label its "push" action. Actions performed from the front panel always apply to the active trace.

Many buttons light to show the active traces and functions.

Trigger Controls

The front panel **Level knob** changes the trigger threshold level (V). The current value is shown on the Trigger descriptor box. Pushing the knob sets the trigger level to the 50% point of the input signal.

The **READY** indicator is lit when the trigger is armed. **TRIG'D** is lit momentarily when a trigger occurs.

Setup opens the Trigger Setup dialog. Press it again to close the dialog.

Auto sets Auto mode, which triggers the oscilloscope after a set time, even if the trigger conditions are not met.

Normal sets Normal mode, which triggers the oscilloscope each time a signal is present that meets the trigger conditions.

Single sets Single trigger mode. The first press readies the oscilloscope to trigger. The second press arms and triggers the oscilloscope once (single-shot acquisition) when the input signal meets the trigger conditions.

Stop prevents the oscilloscope from triggering. If you boot up the instrument with the trigger in **Stop** mode, a "No trace available" message is shown. Press the Auto button to display a trace.

Horizontal Controls

Turn the **Delay knob** to change the Trigger Delay value (S). Push the knob to reset Delay to zero.

If the trace source is an input channel, turn the **Horizontal Adjust knob** to set the Time/division (S) of the oscilloscope acquisition system. The value is shown on the Timebase descriptor box. When using this control, the oscilloscope allocates memory as needed to maintain the highest sample rate possible for the timebase setting. If the active trace is a math, zoom or memory, use this knob to change the Horizontal Scale, effectively "zooming" in or out. The value is shown on the corresponding descriptor box. Push the knob to adjust scale in fine increments; push it again to return to stepped increments.

Vertical Controls

The **Offset knob** adjusts the zero level of the trace (this makes it appear to move up or down relative to the center axis of the grid). The value appears on the trace descriptor box. Push it to reset Offset to zero.

The **Vertical Adjust knob** sets Vertical Gain (V/div) for channel traces or Vertical Scale for math, zoom and memory traces. The value appears on the trace descriptor box. Push the knob to toggle between fine and stepped increments.

The **Channel buttons** (1-4) turn on a channel that is off, or activate a channel that is already on. When the channel is active, pushing its channel button turns it off. A lit button shows the active channel.

The **Zoom (Z) button** creates a Quick Zoom of each open trace. The resulting zoom traces are 1/10 of the source channel scale and centered on the display. Use the Horizontal knobs to adjust this, or touch the zoom descriptor box twice to display the zoom dialog controls. Touch the Zoom button again to turn off the zooms.

The **Digital (D) button** enables digital input on -MS models.

Math, Zoom, and Mem Indicators

These LEDs light to indicate when a type of trace other than an input channel is currently active and controllable using the Front Panel. Touch the trace descriptor box to make a trace active and controllable.

Cursor Controls

Cursors identify specific voltage and time values on the waveform. The white cursor markers help make these points more visible, as well as provide a simple way to reposition them. A readout of the Vertical values appears on the trace descriptor box, while the Horizontal values appear below the Timebase descriptor box.

There are five preset cursor types, each with a unique appearance on the display. These are described in more detail in the [Cursors](#) section.

Press the **Cursor Type** button to apply or remove cursors. Continue pressing to cycle through all cursor types until the desired type is found ("Off" occurs when no cursors are visible).

Turn the **Coarse** knob to adjust the position of absolute cursors (dashed-dotted lines). Push it to return the cursor to the default 2.5 division setting. If you're using the Both Rel cursor type, each push will toggle between the Horizontal and Vertical absolute cursors. With the correct cursor selected (highlighted), turn the knob to adjust the position.

Turn the **Fine** knob to adjust the position of relative cursors (dashed lines). Push it to return the cursor to the default 7.5 division setting, or to select the other relative cursor when using the Both Rel cursor type.

When a numeric value field is selected, these knobs serve as the **Adjust knobs**. Turn the Coarse knob to make large-increment adjustments; turn the Fine knob to make small-increment adjustments. Push either knob to return to the default setting.

When a waveform trace is selected (by touching the descriptor box or the trace itself), these knobs increase/decrease trace intensity.

Miscellaneous Controls

These miscellaneous controls also appear along the top and bottom rows of the front panel.

Auto Setup performs an [Auto Setup](#). After the first press, you will be prompted for a confirmation. Press the button again or use the touch screen to confirm.

Default Setup resets the oscilloscope to the factory default configuration. After the first press, you will be prompted for a confirmation. Press the button again or use the touch screen to confirm.

Clear Sweeps resets the acquisition counter and any cumulative measurements.

Touch Screen toggles on/off touch screen functionality.

Save performs whatever action was last selected on the [Save dialog](#): save a LabNotebook, screen image, setup or waveform file.

User can be configured as you choose, for example:

- To save a screen capture using your current [Screen Image Preferences](#).
- To save other file types: LabNotebooks, setup or waveforms.

See [Configuring the User Button](#) for instructions on making the selection.

Signal Interfaces

Teledyne LeCroy instruments offer a variety of interfaces to input analog or digital signals. See the oscilloscope product page at teledynelecroy.com for a list of compatible input devices.

ProBus Interface

C1-C4 utilize the ProBus interface.

The ProBus interface contains a 6-pin power and communication connection and a BNC signal connection to the probe, with sense rings for detecting passive probes. It offers both 50 Ω and 1 M Ω input impedance, enabling it to provide power and control for a wide range of probes such as high impedance passive probes, high impedance active probes, current probes, high voltage probes, and differential probes.

The ProBus interface completely integrates the probe with the channel. Upon connecting a Teledyne LeCroy probe, the probe type is recognized and some setup information, such as input coupling and attenuation, is performed automatically. This information is displayed on the Probe Dialog, behind the Channel (Cn) dialog. System (probe plus instrument) gain settings are automatically calculated and displayed based on the probe attenuation.

The ProBus interface may have a BNC-terminated cable connected directly to it. Depending on the BNC connector used on the cable, the interface is rated for up to 2 GHz with 50 Ω coupling or 1 GHz with 1 M Ω coupling.



Note: Operational bandwidth is equal to the maximum input frequency of your oscilloscope model. See the product datasheet.

Other Analog Inputs

EXT In can be used to input an external trigger pulse or sample clock signal.

REF In can be used to input an external reference clock signal.

These inputs have a simple BNC interface with no power supply. See your product datasheet for voltage and frequency ratings.

Mixed Signal Inputs

Digital Leadset

The digital leadset shipped with the -MS model oscilloscopes connects to the Mixed Signal Input on the front of the oscilloscope to input of up-to-16 lines of digital data. Physical lines can be preconfigured into different logical groups, DigitalIn, corresponding to a bus and renamed appropriately depending on the group. The transitions for each line may be viewed through different displays.

See [Connecting the Digital Leadset](#) for instructions.

Probes

The oscilloscope is compatible with the included passive probes and most Teledyne LeCroy active probes that are rated for the instrument's bandwidth. Probe specifications and documentation are available at teledynelecroy.com/probes.

Passive Probes

The passive probes supplied are matched to the input impedance of the instrument but may need further compensation. Follow the directions in the probe instruction manual to compensate the frequency response of the probes.

If using other passive probes than those supplied, be sure to perform a low frequency calibration before using them to measure signal. You can use the signal from the Cal Out hook on the front of the oscilloscope.


Active Probes

Teledyne LeCroy offers a variety of active probes for use with your oscilloscope. Most active probes match probe to oscilloscope response automatically using probe response data stored in an on-board EEPROM. This ensures the best possible combined probe plus oscilloscope channel frequency response without the need to perform any de-embedding procedure.

Be aware that many active probes require a minimum oscilloscope firmware version to be fully operational. See the probe documentation.

Powering the Oscilloscope

Power On

Press the **Power /Standby** button  on the front to turn on the instrument. The button will light to show the oscilloscope is operational.



Caution: Do not power on or calibrate with a signal attached.

If the button is not easily accessible (e.g., in a rackmount), you can go to **Utilities > Preferences** and enable **Power on AC**. Then, the instrument will start whenever the AC power supply is turned on.

Powering on will automatically start all services and load the oscilloscope application software. After a 20 min. warm up and calibration period, the oscilloscope will be fully operational.

Power Off/Standby

Briefly press the Power button again or use the **File > Shutdown** menu option to execute a proper shut down and preserve settings. Holding the Power button will execute a "hard" shut down (as on a computer), but we do not recommend doing this because it does not allow the operating system to close properly, and setup data may be lost.



Caution: Except for emergencies, never power off by pulling the power cord or turning off the AC supply without first shutting down the oscilloscope application properly.

The Power button does not disconnect the instrument from the AC power supply but puts it into "Standby" mode. Some housekeeping circuitry continues to draw power. Only unplugging the power cord fully disconnects the instrument from the power source. We recommend unplugging the instrument if it will remain unused for a long period of time.



Caution: Do not change the instrument's Windows® Power Options setting from the default Never to System Standby or System Hibernate. Doing so can cause the system to fail.

Connecting to Other Devices/Systems

LAN

The instrument is preset to accept a DHCP network address over a TCP/IP connection. Connect a cable from an Ethernet (LAN) port to a network access device. Go to **Utilities > Utilities Setup > Remote** to find the IP address.

To assign a static IP address, choose Net Connections from the Remote dialog. Use the standard Windows networking dialogs to configure the device address.

Choose **File > File Sharing** and open the Email & Report Settings dialog to [configure email settings](#).

Audio/USB Peripherals

Connect the device to the appropriate port on the instrument. These connections are "plug-and-play" and do not require any additional configuration.

Printer

MAUI oscilloscopes support USB printers compatible with the instrument's Windows OS. Go to **File > Print Setup** to configure printer settings. Select Properties to open the Windows Print dialog.

External Monitor

You may operate the instrument using the built-in touch screen or attach an external monitor for extended desktop operation. See your product datasheet for the supported monitor resolution.

Connect the monitor cable to a video output on the instrument. You can use an adaptor if the monitor cable has a different interface. Go to **Display > Display Setup > Open Monitor Control Panel** to configure the display. Be sure to select the instrument as the primary display.

To use the Extend Grids feature, configure the second monitor to extend, not duplicate, the oscilloscope display. If the external monitor is touch screen enabled, the MAUI user interface can be controlled through touch on the external monitor as well as the oscilloscope. See [Windows 10 External Display Setup](#) for additional instructions on setting up external monitors with Windows 10 oscilloscopes.

Remote Control

Go to **Utilities > Utilities Setup > Remote** to [configure remote control](#). Connect the oscilloscope to the network/controller using the cable type required by your selection.

- VICP(TCP/IP) and VXI-11(LXI) over Ethernet are supported standard, as is USBTMC.
- GPIB is supported with the use of the optional USB-GPIB adapter.



Note: Choose TCP/IP for remote control using MAUI Studio Pro. You can make the Ethernet connection over a LAN or connect directly to the MAUI Studio host PC.

Sample Clock

To input an external sample clock signal, connect a BNC cable from the EXT input to the other instrument. Go to **Timebase > Horizontal Setup > Clock Source** to [configure the clock](#).

Reference Clock

To input/output a reference clock signal, connect a BNC cable from the Ref In/Out connector to the other instrument. Go to **Timebase > Horizontal Setup > Clock Source** to configure the clock.

Auxiliary Output

To output signal to another instrument, connect a BNC cable from Aux Out to the other device. Go to **Utilities > Utilities Setup > Aux Output** to [configure the output](#).

Using MAUI

MAUI (Most Advanced User Interface) is Teledyne LeCroy's unique oscilloscope user interface. MAUI provides an extensible front-end to the MAUI oscilloscope application, integrating software options into a single application that can be controlled using the latest Windows touch screen features.

MAUI Application

MAUI forms the front-end of Teledyne LeCroy oscilloscopes, providing a single interface for all standard and optional oscilloscope applications. MAUI runs on the Microsoft Windows platform.

The oscilloscope firmware and standard applications are active upon delivery. At power-up, the instrument loads the software automatically. Free updates are available periodically from the software download page of our website at teledynelecroy.com. Go to Oscilloscope Downloads > Firmware Upgrade. Follow the instructions in [Firmware Update](#) to download and install the software.

When you purchase an option, you will receive a license key via email that activates the optional features. See [Options](#) for instructions on activating optional software packages.

Automation

The MAUI application is a COM Automation server. All the configurable application objects that are presented through MAUI can be controlled using COM Automation strings embedded in remote control scripts. See the [MAUI Oscilloscopes Remote Control and Automation Manual](#) for instructions.

Besides reading waveform and measurement data from the oscilloscope, a common use of Automation is the creation of remote setup files. In fact, MAUI provides a simple way to [save any oscilloscope configuration](#) to a LeCroy System Setup (.LSS) file, which is nothing more than a COM Automation program written in VB Script, ready to restore the entire saved configuration when executed.

Further customization, such as the introduction of custom math or measurement processors into MAUI, can be performed on oscilloscopes equipped with the [CustomDSO](#) (XDEV) option. See our website for examples.

Volatile vs. Non-Volatile Settings

Most of the oscilloscope settings are volatile, meaning they will automatically revert to the factory default whenever the oscilloscope is rebooted, or when you choose to recall the default setup using the front panel Default Setup button or the Recall dialog.

Those settings that are exceptions to this rule are called *non-volatile*. These settings will be retained session to session until you manually change them. Non-volatile settings include:

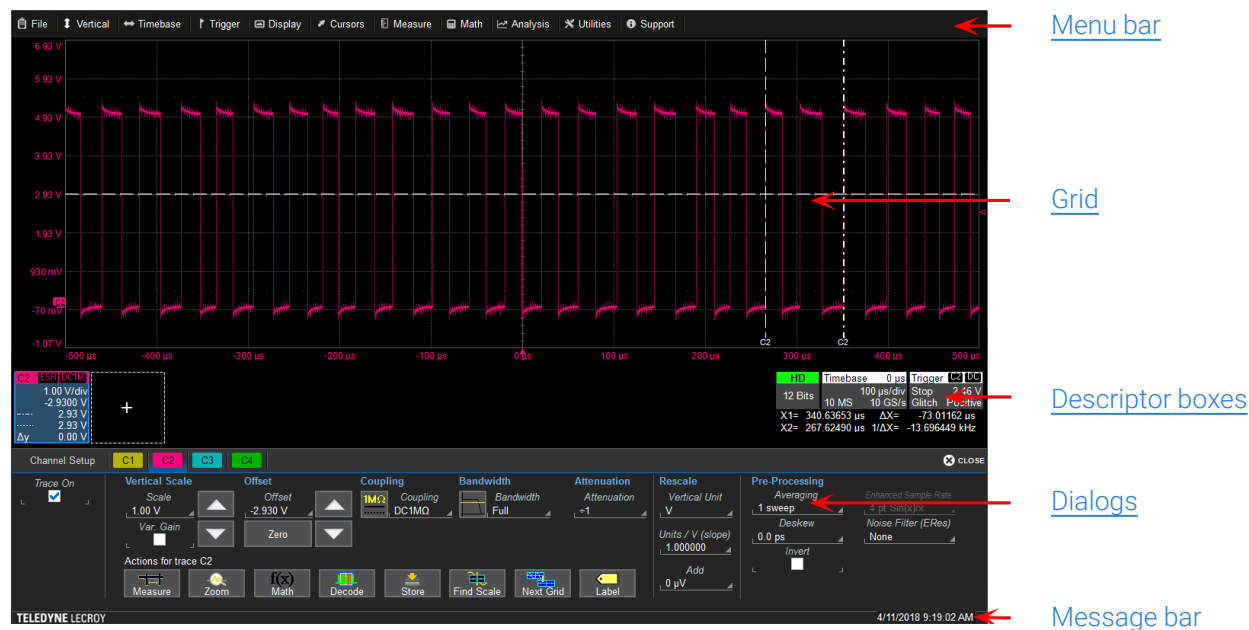
- All preferences settings (including acquisition, calibration, color and miscellaneous)
- All networking, remote control and email settings
- All printer settings and screen image (file) preferences
- All report settings, including logo selections
- All file paths and names, including auto-naming selections

Touch Screen

With MAUI, the touch screen is the principal control center of the oscilloscope. The entire display is active: use your finger or a stylus to touch, drag, swipe, and draw selection boxes. With the addition of [OneTouch](#), gestures such as pinch and flick can be used to control the screen.


Many controls that display information also work as “buttons” to access other functions, and even the waveform traces can be manipulated. If you have a mouse installed, you can click anywhere you can touch to activate a control; in fact, you can alternate between clicking and touching, whichever is convenient for you.

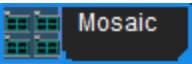
The touch screen is divided into the following major control groups:



Menu Bar

The top of the window contains a complete menu of functions. Making a selection here changes the dialogs displayed at the bottom of the screen. While many operations can also be launched from the front panel or descriptor boxes, the menu bar is the best way to access dialogs for Save/Recall, Display, Status, LabNotebook, Pass/Fail, optional Analysis packages and Utilities/Preferences.

If an action can be “undone”, the **Undo** button  at the right of the menu bar restores the oscilloscope display to the state prior to the action.

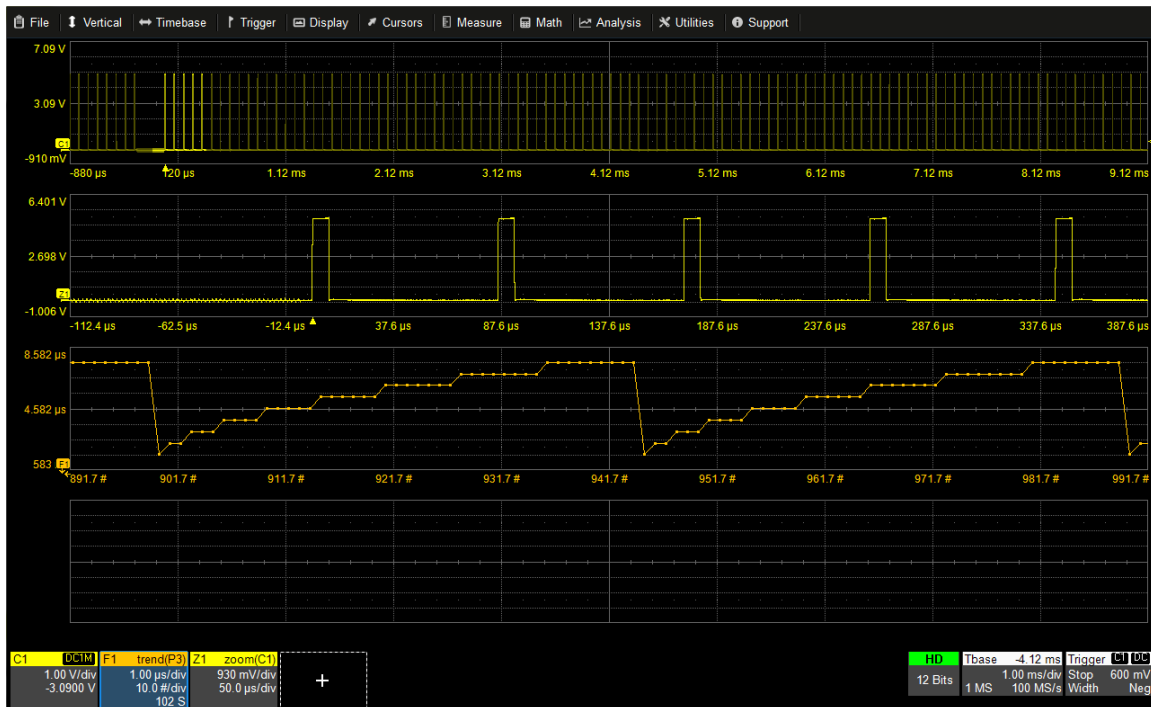
You will see a **Q-Scope**  control added to the menu bar when the [Q-Scope Multi-tabbed Display](#) features are available. Q-Scope allows you to choose different tabbed display configurations.

Grid

The grid displays the waveform traces. Every grid is 8 Vertical divisions representing the full number of 4096 Vertical levels and 10 Horizontal divisions representing the total acquisition time. The value of each division depends on the Vertical and Horizontal scale of the traces that appear on that grid.

Multi-Grid Display

The screen can be divided into multiple grids, each showing different types and numbers of traces (in Auto Grid mode, it will divide automatically as needed). Regardless of the number and orientation of grids, every grid always represents the same number of Vertical levels so that absolute measurement precision is maintained. See [Display](#).



Different types of traces opening in a multi-grid display.

Q-Scape Tabs

On instruments with the Q-Scape multi-tabbed display features, Tabs 1-4 appear above the grids. Each tab is a distinct multi-grid display. See [Display](#) for more information about using Q-Scape.

Grid Indicators

These indicators appear around or on the grid to mark important points on the display. They are matched to the color of the trace to which they apply. When multiple traces appear on the same grid, indicators refer to the *foreground* trace—the one that appears on top of the others.



Axis labels mark the times/units represented by a grid division. They update dynamically as you pan the trace or change the Vertical/Horizontal scale. Originally shown in absolute values, the labels change to show delta from 0 (center) when the number of significant digits grows too large. To remove axis labels, go to Display > Display Setup and deselect Axis Labels.



Trigger Time, a small triangle along the bottom (horizontal) edge of the grid, shows the time of the trigger. Unless Horizontal Delay is set, this indicator is at the zero (center) point of the grid. Delay time is shown on the Timebase descriptor box.



Pre/Post-trigger Delay, a small arrow to the bottom left or right of the grid, indicates that a pre- or post-trigger Delay has shifted the Trigger Position indicator to a point in time not displayed on the grid. All Delay values are shown on the Timebase descriptor box.



Trigger Level at the right edge of the grid tracks the trigger voltage level. A solid triangle indicates the last triggered level. If you change the trigger level prior to acquisition (e.g., in Stop mode), a hollow triangle of the same color appears at the new trigger level. The trigger level indicator is not shown if the triggering channel is not displayed.



Zero Volts Level is located at the left edge of the grid. One appears for each open trace on the grid, sharing the number and color of the trace.



Cursor markers appear over the grid to indicate the voltage and time being measured on the waveform. Drag-and-drop cursor markers to quickly reposition the measurement.

Grid Intensity

You can adjust the brightness of the grid lines by going to **Display > Display Setup** and entering a new **Grid Intensity** percentage. The higher the number, the brighter and bolder the grid lines.

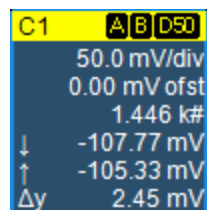
Descriptor Boxes

Trace descriptor boxes appear just beneath the grid whenever any type of waveform trace or graph is turned on. They function to:

- **Inform**—descriptors summarize the current trace settings and its activity status.
- **Navigate**—touch the descriptor box once to activate the trace, again to open the setup dialog.
- **Arrange**—drag-and-drop descriptor boxes to move traces among grids.
- **Configure**—drag-and-drop descriptor boxes to change source or copy setups.

The following descriptors appear within standard MAUI. Graph/trace descriptor boxes that are unique to software options (e.g., eye diagrams) are described with the option.

Channel Descriptor



Channel trace descriptor boxes correspond to analog signal inputs. They show (clockwise from top left): channel number, pre-processing list (if any), coupling, vertical scale (gain) setting, vertical offset setting, sweeps count (when averaging), vertical cursor positions, and number of segments acquired (when in Sequence mode).

If you are interleaving channels, channel descriptor boxes will show the channel's overall acquisition status: trigger only, active or not active. Codes in the header indicate coupling and pre-processing affecting the channel.

Symbols on Channel Descriptor Boxes

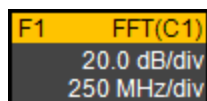
Processing Type	Code
Coupling	D50, DC1, AC1 or GND
Bandwidth Limiting	BWL
Averaging	AVG
(Sinx)/x Interpolation / Enhanced Sample Rate	SINX / ESR
Deskew	DSQ

Processing Type	Code
Noise Filter (ERes)	FLT
Inversion	INV



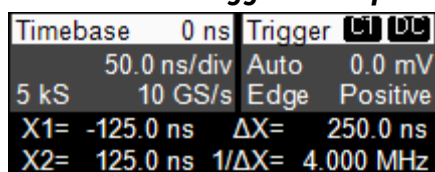
Note: When (Sinx)/x interpolation is applied automatically by the Enhanced Sample Rate feature, the C_n descriptor box will show ESR. When applied manually, descriptors will show SINX.

Math, Zoom and Memory Descriptors



Similar descriptor boxes appear for math (F_n), zoom (Z_n) and memory (M_n) traces. These descriptors show any scaling that differs from the channel timebase. Units are automatically adjusted for the trace type. They function the same as channel descriptor boxes.

Timebase and Trigger Descriptors

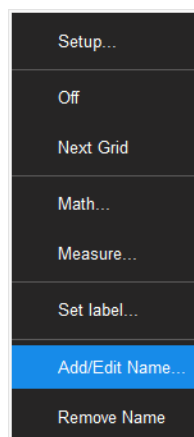


The Timebase descriptor box shows: (clockwise from top right) Horizontal Delay, Time/div, Sample Rate, Number of Samples and Sampling Mode (blank when in real-time mode).

The Trigger descriptor box shows: (clockwise from top right) Source and Coupling, trigger Level (V), Slope/Polarity, Type and Mode.

Horizontal (time) cursor readout, including the time between cursors and the frequency, is shown beneath the TimeBase and Trigger descriptor boxes. See the [Cursors](#) section for more information.

Trace Context Menu

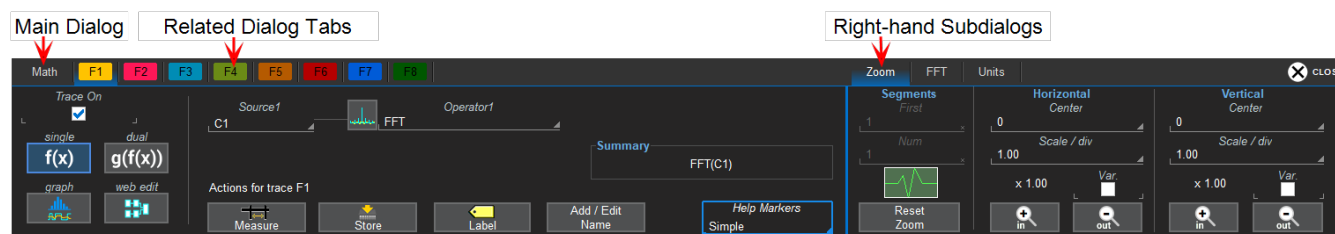


The trace context menu is a pop-up menu of actions to apply to a trace, such as turn off, add measurement, label or rename.

To open the trace context menu, either right-click on the descriptor box, or touch and hold on the descriptor box until a white box appears, then lift your finger.

Dialogs

Dialogs appear at the bottom of the display for entering setup data. The top dialog will be the main entry point for the selected functionality. For convenience, related dialogs appear as a series of tabs behind the main dialog. Touch the tab to open the dialog.



Right-hand Subdialogs

At times, your selections will require more settings than can fit on one dialog, or the task invites further action, such as zooming a new trace. In that case, subdialogs will appear to the right of the dialog. These subdialog settings always apply to the object that is being configured on the tab to the left.

Action Toolbar

Several setup dialogs contain a toolbar at the bottom of the dialog. These buttons enable you to perform commonplace tasks—such as turning on a measurement—without having to leave the underlying dialog. Toolbar actions always apply to the active trace.



Measure opens the Measure pop-up to set measurement parameters on the active trace.

Zoom creates a zoom trace of the active trace.

Math opens the Math pop-up to apply math functions to the active trace and create a new math trace.

Decode opens the main Serial Decode dialog where you configure and apply serial data decoders and triggers. This button is only active if you have serial data software options installed.

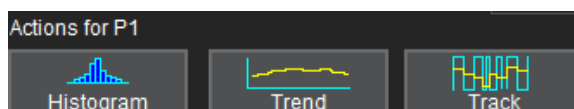
Store loads the active trace into the corresponding memory location (C1, F1 and Z1 to M1; C2, F2 and Z2 to M2, etc.).

Find Scale performs a vertical scaling that fits the waveform into the grid.

Add/Edit Name opens the virtual keypad for you to [alias the trace](#).

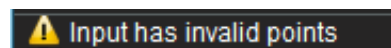
Label opens the Label pop-up to annotate the active trace.

Histogram, **Trend**, and **Track** buttons appear on the Action toolbar at the bottom of the **Parameter (Pn)** set up dialogs. They allow you to quickly create a Math function to plot the parameter results.

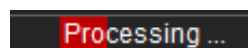


Message Bar

At the bottom of the oscilloscope display is a narrow message bar. The current date and time are shown at the far right. Status, error, or other messages are shown at the far left, where "Teledyne LeCroy" normally appears.



You will see the word "Processing..." highlighted with red at the right of the message bar when the oscilloscope is processing your last acquisition or calculating.



This will be especially evident when you change an acquisition setting that affects the ADC configuration while in Normal or Auto trigger mode, such as changing the Vertical Scale, Offset, or Bandwidth. Traces may briefly disappear from the display while the oscilloscope is processing.

Language Selection

To change the language of the oscilloscope application:

1. Go to **Utilities > Preference Setup > Preferences** and make a **Language** selection.
2. Follow the prompt to restart the application.

You can also select by touching the Language icon  when it appears to the far right of the menu bar upon start up.

Windows 10 Gestures

Windows 10 oscilloscopes support new touch screen gestures for accessing applications and settings:

- Swipe from the left of the screen to switch applications or show the desktop. Continue swiping to return to MAUI.
- Swipe from the right of the screen to open the Action Center, from where you can access system settings.

Controlling Traces

Traces are the visible representations of waveforms that appear on the display grid. They may show live inputs (Cn , $Digitaln$), a math function applied to a waveform (Fn), a stored memory of a waveform (Mn), a zoom of a waveform (Zn), or the processing results of special analysis software.

Traces are a touch screen object like any other and can be manipulated. They can be panned, moved, labeled, zoomed and captured in different visual formats for printing and reporting.

Each visible trace will have a descriptor box summarizing its principal configuration settings. See [OneTouch Help](#) for more information about how you can use traces and trace descriptor boxes to modify your configurations.

Turning On/Off Traces

Turn On/Off Analog Trace

To turn on a channel trace, do any of the following:

- From the front panel, press the **Channel** button.
- From the touch screen, choose **Vertical > Channel n Setup**.
- Touch the **Add New** box and select **Channel**, or drag another Cn descriptor box to Add New.

To turn off a trace, press the front panel Channel button a second time, or from the touch screen, either:

- Right-click on the descriptor box and choose **Off**.
- Touch the descriptor box and clear the **Trace On** checkbox on the setup dialog.

Turn On/Off Digital Trace

To turn on digital traces, from the touch screen, choose **Vertical > Digital n Setup**, then check **Group** on the Digital n dialog.

To turn off the traces, clear the Group checkbox.

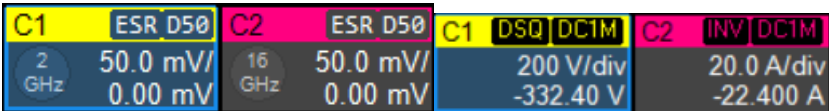
Turn On/Off Other Trace

To turn on/off math or memory traces, check or clear the Trace On box on the respective setup dialogs.

You can also touch the **Add New** box and select the trace type, or drag another descriptor box of that same type to the Add New box (e.g., drag M1 to Add New to turn on a the next available memory trace).

Activating Traces

Although several traces may be open, only one trace is **active** and can be adjusted using front panel controls and touch screen gestures. A highlighted descriptor box indicates which trace is active. All actions apply to that trace until you activate another. Touch the trace descriptor box to make it active (and the foreground trace in that grid).



Active trace descriptor (left), inactive trace descriptor (right).

Whenever you activate a trace, the dialog at the bottom of the screen automatically switches to the appropriate setup dialog.

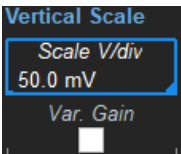
Since multiple traces can be opened on the same grid, the trace shown on top of the others is the **foreground** trace. Grid indicators (matched to the input channel color) represent the foreground trace.

Touch a trace or its descriptor box to bring it to the foreground. This also makes it the active trace.

Note that a *foreground* trace may not be the same as the *active* trace. A trace in a separate grid may subsequently become the active trace, but the indicators on a given grid will still represent the foreground trace in that group.

Adjusting Traces

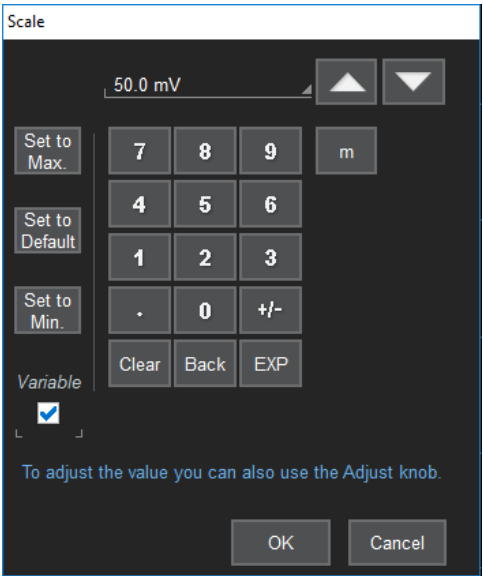
To adjust Vertical Scale and Offset, or Horizontal Scale and Delay, just activate the trace and use the front panel knobs. To make other adjustments—such as units—touch the trace descriptor box twice to open the appropriate setup dialog.



Many settings are adjusted by selecting from the pop-up that appears when you touch a control. When an entry field appears highlighted in blue after touching, it is **active** and can be adjusted by turning the front panel knobs. Fields that don't have a dedicated knob (as do Vertical Level and Horizontal Delay) can be modified using the Adjust knob.

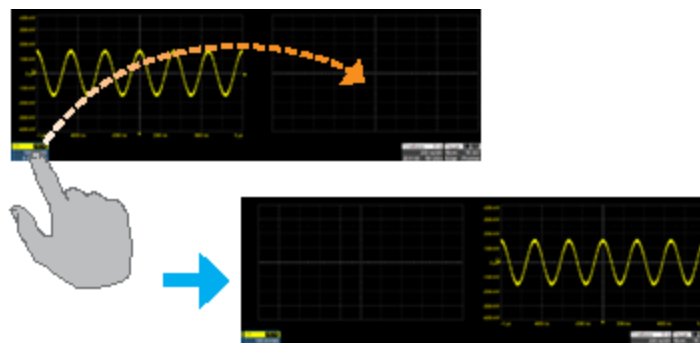
If you have a keyboard installed, you can type entries in an active (highlighted) data entry field. Or, you can touch it again, then "type" the entry by touching keys on the virtual keypad or keyboard.

To use the virtual keypad, touch the soft keys exactly as you would a calculator. When you touch OK, the calculated value is entered in the field.



Moving Traces

You can move a trace from one grid to another by dragging its descriptor box to the desired grid. This is a convenient way to quickly re-arrange traces on the display.



If you are in Q-Scape display mode, you can drag the descriptor box to a grid on another tab, provided the grid is visible while you are moving the trace. For example, you cannot drag descriptors across tabs in Q-Scape Single mode, because the target grids aren't visible, but you can in Q-Scape Dual or Q-Scape Mosaic modes. This is true even in extended display. For more information, see [Display](#).

See [OneTouch Help](#) for ways to pan traces within the same grid.

Naming Traces (Aliases)

A custom name can be added to the mnemonic associated with a trace on its descriptor box, making the oscilloscope user interface more intuitive. This custom name will appear in reports and wherever this trace is referenced on the user interface. On trace descriptor boxes, the original trace label will appear above the alias.

C1	ESR D50	C2	ESR D50	C1	DSU DC1M	C2	INV DC1M
VoltageA		VoltageB		Vds		Id	
2	50.0 mV/	16	50.0 mV/	200 V/div		20.0 A/div	
GHz	0.00 mV	GHz	0.00 mV	-332.40 V		-22.400 A	

A custom name (alias) can be added to trace descriptor boxes.



Note: Although there is a 250 character logical limit, we recommend keeping names to 10 characters or less, as characters over this number will be truncated on the display. Custom aliases apply only to the oscilloscope display; use the original trace mnemonic (C1-Cn, F1-Fn, etc.) to refer to traces in remote control programs.

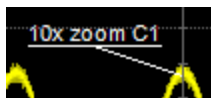
Adding Name

1. Select **Add/Edit Name** from the Action toolbar on the trace setup dialog.
2. On the virtual keyboard, enter the new name (alias) and click **OK**.

Removing Name

To remove an alias from the trace, click **Add/Edit Name** again and choose **Remove Name**.

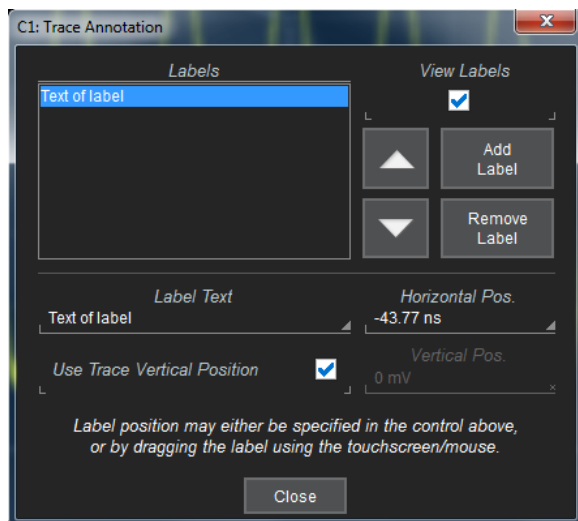
Labeling Traces



The Label function gives you the ability to add custom annotations to the trace display. Once placed, labels can be moved to new positions or hidden while remaining associated with the trace.

Create Label

1. Select **Label** from the context menu, or touch the **Label** Action toolbar button on the trace setup dialog.



2. On the Trace Annotation pop-up, touch **Add Label**.
3. Enter the **Label Text**.
4. Optionally, enter the **Horizontal/Vertical Pos.** (in same units as the trace) at which to place the label. The default position is 0 ns. **Use Trace Vertical Position** places the label immediately above the trace.

Reposition Label

Drag-and-drop labels to reposition them, or change the position settings on the Trace Annotation pop-up.

Edit/Remove Label

On the Trace Annotation pop-up, select the **Label** from the list. Change the settings as desired, or touch **Remove Label** to delete it.

Clear **View labels** to hide all labels. They will remain in the list.

Finding Trace Status

If a small letter "i" inside a bubble appears on the trace descriptor box, this indicates there is additional information regarding a waveform processing error that resulted in the oscilloscope being unable to display a trace, or producing a trace that could lead to unreliable measurements.

To find out the additional information behind this indicator, use the MAUI Browser installed on the oscilloscope to view the Automation result interface: **app.Subsystem.Wfmn.Out.Result.Samples**

For example, if the F1 descriptor shows the "i" indicator, look at: **app.Math.F1.Out.Result.Samples**

See the [MAUI Oscilloscopes Remote Control and Automation Manual](#) for instructions on using MAUI Browser to view Automation results.

The **Status** property of the Out.Result.Samples interface will show the value of the error status bit that was generated (there is no value if there is no error). The table below shows the status bit meaning.

Bit #	Value	Description
0	0x00000000000001	Invalid
1	0x00000000000002	Overflow
2	0x00000000000004	Underflow
3	0x00000000000008	Contains Undefined Values
4	0x00000000000010	Less Than
5	0x00000000000020	Greater Than
6	0x00000000000040	Not A Pulse
7	0x00000000000080	Not Cyclic
8	0x00000000000100	Averaged
9	0x00000000000200	Unlocked PLL
10	0x00000000000400	Other Error
11	0x00000000000800	Other Warning
12	0x00000000001000	Other Info
32	0x00001000000000	Inputs Incompatible
33	0x00002000000000	Algorithm Limits Reached
34	0x00004000000000	Bad Definition
35	0x00008000000000	Too Few Data
36	0x00010000000000	Too Many Data
37	0x00020000000000	Uniform HorizInterval Required
38	0x00040000000000	Bad Units
39	0x00080000000000	Data Range Too Low
40	0x00100000000000	Data Undersampled
41	0x00200000000000	Poor Statistics
42	0x00400000000000	Slow Transition Time
43	0x00800000000000	Data Resampled
44	0x01000000000000	Data Interpolated
45	0x02000000000000	Measurement Scale Imprecise
46	0x04000000000000	No Data Available
47	0x08000000000000	Some Cumulated Results Invalid
48	0x10000000000000	Insufficient Memory
49	0x20000000000000	Channel Not Active
50	0x40000000000000	Use Status Description

MAUI with OneTouch

Gestures like touch, drag, swipe, pinch and flick can be used to create and change setups with one touch. Just as you change the display by using the setup dialogs, you can change the setups by moving different display objects. Use the setup dialogs to refine OneTouch actions to precise values.

As you drag & drop objects, valid targets are outlined with a white box. When you're moving over invalid targets, you'll see the "Null" symbol (Ø) under your finger tip or cursor.

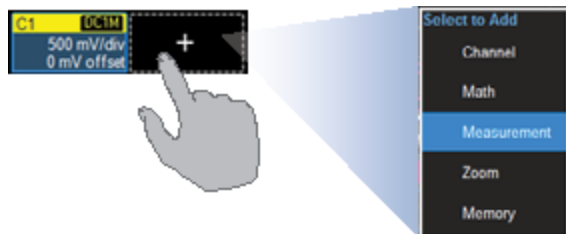
Turn On

To **turn on a new channel, math, memory, or zoom trace**, drag any descriptor box of the same type to the Add New ("+") box. The next trace in the series will be added to the display at the default settings. It is now the active trace.



If there is no descriptor box of the desired type on the screen to drag, touch the Add New box and choose the trace type from the pop-up menu.

To **turn on the Measure table** when it is closed, touch the Add New box and choose Measurement.



Activate

Touch a trace or its descriptor box to *activate* it and bring it to the *foreground*. When the descriptor box appears highlighted in blue, front panel controls and touch screen gestures apply to that trace.

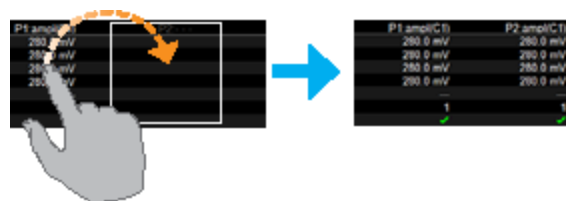


Copy Setups

To **copy the setup of one trace** to another of the same type (e.g., channel to channel, math to math), drag-and-drop the source descriptor box onto the target descriptor box.



To **copy the setup of a measurement** (Pn), drag-and-drop the source column onto the target column of the Measure table. You can do the same for a query (Qn) on the Pass/Fail readout table.

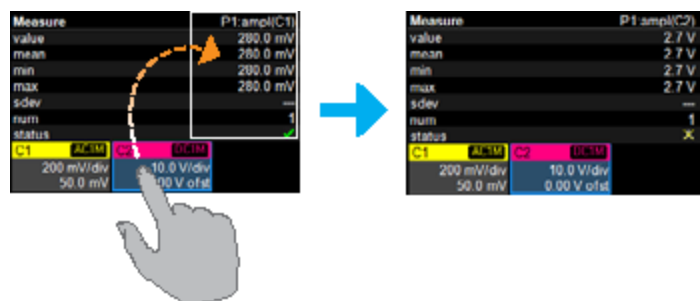


Change Source

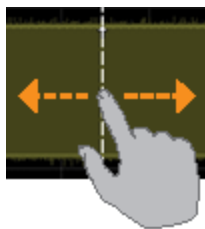
To **change the source of a trace**, drag-and-drop the descriptor box of the desired source onto the target descriptor box. You can also drop it on the Source field of the target setup dialog.



To **change the source of a measurement**, drag-and-drop the descriptor box of the desired source onto the parameter (Pn) column of the Measure table. You can do the same to a query (Qn) on the Pass/Fail readout table.

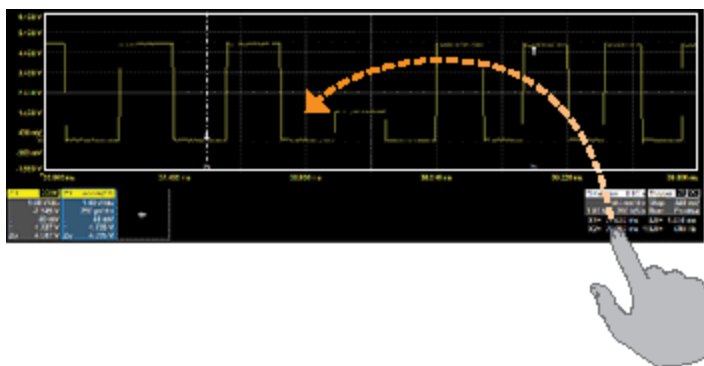


Position Cursors

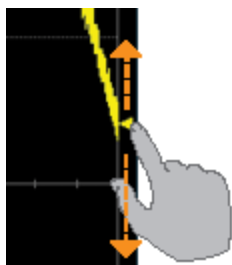


To **change cursor measurement time/level**, drag cursor markers to new positions on the grid. The cursor readout will update immediately.

To **place horizontal cursors** on zooms or other calculated traces where the source Horizontal Scale has forced cursors off the grid, drag the cursor readout from below the Timebase descriptor to the grid where you wish to place the cursors. The cursors are set at either the 5 (center) or the 2.5 and 7.5 divisions of the grid. Cursors on the source traces adjust position accordingly.

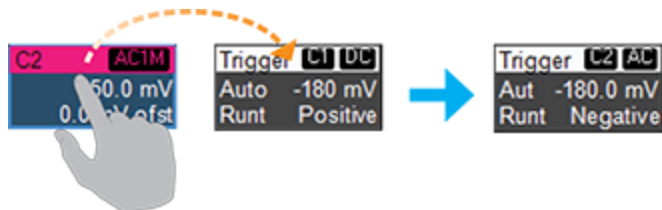


Change Trigger



To **change the trigger level**, drag the Trigger Level indicator to a new position on the Y axis. The Trigger descriptor box will show the new voltage Level.

To **change the trigger source channel**, drag-and-drop the desired channel (Cn) descriptor box onto the Trigger descriptor box. The trigger will revert to the coupling and slope/polarity last set on that channel.



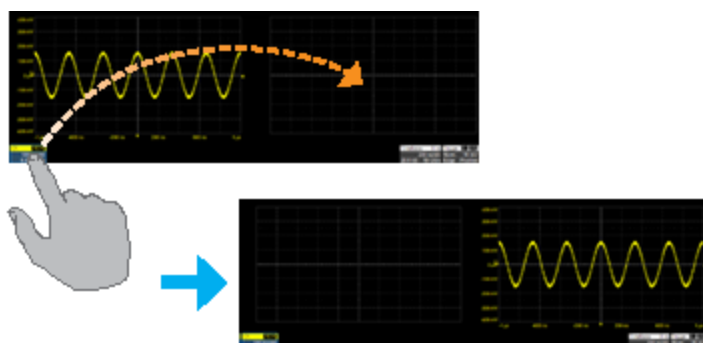
Store to Memory

To store a trace to internal memory, drag-and-drop its descriptor onto the target memory (Mn) descriptor.



Move Trace

To move a trace to a different grid, drag-and-drop the trace descriptor box onto the target grid. If you are in a multi-tabbed Q-Scope display mode, you can move traces between tabs this way.

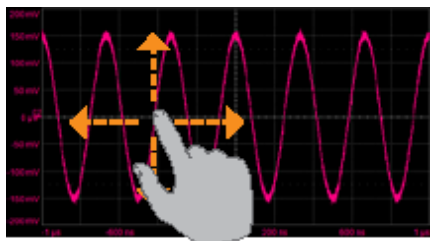


Scroll



To scroll long lists of values or readout tables, swipe the selection dialog or table in an up or down direction.

Pan/Swipe Trace



To **pan a trace**, activate it to bring it to the forefront, then drag the waveform trace right/left or up/down. If it is the source of any other trace, that trace will move, as well.

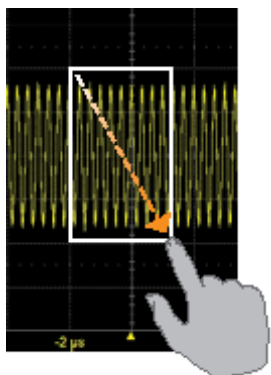
For channel traces, the Timebase descriptor box will show the new Horizontal Delay value. For other traces, the zoom factor controls show the new Horizontal Center.



Tip: When using [multi-zoom](#), all time-locked traces will pan together.

Swipe from the far left of the screen to switch "tabs" and show the Windows desktop. Swipe from left again to return to the oscilloscope application.

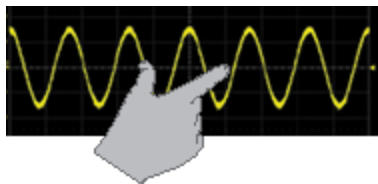
Rectangle Zoom



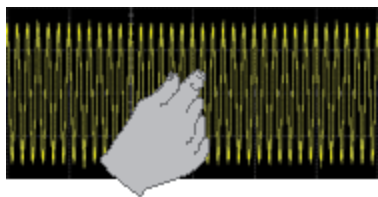
To **create a new channel zoom trace**, touch then drag diagonally to draw a rectangle around the portion of the trace you want to zoom. Touch the Zn descriptor box to open the zoom factor controls and adjust the zoom exactly.

Pinch Zoom

To "zoom in" on any trace, unpinch two fingers over the trace horizontally.



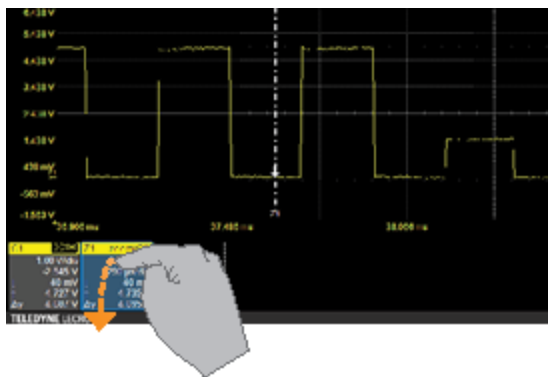
To "zoom out" on any trace, pinch two fingers over the trace horizontally.



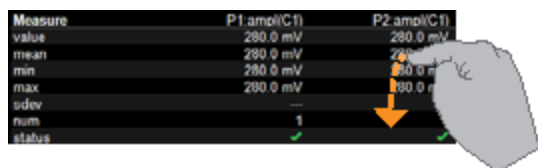
Note: Pinch gestures do not create a separate zoom (Zn) trace, they only adjust the Horizontal Scale. When you pinch a channel (Cn) trace, the Timebase for all channels changes. If the trace is the source of any other, all its dependent traces change, as well.

Turn Off

To **turn off a trace**, flick the trace descriptor box toward the bottom of the screen.



To **turn off a measure parameter** or Pass/Fail query, flick the Pn or Qn cell toward the bottom of the screen. If it's the last active cell of the table, the table will close.



Waveform Acquisition

Topics in this section explain how to configure the instrument to acquire new waveforms.

Auto Setup

Auto Setup configures the essential acquisition settings based on the first input signal it finds, starting with C1. If nothing is connected to C1, it searches C2 and so forth until it finds a signal. Vertical Scale (Volts/div), Offset, Timebase (Time/div), and Trigger are set to a 50% Edge trigger on the first, non-zero-level amplitude, with the entire waveform visible for at least 10 cycles over 10 horizontal divisions.

To run Auto Setup:

1. Press the front panel **Auto Setup** button, or choose **Auto Setup** from the Vertical, Timebase, or Trigger menus (these all perform the same function).
2. To confirm, press the **Auto Setup** button again, or use the touch screen display.

After running Auto Setup, you'll see the words "Auto Setup" next to an Undo button at the far right of the menu bar. This allows you to undo the Auto Setup and restore the settings in place prior to Auto Setup.



Caution: You will undo all new measurements or math function definitions entered since the Auto Setup when you Undo the Auto Setup.

Vertical

Vertical, also called Channel, settings usually relate to voltage level and control traces along the Y axis.

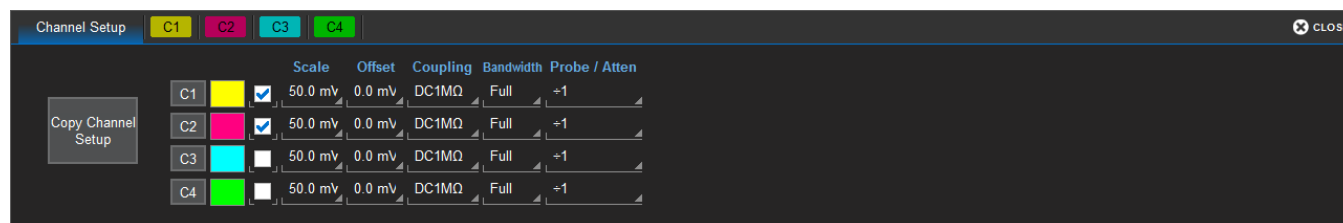


Note: While Digital settings can be accessed through the Vertical menu on oscilloscopes with mixed-signal capabilities, they are handled quite differently. See [Digital](#).

The amount of voltage displayed by one vertical division of the grid, or Vertical Scale (V/div), is most quickly adjusted by using the front panel **Vertical knob**. The Cn descriptor box always shows the current Vertical Scale setting.

Channel Setup Dialog

To access the main Channel Setup dialog, choose **Vertical > Channel Setup** from the menu bar.



Use this dialog to quickly make/change basic Vertical settings for all analog input channels.

- To turn on/off the channel trace, select/deselect the checkbox.
- To change the trace color, touch the color block, then choose the new color from the pop-up.

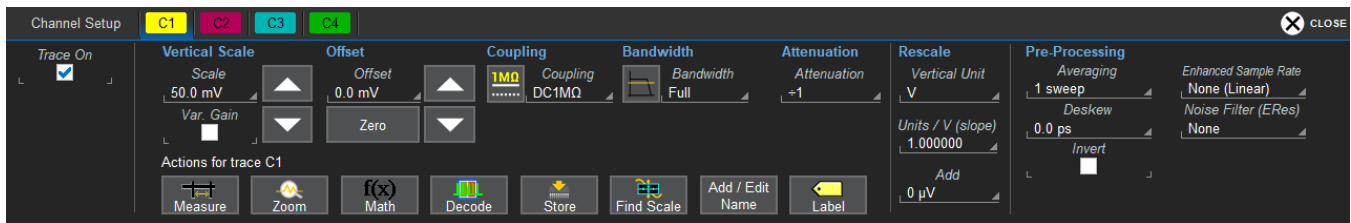
- To change any basic Vertical settings (Scale, Offset, etc.), touch the input field and enter the new value.
- To quickly propagate the changes made, touch **Copy Channel Setup** and select the channels to **Copy From** and **Copy To**.



Tip: On instruments with OneTouch, you can copy settings from one channel to another just by dragging the source channel descriptor box onto the target channel descriptor box.

Cn (Channel) Dialog

Full vertical setup is done on the individual *Cn* dialogs. To access them, choose **Vertical > Channel*n* Setup** from the menu bar, or touch the **Channel descriptor box**.



If a Teledyne LeCroy probe is connected, its [Probe dialog](#) appears to the right of the *Cn* dialog.



Note: In case of a waveform processing error (e.g., overflow), a small letter "i" inside a bubble will appear on the *Cn* descriptor box to indicate there is information regarding the waveform status. See [Finding Waveform Status](#) for instructions on finding the error.

Vertical Settings

The **Trace On** checkbox turns on/off the channel trace.

Vertical Scale sets the gain (sensitivity) in the selected Vertical units, Volts by default. Select **Variable Gain** for fine adjustment or leave the checkbox clear for fixed 1, 2, 5, 10-step adjustments.

Offset adds a defined value of DC offset to the signal as acquired by the input channel. This may be helpful in order to display a signal on the grid while maximizing the vertical height (gain) of the signal. A negative value of offset will "subtract" a DC voltage value from the acquired signal (and move the trace down on the grid) whereas a positive value will do the opposite. Touch **Zero Offset** to return to zero.

A variety of **Bandwidth** filters are available. To limit bandwidth, select a filter from this field.

Set **Coupling** appropriate to the input used:

- ProBus: DC 50 Ω, DC1M, AC1M or GND (Ground)

Maximum input voltage depends on the input used. Limits are displayed on the body of the instrument. Whenever the voltage exceeds this limit, the coupling mode automatically switches to GND. You must then manually reset the coupling to its previous state. While the unit provides this protection, damage can still occur if extreme voltages are applied.

Probe Attenuation

Probe **Attenuation** values for third-party probes may be entered manually on the *Cn* dialog. The instrument will detect it is a third-party probe and display these fields.

When a Teledyne LeCroy probe is connected to a channel input, the Attenuation field becomes a button to access the [Probe dialog](#), a tab added to the right of the Cn tab. Enter Attenuation on the Probe dialog.

Rescale Settings

The rescale settings provide the same capability as the oscilloscope Rescale math function ($y=ax + b$, where the original value is x , Units/V is a , and Add is b), with two key differences:

- It is applied directly to the channel input trace rather than to a separate math function trace.
- Rescaling is done according to the offset grain for the particular V/div.

To rescale, enter the number of units equal to 1 Volt in **Units/V** and any additive constant in **Add**.

The **Vertical Units** setting may be changed from Volts (V) to Amperes (A) or Others. This is useful when using a third-party current probe (which is not auto-detected) or when probing across a current sensor/resistor. Units assigned directly to an input will carry to other traces calculated using that input, such as math or spectrum traces. When using a unit other than volts or amperes, first choose a unit subcategory from the pop-up dialog that appears, then the unit.

Pre-Processing Settings

Pre-processing functions modify the acquired signal prior to display, math and measurement processing.

Average performs continuous averaging—the repeated addition, with unequal weight, of successive source waveforms. It is particularly useful for reducing noise on signals drifting very slowly in time or amplitude. The most recently acquired waveform has more weight than all the previously acquired ones: the continuous average is dominated by the statistical fluctuations of the most recently acquired waveform. The weight of old waveforms in the continuous average gradually tends to zero (following an exponential rule) at a rate that decreases as the weight increases.

Interpolate applies (Sinx)/x interpolation to the waveform. The selection of None or Linear applies Linear interpolation, which inserts a straight line between sample points and is best used to reconstruct straight-edged signals such as square waves. (Sinx)/x interpolation, on the other hand, is suitable for reconstructing curved or irregular wave shapes. Choose an upsample factor of 2 or more points. The Interpolation setting is disabled .

On some HDO models, this setting is called **Enhanced Sample Rate** and appears disabled when using a sample rate greater than 2.5 GS/s, as the system automatically sets the upsample factor according to your sample rate. Only when the sample rate is below this can you choose an upsample factor or use Linear interpolation (None). See [Enhanced Sample Rate](#).

Deskew adjusts the horizontal time offset by the amount entered in order to compensate for propagation delays caused by different probes or cable lengths. The valid range is dependent on the current timebase setting. The Deskew pre-processing setting and the Deskew math function perform the same action.

Noise Filter applies [Enhanced Resolution](#) (ERes) filtering to increase vertical resolution, allowing you to distinguish closely spaced voltage levels. The tradeoff is reduced bandwidth. ERes functions similarly to smoothing the signal with a simple, moving-average filter. It is best used on single-shot acquisitions, acquisitions where the data record is slowly repetitive (and you cannot use averaging), or to reduce noise when your signal is noticeably noisy but you do not need to perform noise measurements. It also may be used when performing high-precision voltage measurements and zooming with high vertical gain, for example. ERes is disabled.

Invert changes the apparent polarity of the signal, substituting an equivalent negative value for a positive one, and vice versa, so that the waveform appears to be "flipped" on screen.

De-Embedding allows you to remove the effects of cables used to input signals. On oscilloscopes with the Cable De-embedding option installed, select the checkbox, then enter the attenuation constants or cable characteristics (provided by the cable manufacturer) on the Cable De-Embedding dialog that appears.

Cable De-Embedding Option

Losses in the cables used in the test setup can reduce the accuracy of your signal (e.g., signal amplitude and rise time), as well as introduce Inter-Symbol Interference. These cable effects can dramatically alter measurements and potentially create mask test violations.

Cable De-Embedding (standard on LabMaster and some WaveMaster 8 Zi oscilloscopes, and available as an option on many other models) allows you to quickly specify the loss characteristics of the cables, typically found on the cable's data sheet, and analyze your signal with the effects removed. The compensated signal is a more accurate representation of what was actually transmitted.

When Cable De-Embedded is installed and De-embedding is selected from the channel pre-processing settings, the Cable De-Embedding dialog will appear for you to describe the cable being used on the channel.

1. Touch **Vertical > Channel # Setup...** from the menu bar, then on the *Cn* dialog, check **Cable De-Embedding** to display the Cable De-Embedding tab.
2. On the Cable De-Embedding dialog, touch **Cable Specified by** and choose either:
 - **Attenuation Constants.** Enter the cable loss model constants in **Cable A1** and **Cable A2**.
 - **Attenuation Table.** Enter the first set of **Frequency** and **Attenuation** values. Touch **Add** to continue adding rows to the table as needed.



Tip: To edit a row in the table, select it, change values, then touch **Change**. To delete a row, select the row and touch **Delete**.

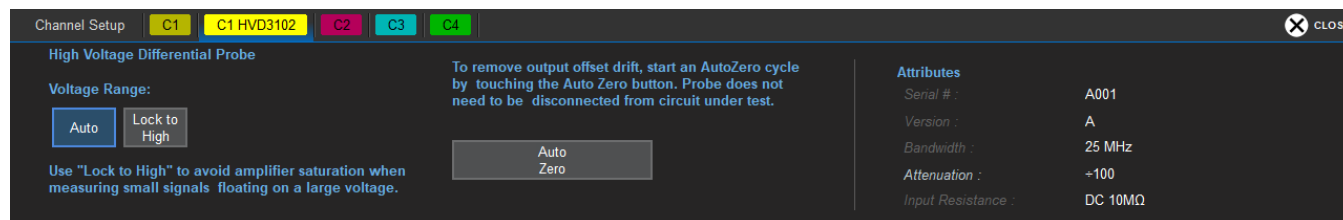
3. Enter the **Cable Length** in inches.
4. Touch **Delay Specified by** and choose from Propagation Velocity, Nominal Delay, or Dielectric Constant. Enter the value in the field of the same name.
5. Click **Apply** to initiate the cable de-embedding for the signal on this channel.
6. To save this cable configuration for future use, touch **File Name [DefaultCable]** and enter a name.

Probe Dialog

The Probe Dialog immediately to the right of the *Cn* dialog displays the attributes of the probe connected to that channel and (depending on the probe type) allows you to control the probe from the touch screen.



Caution: Remove probes from the circuit under test before initializing Auto Zero or DeGauss.



Depending on the type of probe you have connected to the channel, you may see any of the following controls:

Power On initiates power to active probes via the oscilloscope interface.

LED Active turns on AutoColor ID if the probe has this feature. The LED on the probe body will light in the color of the channel to which the probe is connected.

Auto Zero corrects for DC offset drifts that naturally occur from thermal effects in the amplifier of active probes. Teledyne LeCroy probes incorporate Auto Zero capability to remove the DC offset from the probe's amplifier output to improve the measurement accuracy.

The **Degauss** control is activated for current probes. Degaussing eliminates residual magnetization from the probe core caused by external magnetic fields or by excessive input. It is recommended to always Degauss probes prior to taking a measurement.

If using a WaveLink probe, touch **Tip Select** and select the type of tip/lead you are using.



Note: Making the tip selection here results in the amplifier and tip combination having the response calibrated for at the factory. Failure to do so may result in inaccurate measurements.

On oscilloscopes running MAUI version 8.5.1.1 or later, HVD3000 probes set attenuation relative to the oscilloscope's V/div setting and the **Voltage Range** selection:

- **Auto** automatically raises attenuation when V/div is >7.9 or lowers attenuation when V/div is <7.9, allowing you to properly view the input waveform.
- **Lock to High** locks attenuation to the highest setting, regardless of the V/div setting. Maintaining a high attenuation will allow small signals on larger voltage waveforms to be accurately measured.

Use the **Refresh** button to update the attributes display.

Digital (Mixed-Signal)

When a mixed-signal device is connected to the oscilloscope, digital input setup options are added to the Vertical menu. There are set up dialogs for digital groups Digital1 to Digital4, which correspond to possible digital buses. You:

- Choose which lines make up each [digital group](#), what they are named and how they appear on the display
- Set the [logic determination thresholds](#)

A [pattern trigger](#) can be set on digital logic, or a combination of digital logic and analog states.

Connecting the Digital Leadset



The digital leadset enables input of up-to-16 lines of digital data. Physical lines can be configured into different logical groups, Digital n , corresponding to a bus. The transitions for each line may be viewed through different display modes.

The digital leadset features two digital banks with separate Threshold and Hysteresis controls, making it possible to simultaneously view data from different logic families. Initially, logical lines are named and numbered the same as the physical lead, although any line can be renamed appropriately or re-assigned to any lead.

Each flying lead has a signal and a ground connection. A variety of ground extenders and flying ground leads are available for different probing needs.



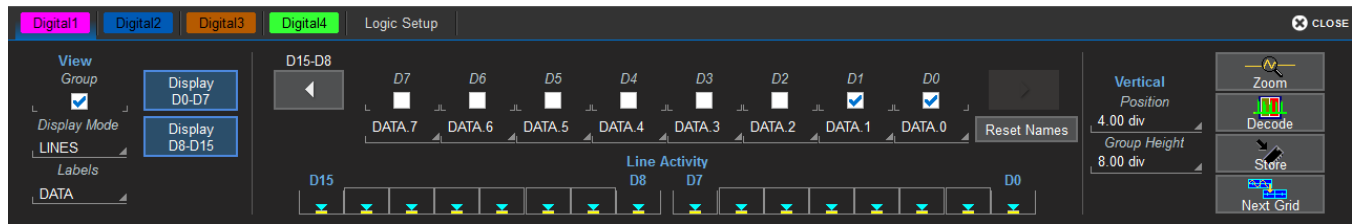
Note: To achieve optimal signal integrity, connect the ground at the tip of the flying lead for each input used in measurements. Use the provided ground extenders or ground flying leads to ground the connection.

To connect the leadset to the instrument, push the connector into the Mixed Signal interface below the front panel until you hear a click. After connecting the device, go on to set up your [digital groups](#).

To remove the leadset, press and hold the buttons on each side of the connector head, then pull out to release.



Digital Group Set Up



Digital Group dialog when using Digital Leadset (MSO).

A group defines the lines that comprise a bus or that you wish to view together. To set up a digital group:

1. From the menu bar, choose **Vertical > Digital Setup**.
2. On the Digital n set up dialog, check the boxes for all the lines that comprise the group. Touch the Right and Left Arrow buttons to switch between lead banks as you make line selections.
3. Choose a **Display Mode** (see below). Use the controls at the right of the dialog to define the **Group Height** and **Vertical Position**.
4. When you're finished defining the groups and display on the Digital n dialog, open the [Logic Setup](#) dialog to define logic thresholds.
5. Check the **Group** box to start the display.

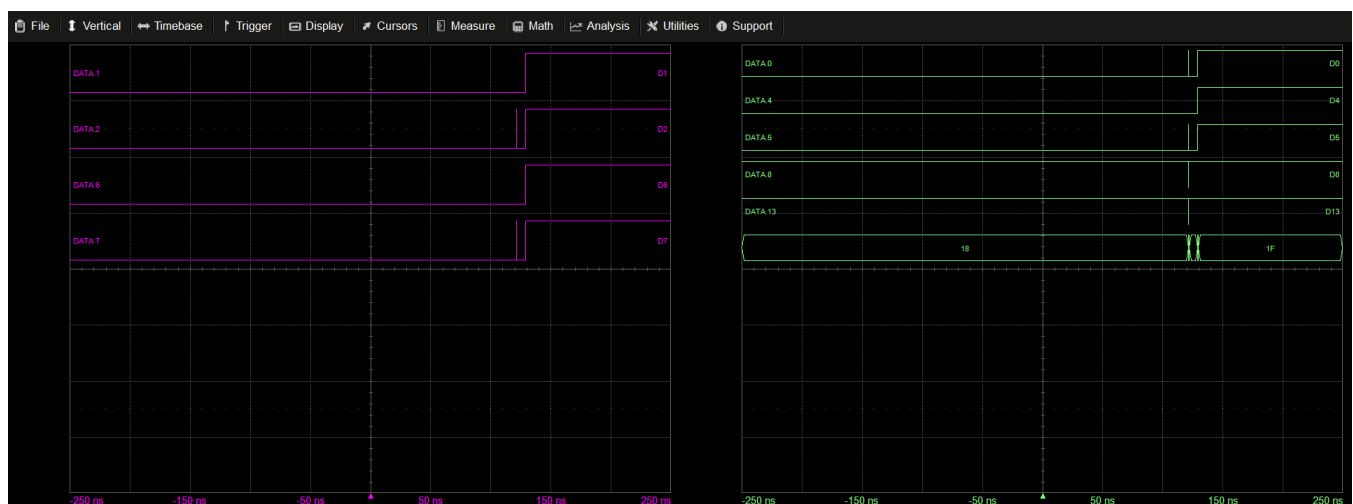
Digital Display Set Up

When a digital group is enabled, the **Display Mode** setting determines how the data appears on the display.

Lines (default) shows a time-correlated trace indicating high, low, and transitioning points (relative to the Threshold) for every digital line in the group.

Bus collapses the lines in a group into their Hex values.

Line & Bus displays both types of digital trace. The Bus trace appears immediately below the Line traces.



*Digital1 (magenta) shows four lines at Vertical Position +4.0 (top of grid) and Group Height 4.0 divisions (half of grid).
Digital4 (green) shows five digital lines and bus trace with the same Vertical Position and Group Height.*

The size and placement of the traces depend on the Vertical Position and Group Height settings.

In **Vertical Position**, enter the number of divisions (positive or negative) relative to the zero line of the grid where the display begins. The top of the first trace appears at this position.

In **Group Height**, enter the total number of grid divisions the entire display should occupy. All the selected traces (Line and Bus) will appear in this space. Individual traces are resized to fit the total number of divisions available.

To close the display of digital traces, uncheck the **Group box** on the Digital dialog.



Tip: You may wish to enable groups with many lines one or two at a time to maximize the screen space available for each. Closing the set up dialogs will also increase available screen space.

Renaming Digital Lines

The labels used to name each line can be changed to make the user interface more intuitive.

Touch **Label** and select the type:

- **Data** (default) appends "D." to the front of each line number.
- **Address** appends "A." to the front of each line number.
- **Custom** lets you create your own labels line by line.

To use Custom labels:

- Touch the **Line number field** below the corresponding checkbox. If necessary, use the **Left/Right Arrow buttons** to switch between banks.
- Use the virtual keyboard to enter the name, then press **OK**.

Renumbering Digital Lines

Labels can also be "swapped" between lines. This procedure helps in cases where the physical lead number is different from the logical line number you would like to assign to that input. It can save time having to reattach leads or reconfigure groups.

Example: A group is set up for lines 0-4, but lead 5 was accidentally attached to the probing point. By "swapping" line 5 with line 4, you do not need to change either the physical or the logical setup.

1. Select a **Label** of **Data** or **Address**.
2. Touch the **Line number field** below the corresponding checkbox. If necessary, use the **Left/Right Arrow buttons** to switch between banks.
3. From the pop-up, choose the line with which you want to swap labels.

Activity Indicators

Activity indicators appear at the bottom of the Digital dialog. They show which lines are High (up arrow), Low (down arrow), or Transitioning (up and down arrows) relative to the Logic Threshold value.



High



Low



Transitioning

Shortcut Buttons

At the right side of the Digital dialogs are buttons to:

- Create a new **Zoom** of a Digital group display. Each press of the button zooms each group displayed in order, creating Z1 for Digital1, then Z4 for Digital4, etc. The zoom's horizontal and vertical scale can be changed from that of the original digital group display to show transitions in more detail.
- Open the Serial **Decode** dialogs to configure decoders. Digital lines can be selected for Data and/or Clock sources when configuring decoders. Be sure the digital logic levels you set on Logic Setup are compatible with the decoding levels.
- **Store** the active digital group data to internal memory. As with Zoom, Digital1 will be stored to M1, Digital4 to M4, etc., but the group must first be activated by selecting the setup tab or the descriptor box.
- Move the active digital group to the **Next Grid**.

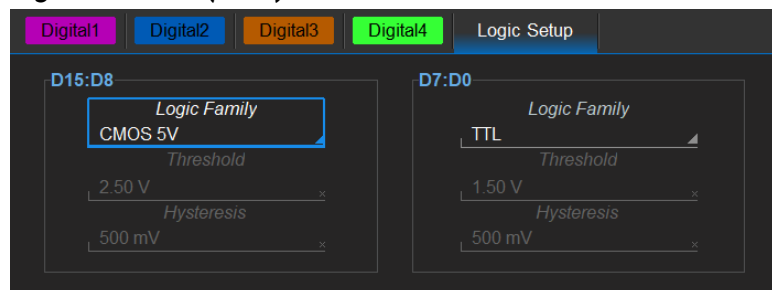
Digital Logic Set Up

Digital logic determination is made according to the settings made on the Logic Setup tab when defining groups.



Note: If you are using digital inputs as decoder sources, be sure the logic setup you make here matches the levels you set on the decoder dialogs.

Digital Leadset (MSO)



For the low-speed digital leadset, logic determination level can be set per digital lead bank. You can use standard **Logic Family** TTL, ETL, CMOS 5V, CMOS 3.3V, CMOS 2.5V, PECL 5V or LVDS.

Alternatively, by selecting Logic Family **User Defined**, you can define a custom logic **Threshold** voltage and **Hysteresis**. Pulses that fail to cross the Hysteresis band will not be determined to be logical 1 or 0.

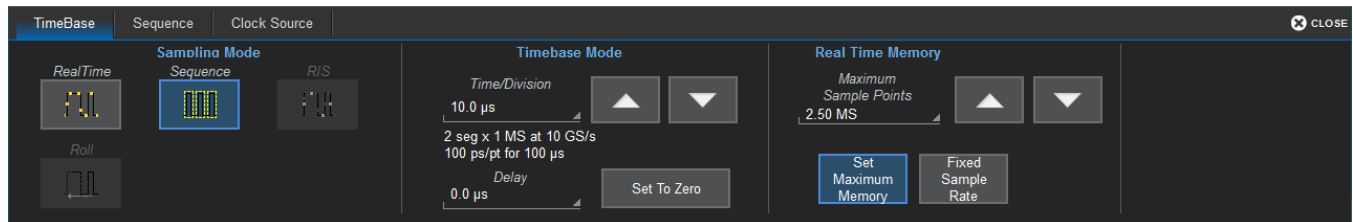
Timebase

Timebase (Horizontal) settings control traces along the X axis. The timebase is shared by all channels.

The time represented by each horizontal division of the grid, or **Time/Division**, is most easily adjusted using the **front panel Horizontal knob**. Full Timebase set up is done on the Timebase dialog, accessed either by choosing **Timebase > Horizontal Setup** from the menu bar or by touching the **Timebase descriptor box**.

Controls specifically used for interleaving are located at the far right of the main Timebase dialog. They allow you to increase the sampling rate, memory, and bandwidth of a single input through channel interleaving.

Timebase Set Up



Sampling Mode

The **Sampling Mode** determines how the instrument samples the input signal and renders it for display.

Real Time Sampling Mode

Real Time sampling mode is a series of digitized voltage values sampled on the input signal at a uniform rate. These samples are displayed as a series of measured data values associated with a single trigger event. By default (with no Delay), the waveform is positioned so that the trigger event is time 0 on the grid. The relationship between sample rate, memory, and time can be expressed as:

$$\text{Capture Interval} = 1/(\text{Sample Rate} \times \text{Memory})$$

$$\text{Capture Interval}/10 = \text{Time Per Division}$$

Usually, on fast timebase settings, the maximum sample rate is used when in Real Time mode. For slower timebase settings, the sample rate is decreased so that the maximum number of data samples is maintained over time.

RIS Sampling Mode

RIS (Random Interleaved Sampling) allows effective sampling rates higher than the maximum single-shot sampling rate. It is available on timebases ≤ 10 ns/div.

The maximum effective RIS sampling rate is achieved by making multiple single-shot acquisitions at maximum real-time sample rate. The bins thus acquired are positioned approximately 8 ps (125 GS/s) apart. The process of acquiring these bins and satisfying the time constraint is a random one. The relative time between ADC sampling instants and the event trigger provides the necessary variation. The system then interleaves these acquisitions to provide a waveform covering a time interval that is a multiple of the maximum single-shot sampling rate. However, the real-time interval over which the instrument collects the waveform data is much longer, and depends on the trigger rate and the amount of interleaving required.

Because the instrument requires multiple triggers to complete an acquisition, RIS is best used on repetitive waveforms with a stable trigger. The number depends on the sample rate: the higher the sample rate, the more triggers are required.



Note: RIS is not available when the oscilloscope is operating at fixed sample rate or using another form of channel interleaving.

Roll Sampling Mode

Parameters or math functions are updated only after each acquisition is complete, as new data becomes available. Therefore, Roll mode should not be used with Auto trigger mode, because as the acquisition is never "complete," parameters are not updated correctly.

Timebase must be set sufficiently slow to enable Roll mode selection; increase Time/div to 100 ms/div or more and decrease sample rate to 5 MS/s or less to activate the Roll mode option on the Timebase dialog. Only Edge trigger is supported for Roll mode acquisitions.

Roll mode displays incoming points of slow timebase acquisitions so that the trace appears to "roll" continuously across the screen from right to left. The acquisition is complete when a trigger event is detected, at which point the next acquisition begins immediately.



Note: Roll mode sampling is not available when using any form of digital interleaving. If processing time is greater than acquisition time, the roll mode buffer is overwritten. The instrument warns, "Channel data is not continuous in ROLL mode!!!" and rolling starts again.

Sequence Sampling Mode

In Sequence Mode sampling, the completed acquisition consists of a number of fixed-size segments each containing the trigger event. The instrument calculates the capture duration and number of sample points in each segment from the user-defined number of segments and total available memory. Acquired segments can be arranged adjacent to one another, forming the waveform display of a typical acquisition, or in other types of sequence displays to facilitate comparison of the segments.

Sequence Mode is ideal for capturing specific events that may be separated by long time intervals. The instrument can acquire over long periods waiting for the trigger event, recording only the desired segments while ignoring the uninteresting periods between events. Measurements can be made on selected segments or on the entire acquisition sequence.

See [Sequence Mode Set Up](#).



Note: You cannot operate some Serial Decoders on Sequence Mode acquisitions.

Timebase Mode

Time/Division is the time represented by one horizontal division of the grid. Touch the Up/Down Arrow buttons on the Timebase dialog or turn the front panel Horizontal knob to adjust this value. The overall length of the acquisition record is equal to 10 times the Time/Division setting.

Delay is the amount of time relative to the trigger event to display on the grid. Raising/lowering the Delay value has the effect of shifting the trace to the right/left. This allows you to isolate and display a time/event of interest that occurs before or after the trigger event.

- **Pre-trigger Delay**, entered as a positive value, displays the acquisition time prior to the trigger event, which occurs at time 0 when in Real Time sampling mode. Pre-trigger Delay can be set up to the instrument's maximum sample record length; how much actual time this represents depends on the timebase. At maximum pre-trigger Delay, the trigger point is off the grid (indicated by the arrow at the lower right corner), and everything you see represents 10 divisions of pre-trigger time.

- **Post-trigger Delay**, entered as a negative value, displays time following the trigger event. Post-trigger Delay can cover a much greater lapse of acquisition time than pre-trigger Delay, up to the equivalent of 10,000 divisions after the trigger event (it is limited at slower time/div settings and in Roll mode). At maximum post-trigger Delay, the trigger point is off the grid far left of the time displayed.

Set to Zero returns Delay to zero.

Sampling Rate

These controls specify how the instrument samples when in Real Time mode.

Set Maximum Memory sets the oscilloscope to take the maximum number of samples possible given the amount of pre- or post-trigger Delay and the Time/div, up to the maximum record length. This optimizes the sample rate for fast timebases when in Real Time mode.

Maximum Sample Points shows the maximum number of samples taken per acquisition. The actual number of samples acquired can be lower due to the other timebase settings.

Fixed Sampling Rate allows you to set a fixed rate of sampling, in which case the length of acquisition depends on the Time/div. The oscilloscope will use whatever memory is required for the acquisition time, until none remains. Lowering the rate can extend the acquisition to accommodate slower timebases or longer delays.

In this mode, Maximum Sample Points changes to **Sampling Rate** for you to enter the desired rate.



Note: To avoid aliasing and other waveform distortions, it is advisable (per Nyquist) to acquire at a sample rate at least twice the bandwidth of the input signal. Those with higher speed acquisition systems may need to manually adjust Bandwidth, Time/div, Sample Rate, and the number of Active Channels to achieve the optimal result.

Enhanced Sample Rate

On instruments with Enhanced Sample Rate (ESR), Sinx/x interpolation is applied globally to all channels in order to improve measurement accuracy over a wide range of timebases.

On HDO6000B and HDO4000A oscilloscopes, the maximum ESR upsampling factor is 4x.

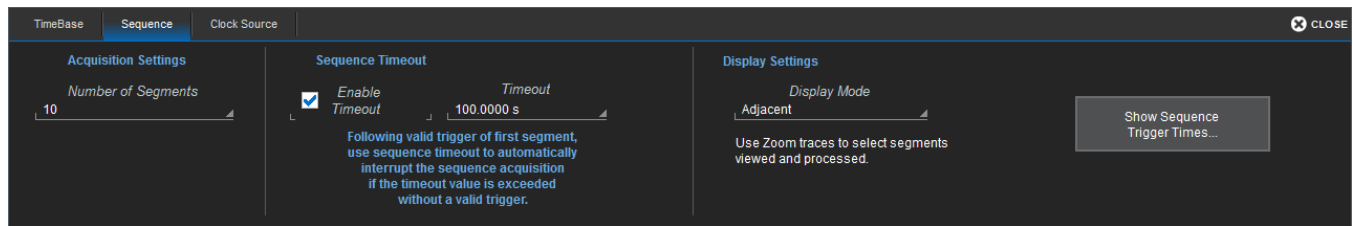
In "Set Maximum Memory" mode, ESR will be enabled whenever the timebase settings dictate that the required acquisition length is less than or equal to the maximum memory value selected. The ESR factor is automatically adjusted to yield the best possible sample rate. In "Fixed Sample Rate" mode, the ESR rate will correspond to the maximum selectable sample rate.

Enhanced Sample Rate per channel can be added or set to Linear (None) on the Channel (Cn) setup dialog.

When ESR is in use, the code E/ESR will appear on the descriptor boxes of the active channels.

Sequence Mode Set Up

The Sequence dialog appears behind the Timebase dialog only when Sequence Mode sampling is selected. Use it to define the number of fixed-size segments to be acquired.



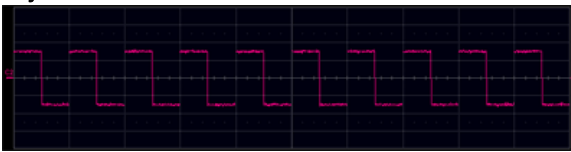
1. From the menu bar, choose **Timebase > Horizontal Setup...**, then **Sequence Sampling Mode**.
2. On the **Sequence** tab under Acquisition Settings, enter the **Number of Segments** to acquire.
3. To stop acquisition in case no valid trigger event occurs within a certain timeframe, check the **Enable Timeout** box and provide a **Timeout** value.



Note: While optional, Timeout ensures that the acquisition completes in a reasonable amount of time and control is returned to the operator/controller without having to manually stop the acquisition, making it especially useful for remote control applications.

4. Touch **Display mode** and select a sequence display mode from the pop-up menu:

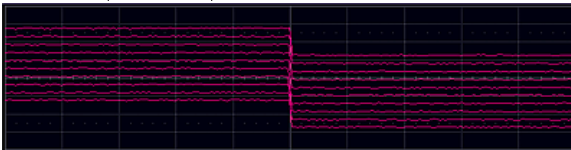
Adjacent



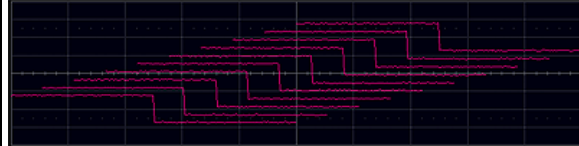
Overlay



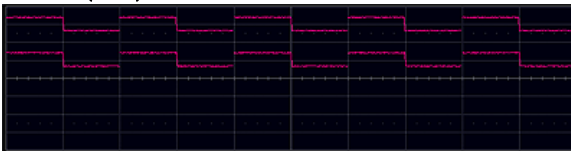
Waterfall (cascaded)



Perspective



Mosaic (tiled)



5. To see the trigger times of those segments acquired, stop acquisition and touch **Show Sequence Trigger Times**. This will launch the Trigger Time tab of the Acquisition Status dialogs.

When in Sequence sampling mode, you can view individual segments easily using the front panel **Zoom** button. A new zoom of the channel trace defaults to Segment 1. You can view other segments by changing the **First** and total **Num(ber)** of segments to be shown on the **Zn** dialog. Touch the **Zn** descriptor to display the dialog.



Tip: When Num is 1, you can use the front panel Adjust knob to scroll to each segment.

Channel descriptor boxes indicate the total number of segments acquired in sequence mode. Zoom descriptor boxes show the first segment displayed ([#]) and total number of segments displayed (#). As with all other zoom traces, the zoomed segments are highlighted on the source trace.

C1	D50	C2	D50	Z1	zoom(C1)	Z2	zoom(C2)
16 GHz	50.0 mV/ 0.00 mV 10 Seg	16 GHz	50.0 mV/ 0.00 mV 10 Seg		50.0 mV/ 500 ps/ [1] 1 Seg		50.0 mV/ 500 ps/ [1] 1 Seg

Example: You have acquired 10 segments of two channels. You choose to display only segment 1. The C_n descriptor box reads 10 Seg(ments). The Z_n descriptor box reads [1]1 Seg, meaning you are displaying a total of one segment starting with segment 1.

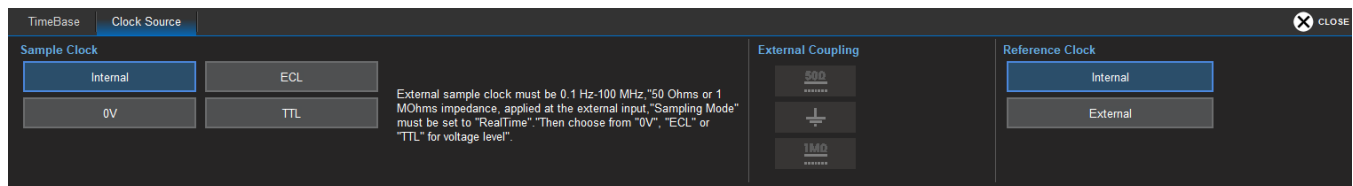
Clock Source Settings

In some cases, an external clock signal can replace the instrument's internal 10 MHz clock.

Oscilloscope	External Clock	Frequencies	Impedance	Use Input
HDO6000	Reference Clock	10 MHz \pm 25 ppm @ 0 - 10 dBm	50 Ω	Rear REF In
HDO6000A HDO6000B	Sample Clock	DC to 100 MHz	50 Ω / 1 M Ω	Front EXT In



Note: External clocks can only be used in real-time sampling mode. An external trigger cannot be used when an external sampling clock is in use.



Reference Clock

An external 10 MHz reference clock can be used to synchronize the instrument's internal timebase with an external frequency source so that multiple instruments can lock timebases to a common source.

1. Connect a clock source to the reference clock input using a BNC cable.
2. Go to **Timebase > Horizontal Setup** and choose **Real-Time Sampling Mode**.
3. On the **Clock Source** tab under Reference Clock choose **External**.

Sample Clock

An external sampling clock replaces the internal timebase as the sampling clock, controlling when the digitizers sample the input waveforms.

1. Connect a clock source to the sample clock input (see table below) using a BNC cable.
2. Go to **Timebase > Horizontal Setup** and choose **Real-time Sampling Mode**.
3. On the **Clock Source** tab, under **Sample Clock** choose the clock threshold:

- **0V** samples a symmetrical square wave with a minimum amplitude of 150 mVpp at the zero level
 - **ECL** samples a square wave with a minimum amplitude of 150 mVpp at the -1.3 V level
 - **TTL** samples a square wave with a minimum amplitude of 1.8 Vpp at the +1.6 V level
4. Choose the **External Coupling** that matches the clock source input impedance.

History Mode

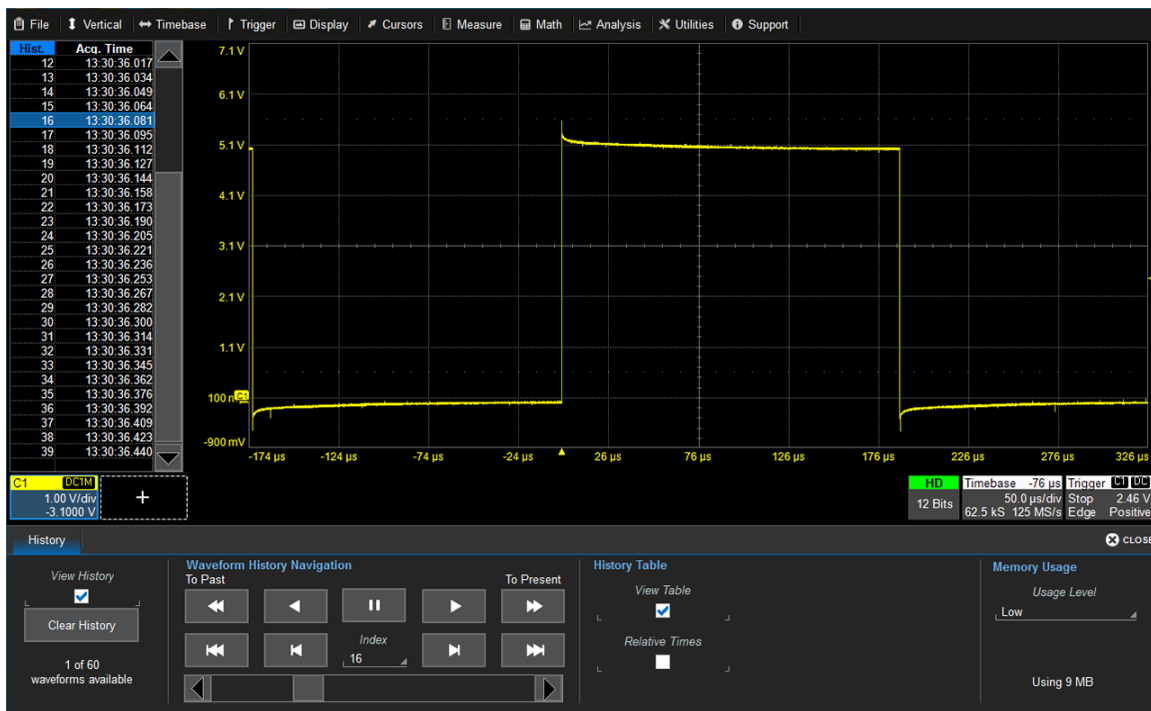
History Mode allows you to review any acquisition saved in the history buffer. Not only can individual acquisitions be restored to the grid, you can "scroll" backward and forward through the history at varying speeds to capture changes in the waveforms over time. To access this feature, choose **Timebase > History Mode** or press the front panel **History Mode** button, then select **View History** to enable the display.

Each record is indexed and time-stamped, and you can choose to view the absolute time of acquisition or the time relative to when you entered History Mode. In the latter case, the last acquisition is time zero, and all others are stamped with a negative time. The maximum number of records stored depends on your acquisition settings and the total available memory.

Entering History Mode automatically stops new acquisitions. To leave History Mode, press the **History Mode** button again, or restart acquisition by pressing one of the front panel Trigger Mode buttons.



Note: History Mode does not work with RIS or Sequence Mode acquisitions, or ERes on the input.



Oscilloscope in History mode.

Replay Acquisition History

Watching a "movie" of the history allows you to see waveform changes that are invisible during real-time acquisition. Use the buttons or the slider bar at the bottom of the dialog to navigate the history.

- Top row buttons scroll: Fast Backward, Slow Backward, Slow Forward, Fast Forward.
- Bottom row buttons step: Back to Start, Back One, Go to Index (row #), Forward One, Forward to End.

Press **Pause** when you see something of interest, then use the History table to find the exact Index.

View Single Acquisition

Select **View Table** to show the index of records. Select the row from the table or enter its **Index** number.

Trigger

Triggers define the event around which digitized information is displayed on the grid.

Different Trigger Types are used to select different events in the trigger source waveforms: edge voltages, pulse widths, high/low states, etc. These may be a single-channel event or a complex pattern of events across several channels. On instruments with Mixed Signal capabilities, pattern triggers can be set on analog channels (including the External Trigger input), digital lines or a mix of both.

In addition to the type, the Trigger Mode determines how the instrument behaves as it encounters trigger events: take a single acquisition and stop, holding on to the display of the last acquisition, or continuously take and display acquisitions.

In both cases, when the previous acquisition has completed processing, the oscilloscope is again ready to acquire and the READY indicator is lit. If, while READY, the trigger circuit detects a signal that matches the trigger conditions, the oscilloscope triggers on the next matching event, and the TRIG'D indicator is lit.

Unless modified by a pre- or post-trigger Delay, the trigger event appears at time 0 at the horizontal center of the grid, and a period of time equal to five divisions of the timebase is shown to the left and right of it. Delay shifts the acquisition "window" on screen, displaying a different portion of the waveform.

An additional condition of Holdoff by time or events is available for Edge and Pattern triggers, including those that appear within Qualified triggers. Holdoff arms the trigger on the first matching event, inserts the holdoff count, then triggers on a subsequent event. Often, especially with repetitive signals, the initial arming event appears to the left of the trigger in "negative" acquisition time.

Trigger Modes

The Trigger Mode determines how often the instrument acquires. It is equivalent to how analog oscilloscopes "sweep," or refresh, the display. Trigger Mode can be set from the Trigger menu or from the front panel Trigger control group.

In **Single** mode, when you choose **Trigger > Single** or press the front panel **Single** button, the oscilloscope readies, arms, and triggers provided all trigger conditions (including Holdoff) are met. It then stops and continues to display the last acquisition until a new one is taken. The oscilloscope remains armed unless manually stopped or triggered, and if a valid trigger does not occur, invoking Single a second time will force a trigger and display the acquisition.

In **Normal** mode, operation is the same as in Single, except that the trigger automatically re-arms after the previous acquisition is complete, and data is continuously refreshed on the touch screen.

Auto operates the same as Normal mode, except that a trigger is forced if the trigger event has not occurred within a preset timeout period.

Stop ceases acquisition processing until you select one of the other three modes. The arming and Holdoff counters are cleared, even if there has not yet been a trigger since the previous acquisition.

Trigger Types

The Trigger Type sets the triggering conditions.

Edge triggers upon achieving a certain voltage level in the positive or negative slope of the waveform.

Width triggers upon finding a positive- or negative-going pulse width when measured at the specified voltage level.

Pattern triggers upon a user-defined pattern of high and low voltage levels on selected inputs. On oscilloscopes with mixed-signal capability, it may be a digital logic pattern or a combined digital-analog pattern. If your oscilloscope does not have mixed-signal capability, the pattern can be set using analog channels alone.

Measurement is not technically a trigger, per se, but permits the instrument to stop and display acquisition based on a post-processing measurement result, similar to a trigger.

TV triggers on a specified line and field in standard (PAL, SECAM, NTSC, HDTV) or custom composite video signals.

Serial triggers on the occurrence of user-defined serial data events. This type will only appear if you have installed protocol-specific serial trigger and decode options. Go to teledynelecroy.com/serialdata to download manuals.

MultiStage Types

MultiStage triggers define an event on one signal that "qualifies" or arms the trigger, and another event on a second signal that fires the trigger. They are useful for capturing time violations that occur between the state different signals. First choose MultiStage to show all the triggers in the group.

Cascaded establishes a succession of criteria in Stages A-D. The trigger occurs when stage D—or whatever is the last defined event—is achieved. In Normal trigger mode, it automatically resets after finding the last defined event. You may apply additional Holdoff by time or number of events between each stage in the cascade.

Qualified arms when the 'A' event occurs on one signal, then fires when the 'B' event occurs on another. In Normal trigger mode, it automatically resets after the 'B' event and re-arms upon the next matching 'A' event.

QualFirst is only enabled when in Sequence sampling mode. It operates and is set up exactly like a Qualified trigger, except that the qualifying 'A' event need only occur once, and all the segments are captured in succession when the 'B' event occurs on the trigger source.

Smart Triggers

Smart triggers allow you to apply Boolean logic conditions to the basic signal characteristics of level, slope, and polarity to determine when to trigger. First select Smart to show all the triggers in the group.

Glitch triggers upon finding a pulse-width that is less than a specified time or within a specified time range.

Window triggers when a signal exits a window defined by voltage thresholds.

Interval triggers upon finding a specific time between two consecutive edges of the same polarity. Use it to capture intervals that fall short of, or exceed, a specified range.

Dropout triggers when a signal loss is detected. The trigger is generated at the end of the timeout period following the last trigger source transition. It is used primarily in Single acquisitions with pre-trigger Delay.

Runt triggers when a pulse crosses a first threshold, but fails to cross a second threshold before re-crossing the first. Other defining conditions for this trigger are the edge (triggers on the slope opposite to that selected) and runt width.

Slew Rate triggers when the rising or falling edge of a pulse crosses an upper and a lower level. The pulse edge must cross the thresholds faster or slower than a selected period of time.

Other Triggers

What are commonly known as External and Line triggers are not trigger *types*, per se, but alternative *sources* that may be used with several types of triggers, most usually Edge triggers that fire upon the occurrence of a particular edge and level of the trigger input.

External triggers (Ext source) look for the selected slope and level in an externally generated pulse that is input to the oscilloscope's Ext. In port. In Pattern triggers, the Ext. In port may be examined for a High/Low state as part of the overall triggering pattern. Select the Coupling to use for the Ext. In port when defining the pattern.

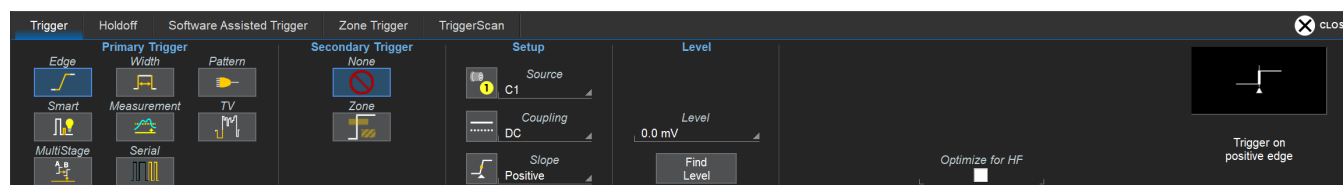
Line triggers (Line source) are Edge triggers that fire at the occurrence of the 50% level of the selected slope on the AC power line connected to the oscilloscope.

A [Zone trigger](#) allows you to visually define the waveform states that will trigger an acquisition, adding a second set of trigger conditions to the primary hardware trigger. Similar to a mask test, shapes drawn on the grid represent Areas that a waveform must be "In" or "Out" to qualify each trigger condition. An acquisition occurs only when all the primary and secondary trigger conditions are met. Custom Boolean logic can be added to define Areas relative to each other.

Trigger Set Up

To open the Trigger dialog, press the **front panel Trigger Setup** button or touch the **Trigger descriptor box**. Different controls will appear depending on the Trigger [Type](#) selected (e.g., Slope for Edge triggers). Complete the settings shown after making your selection.

The trigger condition is summarized in a preview window at the far right of the Trigger dialog. Refer to this to confirm your selections are producing the trigger you want.



Source

For most triggers, the **Source** is the analog channel or digital line to inspect for the trigger conditions. Depending on the type of trigger, in addition to input channels C1-Cn or digital lines D0-Dn, the trigger source may be:

- A pulse from an external instrument connected to the **Ext In.** input (i.e., external trigger)
- The **Line** frequency of the oscilloscope power input (i.e., line trigger)

Pattern triggers may utilize multiple sources (such as a mix of analog and digital signals), and likewise Multi-Stage triggers use different sources for the arming and triggering events.



Tip: On instruments with OneTouch, the trigger source can be easily set by dragging the desired channel descriptor box onto the Trigger descriptor box. Note that the trigger coupling and slope/polarity will revert to whatever was last set on that channel.

Coupling

For analog triggers, specify the type of signal **Coupling** at the input:

- **DC** - Frequency components are coupled to the trigger circuit for high frequency bursts, or where the use of AC coupling would shift the effective trigger level.
- **AC** - Capacitively coupled. DC levels are rejected, and frequencies below 50 Hz are attenuated.
- **LFREJ** - Coupled through a capacitive high-pass filter network, DC is rejected and signal frequencies below 50 kHz are attenuated. For stable triggering on medium to high frequency signals.
- **HFREJ** - DC coupled to the trigger circuit, and a low-pass filter network attenuates frequencies above 50 kHz (used for triggering on low frequencies).

Slope/Polarity

For some triggers, such as Edge, you will be asked to select the waveform **Slope** (i.e., rising vs. falling) on which the triggering event occurs. For others, such as Width, the equivalent selection will be **Polarity** (i.e., positive vs. negative).

Level

For analog triggers, enter the **Level** at which the triggering condition must occur. Use the **Find Level** button to set the level to the signal mean.

Trigger types that require multiple crossings to define the triggering condition—such as Window, SlewRate and Runt— will have **Upper Level** and **Lower Level** fields.

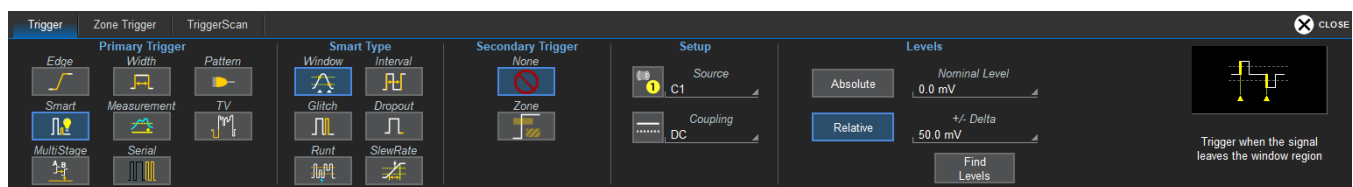
For digital pattern triggers, the level is determined by the **Logic Family** that is set on the digital group. This can also be specified by entering a custom (User-Defined) crossing **Threshold** and **Hysteresis**. Usually, there will be a separate Logic tab for these settings.

Hysteresis

For Edge triggers, you may select to **Optimize for HF**. When this box is left unchecked, the trigger circuit's hysteresis is set quite high to eliminate any potential trigger instability from high-frequency noise riding on a low-frequency input signal. Because HF signal amplitudes tend to be smaller, the Optimize for HF setting reduces the hysteresis value to make the trigger more sensitive. The effect this will have on trigger behavior depends on the signal's spectral and noise content rather than just fundamental frequency, so it's overall effect is difficult to quantify.

Conditions (Smart Triggers)

Smart triggers all allow you to apply Boolean logic to extend the possible triggering conditions beyond an absolute Level and Slope/Polarity.



Triggering events can be **Less Than**, **Less Than or Equal To**, **Greater Than**, etc. an **Upper Value** and/or **Lower Value**.

In some cases, it is possible to set a discrete range of values that satisfy the condition. Depending on the trigger, the triggering values may be any that are **In Range** bounded by the upper/lower values, or any that are **Out Range** of the upper/lower bounds.

The extent of the range can often also be specified by using a **Nominal** and **Delta** value, rather than an absolute upper and lower value. In this case, the Nominal value sets the center of the range, and the Delta determines how many units plus/minus the Nominal value are included in the range.

For Dropout triggers, the default is to **Ignore Opposite Edge**, setting the trigger to fire on a dropout of the Positive or Negative edge within the given timeframe. Deselecting it has the effect of setting the trigger on Both edges, which will fire when dropout occurs on either edge.

Patterns

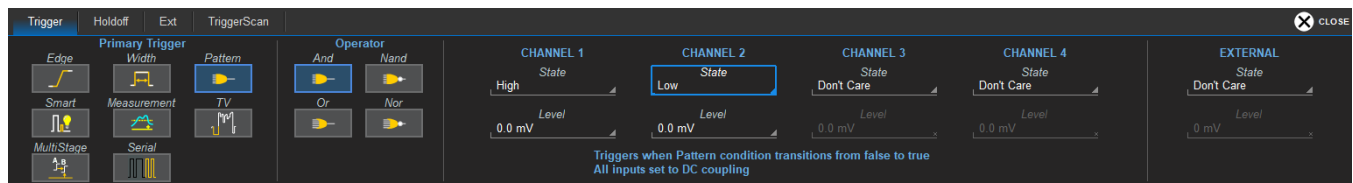
A triggering logic pattern may be set on digital lines, analog channels or a combination of both. See [Digital Pattern Trigger](#) for digital/mixed-signal trigger setup instructions.

Purely analog patterns may be set on a combination of High/Low states across the channels and the External input. Disconnect any digital input device to enable the analog pattern trigger controls.



Note: When the assertion of an ongoing external signal is used to arm the trigger, the presence of it can be made part of the triggering pattern by including the State of the External input. Note, however, that in Normal trigger mode, the full pattern will need to be detected twice for the trigger to fire: the first occurrence arms the trigger, the second fires it. Another method is to use a Qualified trigger with the State of the External input as the arming A event, and the Pattern on the channels as the triggering B event. To use an externally generated pulse (rather than a persistent High/Low state) to arm the trigger, configure a Qualified trigger with an Edge on the External input as the A event.

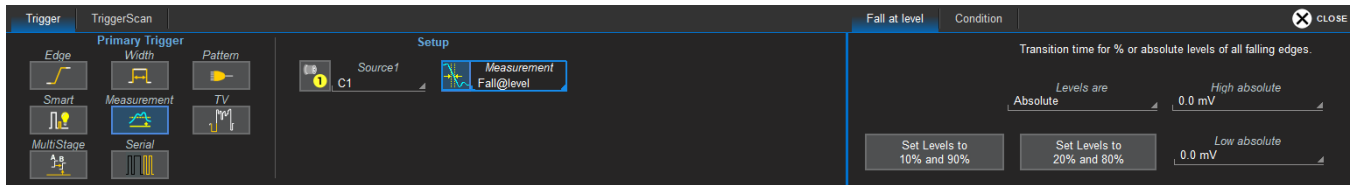
To trigger on a pattern of analog channel High/Low states:



1. On the Trigger dialog, select the **Pattern** trigger type.
2. Select the Boolean **Operator** that describes the relationship among input states:
 - AND asserts the simultaneous presence of all the states (e.g., C1 is High AND C2 is Low).
 - OR asserts the presence of any state.
 - NAND asserts the simultaneous absence of all the states.
 - NOR asserts the absence of any state.
3. For each input in the trigger pattern, select what **State** it must be in compared to the threshold Level. Leave "Don't Care" for any input you wish to exclude from the pattern.
4. For each input included in the trigger, enter the voltage threshold **Level**.
5. If you've included the EXT(ernal) input in the pattern, open the **Ext** tab and enter the input **Attenuation**.

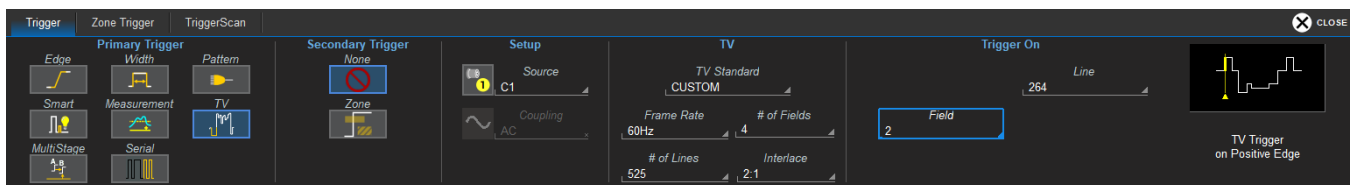
Measurement Trigger

Measurement is not technically a trigger, but permits the instrument to stop and display acquisition based on a post-processing measurement result, similar to a trigger. The available measurements will each offer a different method for specifying the "trigger" conditions, based on the type of measurement. Generally, you will be able to specify a triggering value or range of values, and for @level parameters, the voltage level at which the measurement is taken.



TV Trigger

TV triggers on a specified line and field in standard or custom composite video signals.



1. Choose the **Source** signal input.
2. Choose the signal **TV Standard**. To use a custom signal, also enter the **Frame Rate**, **# of Fields** per line, **# of Lines**, and **Interlace** ratio.
3. Choose the **Line** and **Field** upon which to trigger.

Serial Trigger

The Serial trigger type will appear if you have installed serial data trigger and decode options. Select the **Serial** type then the desired **Protocol** to open the serial trigger setup dialogs. For setup instructions, download the software instruction manual from teledynelecroy.com/serialdata.



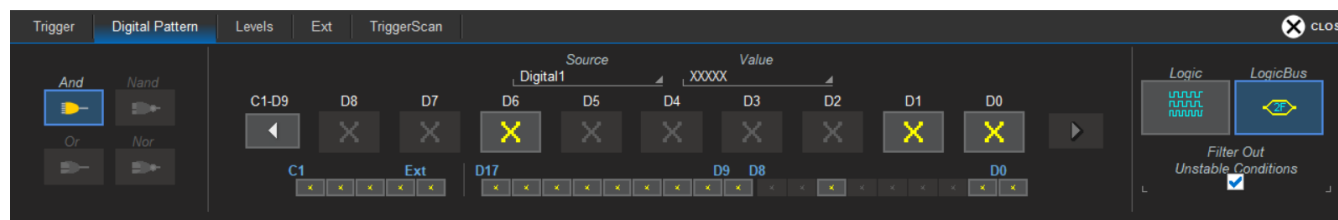
Note: Certain software serial triggers can only be input on certain channels; the set up dialog will instruct you which channel to use. Information on the operation of hardware serial pattern triggers can be obtained from the *High Speed Serial Triggers Instruction Manual*.

Digital Pattern Trigger

Pattern is the default trigger type selection when a digital input device is connected to the instrument. A Pattern trigger can be set on a digital logic pattern, or a combination of digital logic and analog states.

Logic Bus Method

The Logic Bus method simplifies pattern set up by utilizing digital groups and logic you have already defined on the Digital setup dialogs. Lines not included in the digital pattern are disabled (X = "Don't Care").



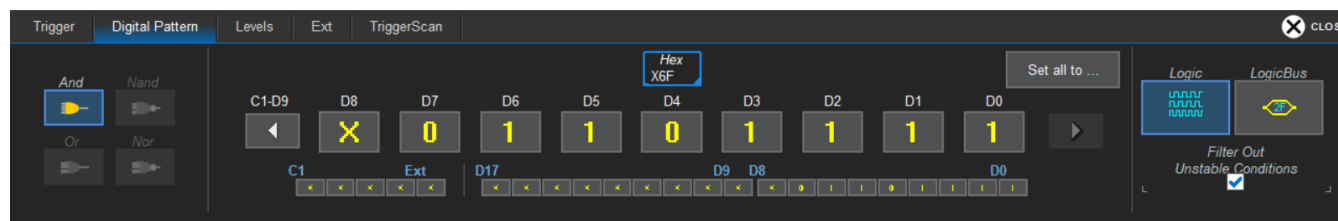
1. Select the **Trigger descriptor** and choose **Trigger Type Pattern**.
2. On the Digital Pattern dialog, select the **Logic Bus** button.
3. Enter the **Source** Digital n group to use for the pattern. The dialog will show the high/low logic pattern already set on that digital group and the hexadecimal **Value** it represents. The bottom of the dialog shows the entire pattern across both lead banks.



Note: Digital lines inherit the Logic Setup made when defining the digital group. However, you can change the logic threshold on the Levels dialog. The two settings are linked; they will always reflect whatever was last selected on either dialog. MSO logic thresholds can only be set per lead bank, not individual line.

Logic Method

If you have not yet set up digital groups, you can set a logic pattern line by line using the Logic method. All available lines remain active for selection.



1. Select the **Trigger descriptor** and choose **Trigger Type Pattern**.
2. On the Digital Pattern dialog, select the **Logic** button.
3. To apply a digital logic pattern, either:
 - Enter the hexadecimal value of the pattern in **Hex**. Lines will take a logical 1, 0 or X ("Don't Care") according to the pattern. Inactive lines will remain X.
 - Touch the **Dn button** for each active line and select whether it must be High or Low compared to the logic threshold. Depending on your selection, a logical 1 (High) or 0 (Low) now appears on the dialog. Leave X selected for any line you wish to exclude from the pattern. Use the Left and Right Arrow buttons to display lines in other digital banks.



Note: As an alternative, you may set edge conditions on any line. Touch the **Dn button** and choose the edge. Edge conditions always assume a logical OR in the overall trigger criteria.

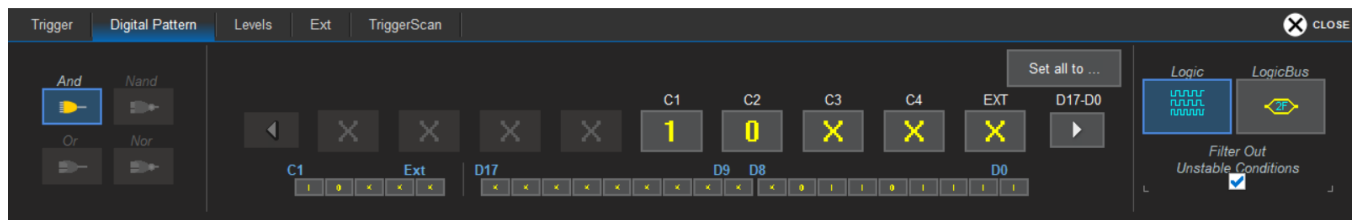
4. Open the **Levels dialog** and either:
 - Select a **Logic Family** for each digital bank (if using Digital Leadset) or digital line (if using HDA125)
 - Choose Logic Family **User Defined**, then enter a custom **Threshold** voltage and **Hysteresis**

Adding an Analog Pattern

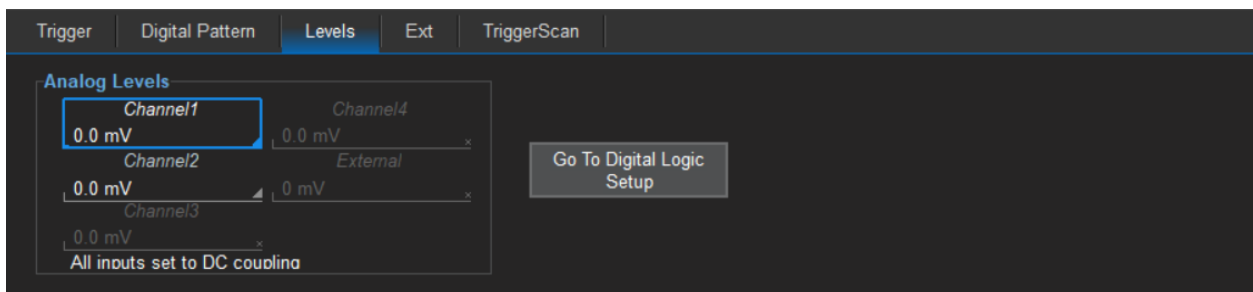
A pattern of high/low states on analog channels, including the EXT input, can be added to a digital pattern trigger. The analog pattern forms an additional trigger condition that must be met coincident with the digital pattern.



Note: Only the AND operator is available when combining analog and digital patterns. All the states in the analog pattern must occur simultaneously.



1. Touch the **Left Arrow** button until the C1-EXT group of inputs is displayed in the main section of the dialog.
2. Touch the **Cn button** for each input to be included in the pattern, and select whether it must be High or Low compared to the threshold Level you will set. Depending on your selection, a logical 1 (High) or 0 (Low) now appears on the dialog. Leave Don't Care ("X") selected for any input you wish to exclude.
3. Open the **Levels dialog** and enter the voltage threshold for each analog channel included in the trigger.



4. If you've included an EXT input in the analog pattern, open the **Ext dialog** and enter the **Attenuation** to use on the EXT input.
5. The **Go to Digital Logic Setup** button will return you to the Logic Setup dialog for setting digital thresholds.

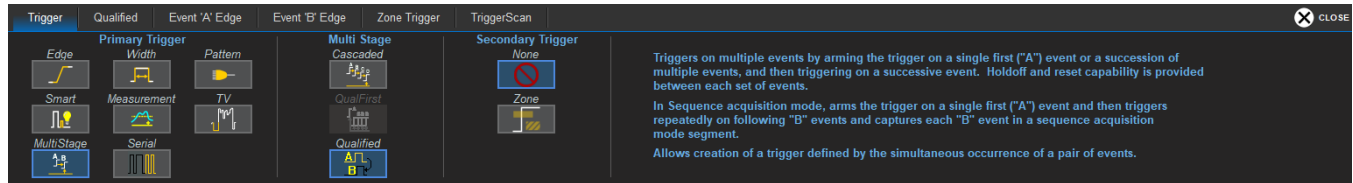
Glitch Filter

Filter Out Unstable Conditions ignores short glitches that last less than 3.5 ns in logic state triggers. It is selected by default, you can optionally deselect it to turn off the filter.

Qualified Trigger

A Qualified trigger arms when the qualifying A event occurs on one signal, then fires when the B event occurs on another signal. In Normal trigger mode, it automatically resets after the B event and re-arms upon the next qualifying A event. It is useful for capturing time violations that occur between the state of two signals.

On the Trigger dialog, select **MultiStage** trigger type and choose **Qualified**.



Event 'A'

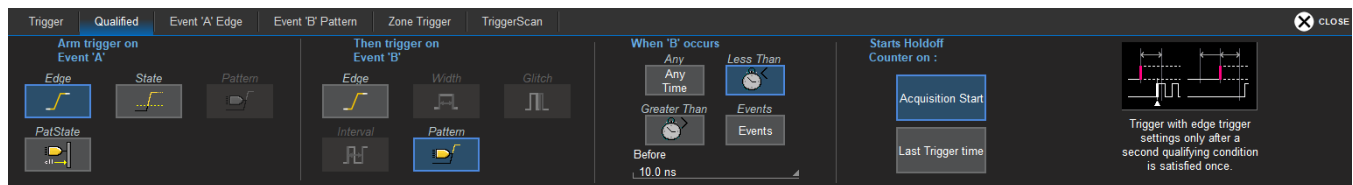
The A signals' transition above or below a given level serves as the enabling, or qualifying, condition for the second, triggering signal (or pattern of signals). It may be:

- **Edge**-qualified once the validating Edge condition occurs on the A signal, with no further requirements. This is set up the same as any Edge trigger by defining the level and slope upon which the A signal is considered to be qualified. Select this method when using an externally generated pulse to arm the trigger.
- **State**-qualified, where the A signal amplitude must remain in a High/Low state until the B event occurs. Select this method when using an externally generated High/Low signal to arm the trigger.
- **Pattern**-qualified, where a logical pattern must occur across several digital lines/analog channels. The qualifying Pattern is set up the same as a Pattern trigger.
- **PatState**-qualified, where a pattern of High/Low states must persist across several analog channels until the B event occurs. The qualifying pattern is set up the same as a Pattern trigger using only the analog channels (C1-Cn and Ext inputs).



Note: Qualifying patterns should **not** include the B trigger source(s) as any input.

On the **Qualified** dialog, choose the A event. After choosing the qualifying method, open the Event 'A' tab and set the qualifying conditions.



Event 'B'

Once you've selected the B trigger event on the Qualified dialog, set up the triggering conditions on the Event 'B' dialog exactly as you would a single-stage trigger. The B events available depend on the A event selected; for example, if the A event is a Pattern, the B event can only be an Edge or other single-source trigger such as Width, Glitch or Interval, not another Pattern.



Note: The B trigger event should **not** involve any source signal that was used in the qualifying A event.

Time Window

When the B event is the occurrence of an Edge or Pattern, a window can be set to constrain the time in which B must occur following A in order for the trigger to fire. Use the **When B Occurs** buttons to trigger:

- **Any Time** that B occurs after being qualified by A. This selection is best when you don't care about the time between A and B events, just that A has already occurred.
- When B occurs in **Less Than/Before** the time set after being qualified by A.
- When B occurs in **Greater Than/After** the time set after being qualified by A.
- After **N (trigger) Events** have occurred on the B signal after being qualified by A. This is similar to Holdoff by Events, with the added condition that A must have occurred before the first B.

When using a time window, the time between A and B can be counted from either:

- **Acquisition Start**, in which case only an A event that occurs within the acquisition window of the B trigger event is used. A events that may have occurred during the "dead time" between acquisitions are ignored.



Tip: If you use this selection, be sure that you have set a long enough timebase that an A event will occur within the time needed to qualify the trigger.

- **Last Trigger**, in which case any A events that occurred since the last trigger will start the count, including those that may have occurred within the "dead time."

QualFirst Trigger

The QualFirst trigger, which is only used in Sequence sampling mode, operates and is set up exactly like the [Qualified](#) trigger, except that the qualifying A event need only occur once, and all the segments are captured in succession when the B trigger conditions occur on the trigger source (you need "qualify" only the "first" segment).



Note: The Qualified trigger can also be used with Sequence mode acquisitions, but the behavior is different. Both the A and the B events must occur in order to fire the trigger for each segment.

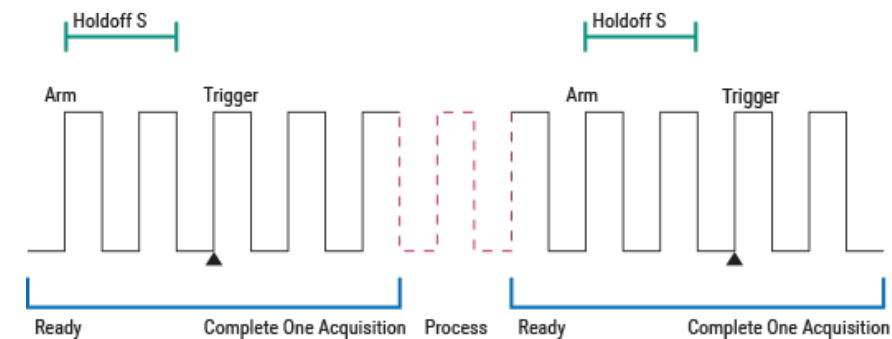
Trigger Holdoff

Holdoff is either a period of time or an event count that may be set as an additional condition for Edge and Pattern triggers. Holdoff disables the trigger temporarily, even if the other conditions are met. Use Holdoff to obtain a stable trigger for repetitive, composite waveforms. For example, if the number or duration of sub-signals is known, you can disable them by setting an appropriate Holdoff value.

Hold Off by Time

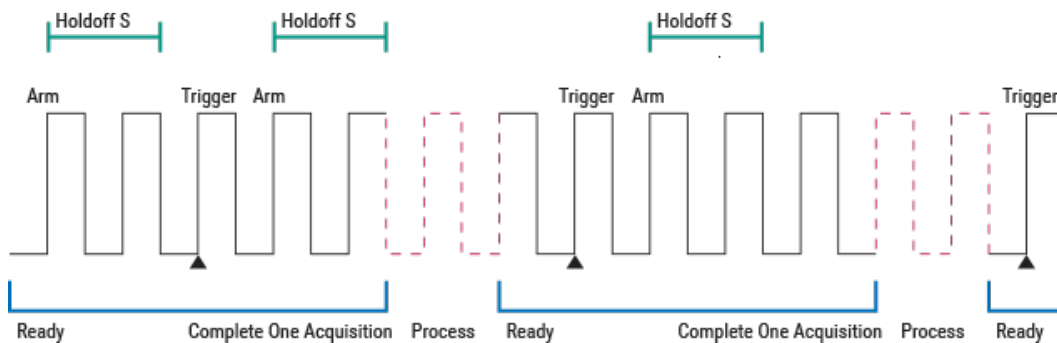
This is a period of time to wait after the arming event before triggering on the next event. The maximum allowed time is 20 seconds; Holdoff time is otherwise limited only by the input signal frequency, coupling, and the instrument's bandwidth.

When a Holdoff by time is counted from the start of the acquisition, the oscilloscope readies, arms on the first event, holds for the specified time, then triggers on the next event. After one full acquisition has completed, the oscilloscope again readies, arms, holds, and triggers for the following acquisition.



Positive Edge trigger with Holdoff by time counted from the start of acquisition.

When a Holdoff by time is counted from the last trigger time, the oscilloscope immediately re-arms on the first event following the trigger and begins counting the Holdoff, rather than wait to complete the full acquisition. The Holdoff count continues even during the very brief time between acquisitions while the oscilloscope is processing. As soon as the Holdoff is satisfied *and* the oscilloscope is again ready, it triggers on the next event. The re-arming and Holdoff may occur in one acquisition, and the trigger in the next.



Positive Edge trigger with Holdoff by time counted from the last trigger time.



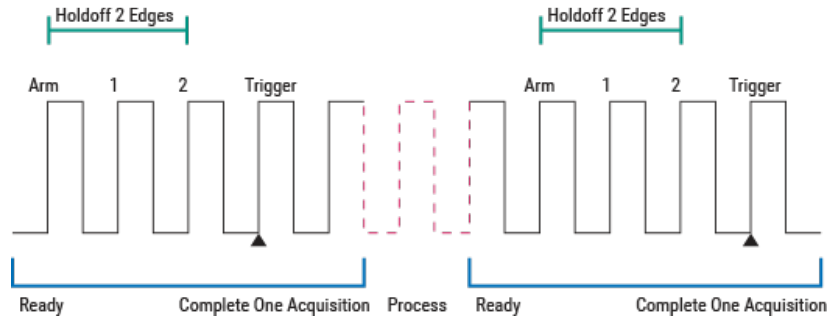
Note: Because there is only one trigger per acquisition, the trigger event will always belongs to the new acquisition. The processing time shown here is for purposes of illustration only.

Regardless of where in the acquisition record the trigger event was found (first edge or last), the display will show time pre- and post-trigger based on your Time/Div and Delay settings.

Hold Off by Events

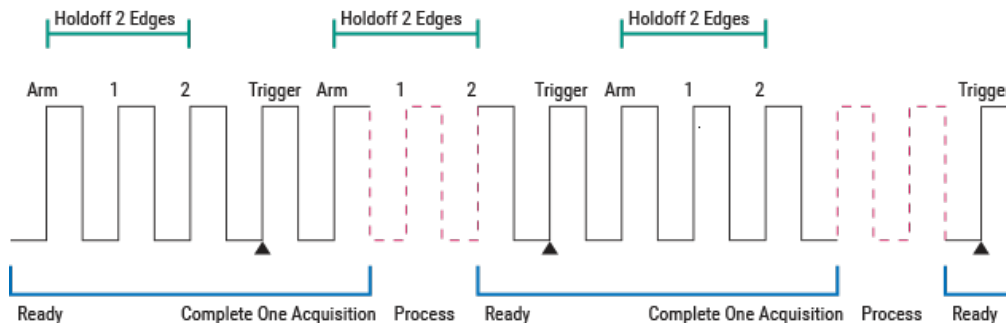
Events refers to the number of times the trigger conditions have been met following the arming event.

For example, if the Holdoff is two edges counted from the start of the acquisition, the oscilloscope readies, arms on the first edge, holds off for the next two, triggers on the fourth edge, then completes the acquisition. Because there must always be a first arming edge, it appears to be "Holdoff plus one."



Positive Edge trigger with Holdoff by events counted from start of acquisition.

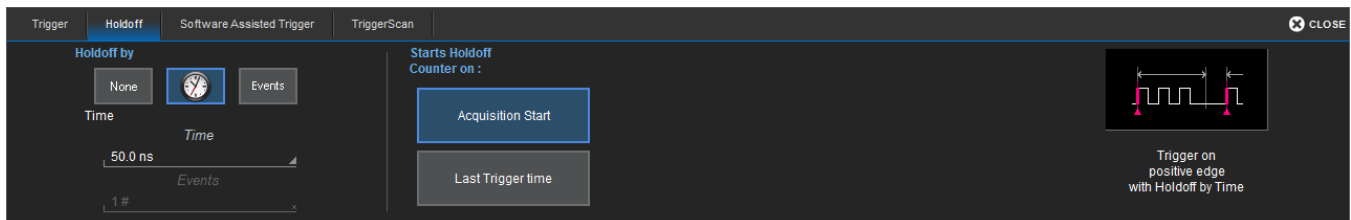
As with Holdoff by time, when a Holdoff by events is counted from the last trigger time, the oscilloscope re-arms immediately following the trigger and begins the Holdoff count. If the count is satisfied by the time the oscilloscope is again ready, the trigger occurs on the next event at the start of the new acquisition.



Positive Edge trigger with Holdoff by events counted from last trigger time.

Holdoff Set Up

To add Holdoff to an Edge or Pattern trigger, touch the Trigger descriptor box or press the front panel Trigger Setup button, then open the **Holdoff** tab.



Choose to **Holdoff by Time** (clock) or **Events**, then enter the **Time** (S) or number of **Events** to wait before triggering.

Choose to **Start Holdoff Counter On** either the current **Acquisition Start** time or the **Last Trigger Time** (time of trigger from previous acquisition).

Zone Trigger

A Zone trigger allows you to visually define the waveform states that will trigger an acquisition, adding a second set of trigger conditions to the primary trigger. Similar to a mask test, shapes drawn on the grid represent Areas that a waveform must be "In" or "Out" to qualify each trigger condition. An acquisition occurs only when all the primary and secondary trigger conditions are met.

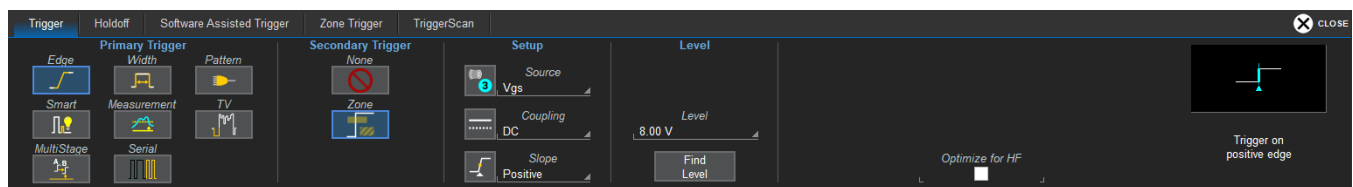
Areas can be drawn on any analog input signal, not just the primary trigger signal, and the state of different Areas in relation to each other can be defined using Boolean logic. As a result, you can easily define complex trigger conditions simply by arranging a set of shapes on the screen and writing a one-line equation.

At this time, Zone triggers can only be used with Edge, Width, Smart or MultiStage primary triggers. All the primary trigger conditions, including any Holdoff or other qualifiers, must be met before the Zone conditions are applied.

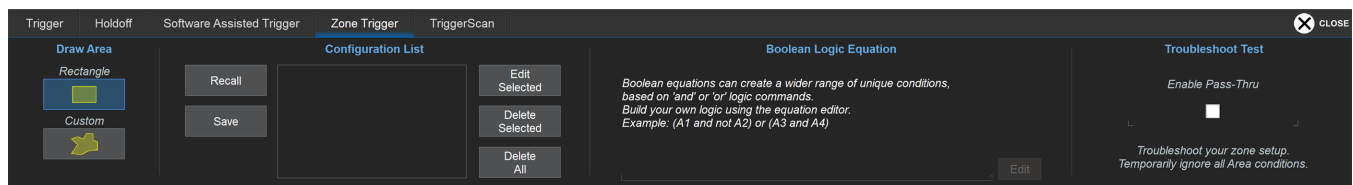
Drawing Areas

An Area is a visual representation of a condition that must be met by its source signal. Each Area has a number beginning with "A" by which it is identified in the Configuration List and on the screen. A green Area number indicates that condition (In or Out) is currently being met by the signal on screen, whereas a red number indicates it is failing.

To begin, on the Trigger dialog, choose **Zone** as the Secondary Trigger. This will add the Zone descriptor to the right of the Trigger descriptor at the bottom right of the display.



Open the Zone Trigger dialog to begin defining Areas.



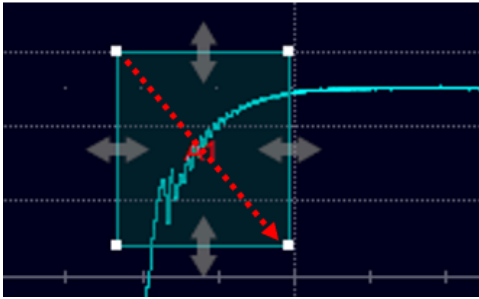
Drawing Rectangles

1. Open the Zone Trigger dialog and choose **Rectangle**. You are now in Zone Edit Mode. The grid area will be a lighter color and the words "Zone Trigger Editor" with a closebox appear in the upper-right corner of the grid.

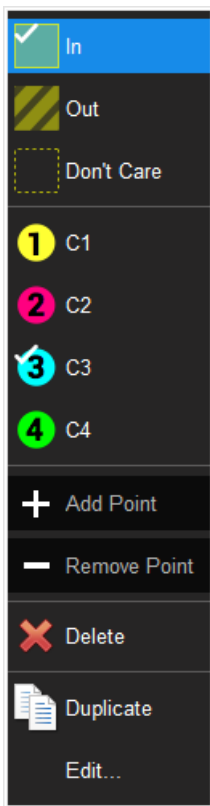


Note: As long as you remain in Zone Edit Mode, you can draw Areas and define their conditions. Once you leave Zone Edit Mode by clicking the closebox or clicking on the grid outside an Area, the touch screen reverts to normal touch behaviors (e.g., rectangle zoom).

- Click (or touch) on the grid where you wish to place an Area, then drag to draw a rectangle.



As soon as you release, the Zone context menu appears next to the new Area.



- Choose whether the waveform must be **In** or **Out** of this Area, or if you **Don't Care**.



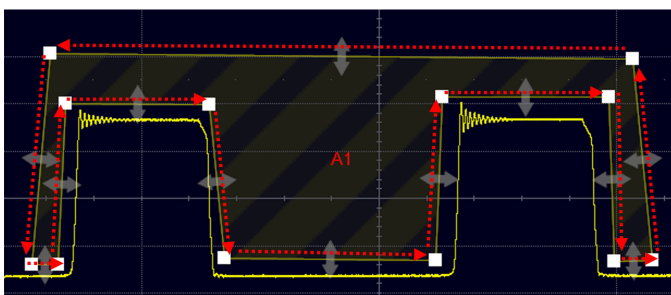
Note: "Don't Care" Areas do not affect the trigger. They disappear from the display when you leave Zone Edit Mode, although the Area remains in position for you to later change the state to In or Out. This is a convenient way to temporarily "turn off" an Area without having to delete it. "Don't Care" Areas are saved with Zone configuration setup files.

- Choose the input **Source** that must meet this condition.
- At this point, the Area is complete. Follow the procedures in Editing Areas to further modify the rectangle.

Drawing Custom Shapes

The Custom option allows you to draw freehand shapes by placing a series of points that define the Area. The Area can be any kind of closed shape you devise.

1. Open the Zone Trigger dialog and choose **Custom**. You are now in Zone Edit Mode.
2. Click (or touch) on the grid where you wish to place the first point of the Area, then click where you wish to place the next point. A straight line is drawn between both points.
3. Continue placing points until you have outlined the shape of the Area, finishing by clicking the first point.



As soon as you close the shape, the Zone context menu appears next to the new Area.

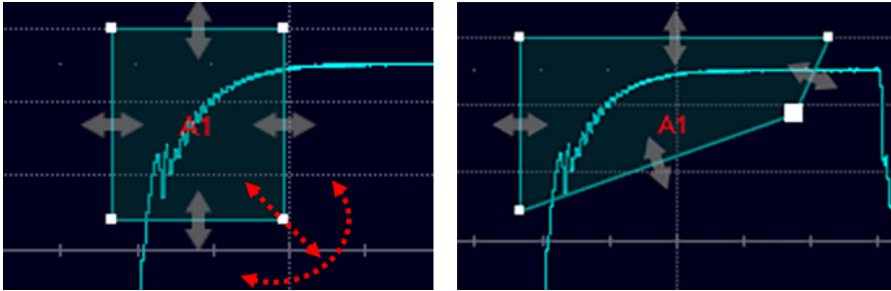
4. Choose whether the waveform must be **In** or **Out** of this Area, or if you **Don't Care**.
5. Choose the input **Source** that must meet this condition.
6. At this point, the Area is complete. Follow the procedures in Editing Areas to further modify the shape.

Editing Areas

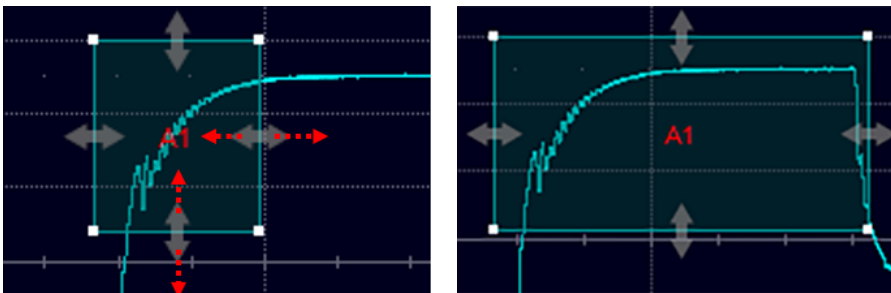
Once drawn, the shape of the Area can be modified by "touch" or by using the Edit dialog and context menu. If you have left Zone Edit Mode, re-enter it by clicking on the Area to be modified.

Editing by Touch

The white points at the corners of the Area adjust the angles of the shape. Click/touch-and-drag points away from/toward center or along a 360 degree arc.



The resizing handles (arrows) on the edges of the Area scale the shape along the selected plane. Click/touch-and-drag handles in the direction of the arrows.



To add a point, right-click (touch-and-hold) on the side of the Area where you wish to add the point, then choose **Add Point** from the context menu. A new point is added on that side between the original point and the next point. Adjust the new point as desired.

To delete a point, right-click (touch-and-hold) on the point to be removed, then choose **Remove Point** from the context menu.



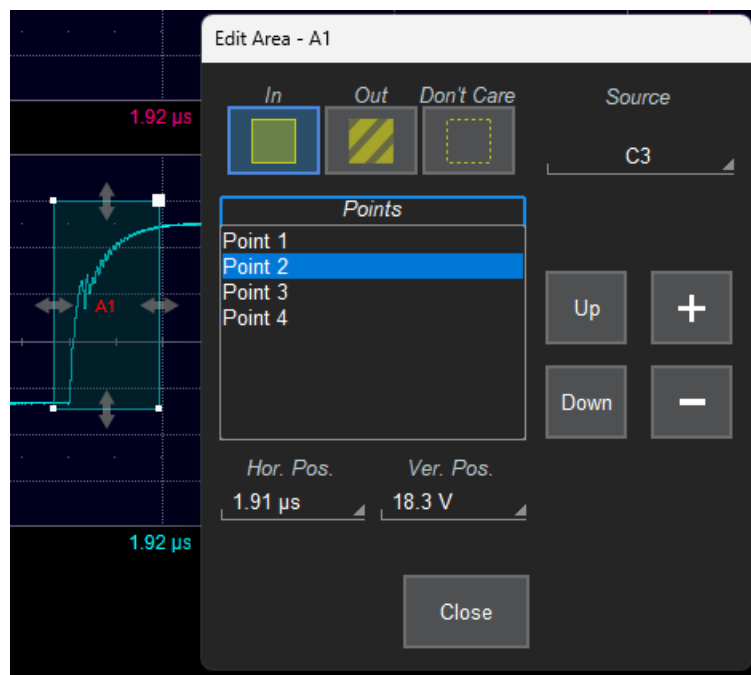
Note: Whenever you add or delete points, a straight line is drawn between the two adjacent points. Points are renumbered in clockwise order beginning from 1 in the top-left corner.

To move the entire Area, click inside (all points will be highlighted) then drag it to its new location on the grid.

To create another Area of the same shape and size, right-click (touch-and-hold) the Area and choose **Duplicate**.

Editing Using the Edit Area Dialog

Double-click (double-tap) on the Area to open the Edit Area dialog. Most of the same actions as are in the context menu can be invoked using this dialog.



The dialog allows you to quickly change the In, Out or Don't Care condition of the Area, or the Source channel. If you change the Source, the Area will move to the grid where that waveform is displayed, maintaining its grid position. The Configuration List on the Zone Trigger dialog updates accordingly, showing the new Area source channel.

All the vertices defining the Area's shape are listed in Points, with the selected point highlighted in the list and on the Area outline. You can use the **Up** or **Down** button to select the point to be edited, or click/tap on it in the list.

To add a point, select the point before which to add it and click the **Plus** button.

To delete a point, select it from the list and click the **Minus** button.

To set an exact grid position, select the point to be moved then enter the new **Hor. Pos.** (horizontal position) and **Ver. Pos.** (vertical position). This feature is useful when you have exact tolerances for a waveform and wish to position the Area exactly after drawing an approximation of it.

Deleting Areas

To completely remove an Area from the Zone trigger configuration, right-click on it and choose **Delete** from the context menu.

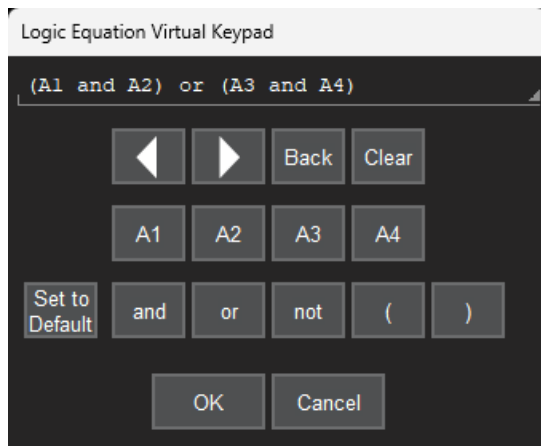


Tip: To temporarily "turn off" an Area but keep it in the Zone configuration, change its condition to "Don't Care."

Using Boolean Logic

As new Areas are drawn, the Boolean Logic Equation area of the dialog is populated with default 'and' statements, creating an equation such as "A1 and A2 and A3...". When all the conditions in the equation are true, the oscilloscope acquires and displays the new, validated waveform.

By using the Logic Equation Virtual Keypad, you can create your own Boolean equations to express the relationship between Areas that will trigger an acquisition. Click the **Edit** button to display the dialog.



Each Area will have a button on the dialog, along with operators 'and', 'or' and 'not' and parentheses. Simply touch the buttons in order to create the Boolean equation. Use **Back** to clear the last symbol or **Clear** to clear all. **Set to Default** restores the default "and" for all Area conditions.

The same logic applies as with all Boolean equations:

- expressions in parentheses are evaluated first
- 'and' conjoins, both Area conditions surrounding it must be true
- 'or' disjoins, either Area condition surrounding it may be true
- 'not' negates, the Area condition must not be true

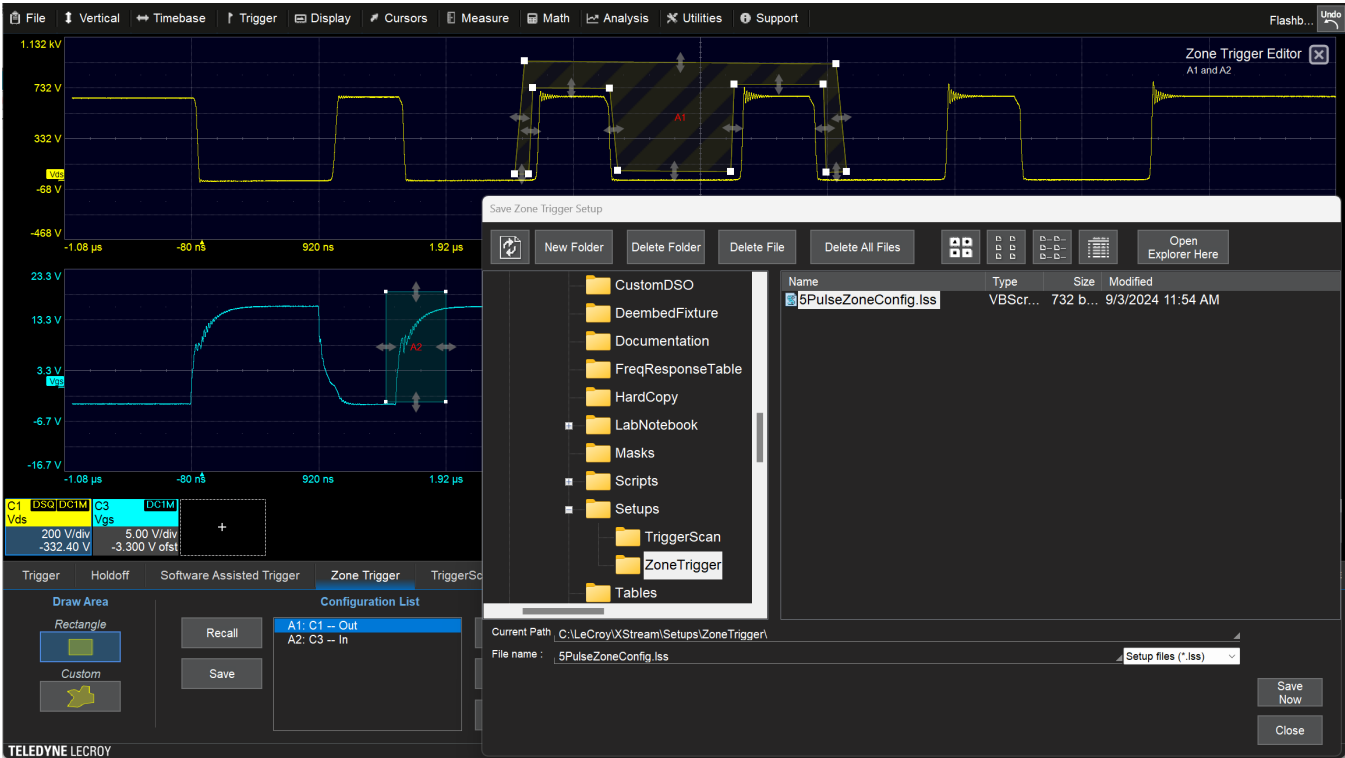
All Areas that you want evaluated, whether displayed on different grids or drawn on different waveforms, should be included in the Boolean equation. The logic of the entire equation must be satisfied for the Zone trigger to acquire. Any signals that are off the screen or do not have Areas in the equation are ignored, like a "Don't Care." Similarly, leaving the Boolean equation field blank acts like a pass-thru, and nothing is required to be true.

Debugging Zone Configurations

Because the zone trigger display normally only shows waveforms that meet both primary and secondary trigger conditions (except in the case of Auto trigger mode), it can be difficult to see anomalies that are causing the trigger to fail. In order to refine your Areas, you can temporarily turn off all Area conditions by checking **Enable Pass-Thru**. This will keep the zone configuration on the screen, while using only the primary trigger to acquire waveforms. By doing this in Normal or Single trigger mode, you will be able to see where Areas need adjusting.

Saving/Recalling Zone Configurations

The **Save** button saves only the Zone configuration to a special Zone setup file. When you use the **Recall** button on the Zone Trigger dialog, only the Zone configuration is recalled, not the entire waveform setup.



Note: Zone configurations are saved to and recalled with full oscilloscope setup (.lss) files. This feature allows you to save and recall only Zone configurations while retaining the rest of your acquisition and measurement setup.

Zone Descriptor Box

The Zone descriptor box appears to the right of the Trigger descriptor box as soon as there is an Area on the screen. Using keywords and a colored "LED" display, it informs you of the current state of the system's trigger (primary and secondary).

Zone Descriptor Statuses

Trigger Mode	Pass-Thru Status	Keyword	LED Color		
			Yellow	Green	Red
Single or Normal	Disabled	Waiting	Waited >0.5 seconds for Primary hardware trigger.	NA	Primary trigger occurred, but Zone conditions not all met.
	Disabled	Trig'd	NA	All primary trigger and Zone conditions met. Requires Boolean logic to be true.	NA
	Enabled	Pass-Thru	NA		Primary trigger occurred, but Zone conditions not all met. Waveform displayed anyway (passes thru).
Auto	Disabled	Auto	NA	All Zone conditions met since time of last Auto trigger. Requires Boolean logic to be true.	Zone conditions not all met since time of last Auto trigger.
	Enabled	Auto	NA		
Stop	Disabled	Stop	NA	Acquisition shown met all Zone conditions. Requires Boolean logic to be true. This may also occur after moving Areas so that they are now "true".	Acquisition shown failed some Zone conditions. Will only occur following Auto trigger or after moving Areas so that they are now "true", since in Single or Normal mode, all conditions must be met for acquisition to occur.
	Enabled	Stop	NA		

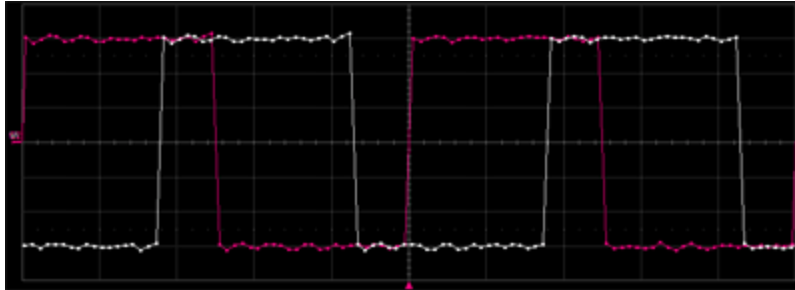
Like all descriptor boxes, the Zone descriptor is also interactive:

- To reopen the Zone Trigger dialog, touch the Zone descriptor.
- To quickly draw a new rectangle Area on the screen, drag the Zone descriptor to the desired grid.

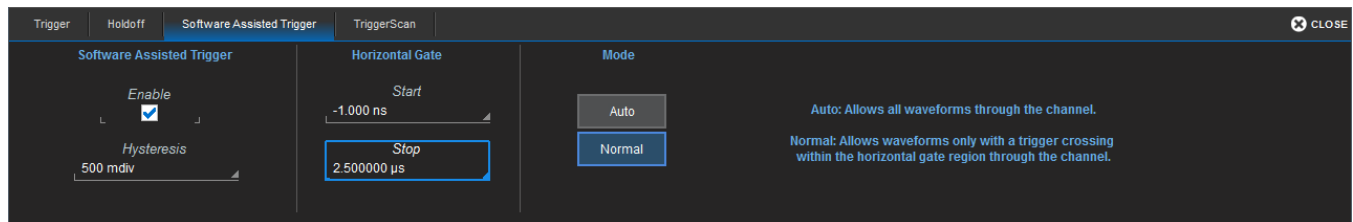
Software Assisted Trigger

Software Assisted Trigger is used to find the trigger-level crossing point closest to the hardware trigger point. It then adjusts the time offset of the waveform so that it is aligned with the specified trigger level and slope.

In the following figure, the white trace is the waveform at the input to software-assisted trigger processing. The red trace shows it after processing, aligned with the trigger point indicated by the red marker below the grid.



Note: This feature can only be used with an Edge trigger type in Normal trigger mode.



1. From the menu, choose **Triggers > Trigger Setup**, then touch the **Software Assisted Trigger** tab.
2. Touch **Enable**.
3. Create a trigger window by entering a **Hysteresis** value. This value sets a boundary above and below the main trigger level to exclude noise.
4. Choose **Auto** or **Normal** mode; this determines the trigger behavior when trigger crossings are not found in the trigger source waveform.
 - **Auto** mode allows all waveforms through the channel.
 - **Normal** mode allows waveforms only with a trigger crossing within the horizontal gate region through the channel.
5. Set **Start** and **Stop** time values on the **Horizontal Gate** part of the Software Assisted Trigger tab. These values control where in the waveform the software-assisted trigger processing searches for trigger crossings.

TriggerScan

TriggerScan is a debugging tool that helps you quickly discover waveform anomalies by automating the process of building triggers designed to find rare events in an acquisition.

TriggerScan **trains** the system by looking at acquired waveforms. During the training, TriggerScan analyzes the waveforms to determine what waveforms normally look like. Using this information, it generates a list of smart triggers designed to isolate abnormal situations. All acquisition settings are preserved in the TriggerScan setup file for future use.

After loading the trigger setups from the Trainer, TriggerScan **scans** new acquisitions for rare events by cycling the different triggers. As triggers occur, the waveforms are displayed on the screen. AutoSaving waveform files with each trigger allows you to capture the TriggerScan data.

Training TriggerScan

The TriggerScan Trainer inspects the current acquisition and automatically builds a list of trigger setups that could potentially be used to find events of interest.

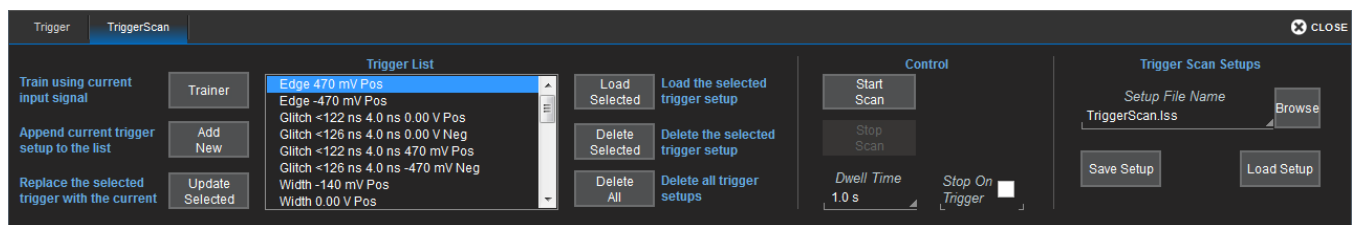


Note: Run the Trainer if you want to change the trigger types or if you change the channel or signal. You must acquire and display at least 3 cycles of a signal before running the Trainer.

1. Touch **Trigger > Trigger Setup...** from the menu bar, then open the **TriggerScan** tab.
2. Touch the **Trainer** button.
3. On the TriggerScan Trainer pop-up, choose the **Source** channel on which to train and trigger, and select all the [trigger types](#) you want to set up.
4. Touch the **Start Training** button. When training is complete, a list of smart trigger setups is displayed in the Trigger List.

Modifying Trigger List

Follow these steps to change the triggers created by TriggerScan. Once you have finalized the Trigger List, you are ready to start scanning.



1. To add a new trigger to the list: Set up the new trigger as desired on the **Trigger** dialog. Then, back on the **TriggerScan** dialog, touch the **Add New** button to append the new trigger to the **Trigger List**.
2. To replace a trigger with one manually set up on the Trigger dialog: highlight the trigger in the Trigger List, then touch the **Update Selected** button.
3. To delete a trigger from the list: highlight the trigger in the Trigger List, then touch the **Delete Selected** button. All trigger setups can be deleted in one step by touching the **Delete All** button.
4. Optionally:

- Enter a **Dwell Time** the time instrument should wait before loading the next trigger.
- Check **Stop On Trigger**. You can use this to isolate events as triggers find them.

Saving TriggerScan Setups

You can preserve the Trigger List by saving it to a setup file. The current Trigger List is not preserved after exiting the application unless you manually save it.

1. On the **TriggerScan** dialog, touch **Setup File Name** and enter a file name, or touch the **Browse** button and select a location and file name.
2. Touch the **Save Setup...** button.

To reload a saved Trigger List, touch the **Browse** button, locating the file, then touch **Load Setup...**

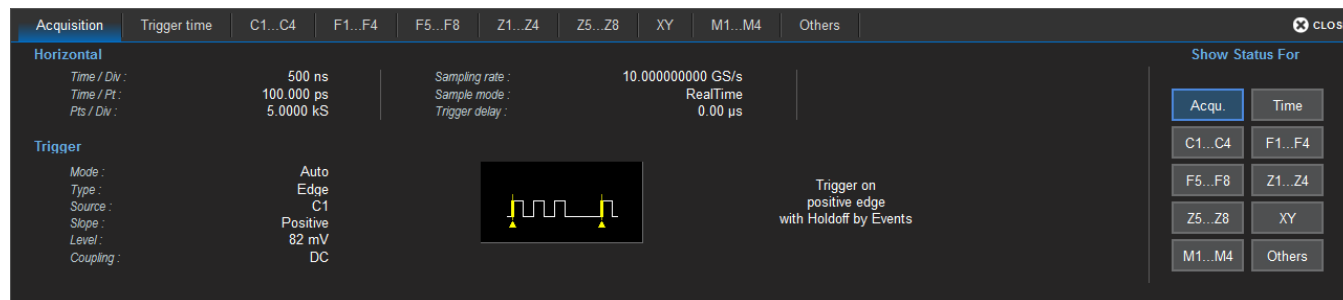
Running TriggerScan

When the Trigger List is set, touch the **Start Scan** button on the Trigger Scan dialog. The instrument automatically cycles through all the triggers in the list.

To run only a single trigger, select it from the Trigger List and touch **Load Selected**. The trigger settings are copied to the Trigger dialog and will be used when you start acquisition.

Viewing Acquisition Status

All current acquisition settings can be viewed through the various Status dialogs. Access them by choosing the Status option from the Vertical, Timebase, Trigger, Math, or Analysis menus. The available options will depend on your model.



Display

Display menu settings affect the number and style of [grids](#) that appear on screen and some of the visual characteristics of traces, such as [persistence](#).

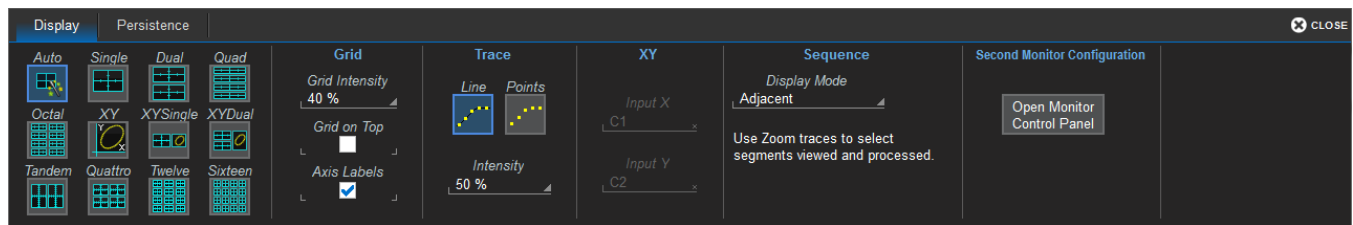
The oscilloscope features a multi-grid display, where each separate grid represents the full number of 4096 vertical levels. **Auto Grid Mode** is enabled by default. This feature adds a grid each time a new trace is turned on. Other Grid Mode selections are available on the Display dialog; the icons show what the result of that selection will be.

Available with the Q-Scope option, the [Q-Scope Display](#) Modes divide the screen into multi-tab displays, each of which can be configured with a different grid mode.

Display Set Up

To access the Display dialog, choose **Display > Display Setup**.

Open the [Persistence](#) dialog to apply persistence to the trace display.



Q-Scope Display Mode

The Display Mode setting determines the number and layout of Q-Scope display tabs. See [Q-Scope Display](#).

Grid Mode

The Grid Mode setting determines the number and layout of display grids, each of which represents the full number of vertical levels. The selection icon shows the number and arrangement of grids.

In Normal Display Mode, select one Grid Mode. In Q-Scope Display Mode, select a Grid Mode for each tab.

Grid Mode	Number	Orientation	Notes
Auto (default)	variable	landscape	Automatically adds or deletes grids as traces turned on/off, up to the maximum supported
Single	1	landscape	All traces share one grid
Dual	2	landscape	One top, one bottom
Tandem	2	portrait	One left, one right
Triple	3	variable	Two landscape grids left, one portrait grid right
Quad	4	landscape	Stacked top to bottom
Quattro	4	landscape	One in each quarter of screen
Octal	8	landscape	Two columns of four stacked top to bottom
Twelve	12	landscape	Three columns of four stacked top to bottom
Sixteen	16	landscape	Four columns of four stacked top to bottom
XY	1	portrait	Single XY type grid
XYSingle	2	portrait	One VT grid left, one XY grid right



Note: Additional grid modes may become available with the installation of software options.

Other Grid Settings

To dim or brighten the background grid lines, touch **Grid Intensity** and enter a value from 0 to 100.

Grid on top superimposes the grid over the waveform.



Note: Some waveforms may be hidden from view with the grid on top.

Axis labels display the values represented by each division of the grid, based on your vertical scale and timebase. Turned on by default, they may appear as absolute values or delta from center (0). Deselect the checkbox to remove them from the display.

Trace Settings

Choose a line style for traces: solid **Line** or disconnected sample **Points**.

When more data is available than can actually be displayed given the number of vertical levels, Trace Intensity helps to visualize significant events by applying an algorithm that dims less frequently occurring samples. Touch **Intensity** and enter a value from 0 to 100.



Intensity 40% (left) dims samples that occur $\leq 40\%$ of the time to highlight the more frequent samples, vs. intensity 100% (right) which shows all samples the same.

XY Plots

XY plots display the phase shift between otherwise identical signals. They can be used to display either voltage or frequency on both axes, each axis now corresponding to a different signal input, rather than a different parameter. The shape of the resulting pattern reveals information about phase difference and frequency ratio. See [XY Cursors Dialog](#) for a description of the labels added to the XY display.



Note: The inputs can be any combination of channels, math functions or memories, but both sources must have the same X-axis scale.

Choose an XY grid mode and select the sources for **Input X** and **Input Y**.

Sequence Display Mode

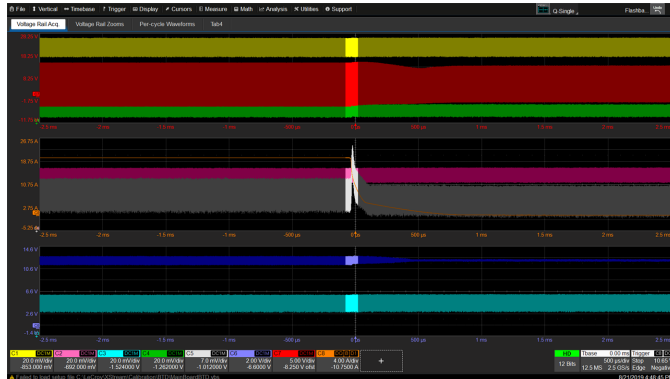
This setting is used to select the Display Mode used when sampling in [Sequence mode](#).

Q-Scape Display

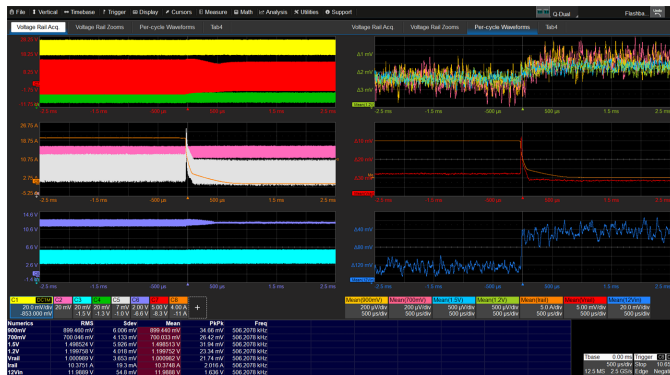
Q-Scape divides the screen into multi-tab displays that can each be configured with different multi-grid display modes. Many of the same functions you can perform in Normal mode, such as moving traces by drag-and-drop, you can also perform in Q-Scape. Q-Scape oscilloscopes have an option for both the Display Mode and the Grid Mode.

Display Mode

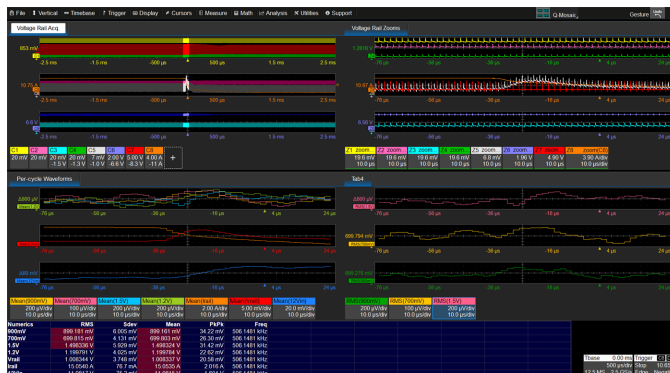
The Display Mode setting determines the number and layout of display tabs, each of which can in turn have different numbers and styles of grids within them. Choose either **Normal** (default), a single display with no tabs, or one of the three **Q-Scape display modes**:



Q-Scape Single, a single set of four tabs stacked so that only one at a time is visible. Each tab can have any style of grid mode, same or different.



Q-Scape Dual, two sets of four stacked tabs. Equivalent tabs in each set share the same grid mode, but can display different traces. You can simultaneously view one tab from each set, but they must be different numbered tabs (e.g., Tab 1 from set one and Tab 3 from set two).



Q-Scape Mosaic, a single set of four tabs arranged so that all are viewed simultaneously. Note the tab at the top of each display, which distinguishes Mosaic display mode from Quad grid mode.

In Q-Scape modes, channel, math, memory, and zoom descriptors appear in the tab where the trace is open, while Timebase and Trigger descriptors remain outside the tabs, since they are not associated with any one trace.



Note: If you switch from Normal mode into any Q-Scape mode, all traces will move to Tab 1, from which you can drag-and-drop to redistribute them to other grids. In Q-Scape Single mode, you will not be able to drag-and-drop traces across tabs, only to other Tab1 grids.

Renaming Tabs

The labels shown on the Q-Scape tabs can be changed to something descriptive of what is shown within that display to better orient you to complex screen layouts.

To rename Q-Scape tabs after they open:

1. Touch-and-hold (right-click) on the **Tab *n*** until Rename pops up.
2. Touch **Rename**.
3. Enter the **New Alias**, then touch OK.

Extended Display



Note: The "Extend Grids..." option only appears when a second monitor is connected. Minimize the oscilloscope window and use the standard Windows Display controls to make the instrument the primary display. It should be extended, not duplicated.

To take advantage of a second monitor display when in Q-Scape mode:

1. On the Display dialog, select **Extend Grids Onto 2nd Monitor**. The Select Grid pop-up opens.
2. Switch to the **Extended Display** submenu and choose a **Grid** style. Tab 1 and the external monitor will share the same grid style.



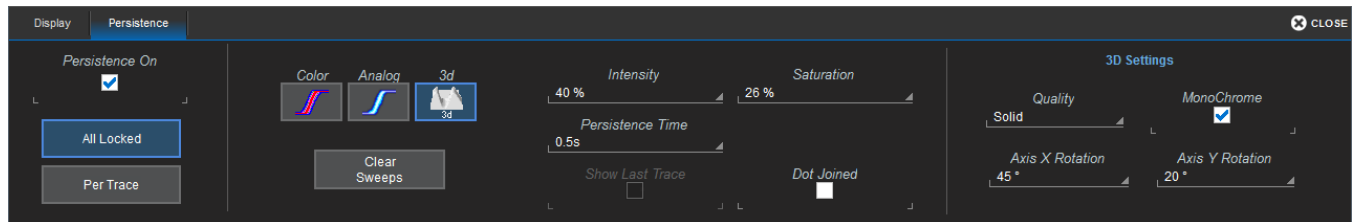
Tip: Drag-and-drop descriptor boxes to place traces on the desired grids. To take full advantage of Q-Scape on the larger display, choose **File > Windowed** on the instrument, then grab the window title bar and drag it to the external monitor screen. Drag the Extended Display window to the instrument screen.

Persistence Display

The Persistence feature retains waveform traces on the display for a set amount of time before allowing them to gradually "decay," similar to the analog-style display of old, phosphor screen oscilloscopes. The display is generated by repeated sampling of events over time and the accumulation of the sampled data into "persistence maps". Statistical integrity is preserved because the duration (decay) is proportional to the persistence population for each amplitude or time combination in the data.

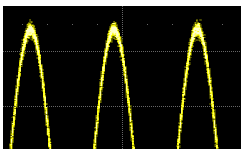
The different persistence modes show the most frequent signal path in three-dimensional intensities of the same color (Analog), or in a graded spectrum of colors (Color).

Access the Persistence dialog from the Display dialog or by choosing **Display > Persistence Setup**.

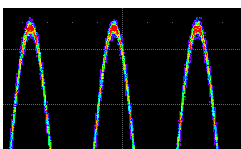


Turn On Persistence

1. Check **Persistence On**.
2. To set up all traces together, touch **All Locked**. This constrains all input channels to the same persistence settings. To set up traces individually, touch **Per Trace**.
3. Use the buttons to select a persistence mode:

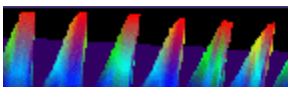


In **Analog Mode**, as a persistence data map develops, different intensities of the same color are assigned to the range between a minimum and a maximum population. The maximum population automatically gets the highest intensity, the minimum population gets the lowest intensity, and intermediate populations get intensities in between these extremes.



Color Mode persistence works on the same principle as Analog persistence, but instead uses the entire color spectrum rather than intensities of a single hue: violet for minimum population, red for maximum population.

3d Mode persistence creates a topographical view of your waveform from a selection of shadings, textures, and hues. The advantage of the topographical view is that areas of highest and lowest intensity are shown as peaks and valleys, in addition to color or brightness. The shape of the peaks (pointed or flat) can reveal further information about the frequency of occurrences in your waveform. You choose the **Quality** of the 3D display:



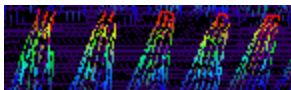
Solid quality can be either color or monochrome. Saturation is set at 50%, with hotter colors indicating highest intensity.



In the monochrome view of solid, the lightest areas indicate highest intensity, corresponding to the red areas in the color view.



In **shaded** (projected light) quality, the shape of the pulses is emphasized. This quality is monochrome only.



In **wire frame** quality, lines of equal intensity are used to construct the persistence map. This display can be either color or **Monochrome**.

In 3d mode, **X Axis Rotation** and **Y Axis Rotation** can range 180° from -90° to +90°. In the examples above, the X-axis is rotated 60° and the Y-axis 15°.



Tip: To quickly rotate the graph, grab a corner of the persistence map and drag it in the desired direction.

4. Select the **Saturation** level as a percentage of the total population. All populations above the saturation level are assigned the highest color intensity. At the same time, all populations below the saturation level are assigned the remaining intensities. Data populations are dynamically updated as data from new acquisitions is accumulated. A saturation level of 100% spreads the intensity variation across the entire distribution; at lower saturation levels, the intensity will saturate (become brighter) at a lower population, making visible those events rarely seen at higher saturation levels.
5. In **Persistence Time**, enter the duration (S) after which persistence data is erased from the display.
6. You can superimpose the last waveform over the persistence map by selecting **Show Last Trace** (not available in 3d mode).
7. To display traces as a continuous line (instead of a series of sample points), select **Dot Joined**.

Turn Off Persistence

To turn off persistence and return to the regular trace style, clear the **Persistence On** checkbox.

Math and Measure

Teledyne LeCroy offers a rich set of standard, pre-programmed tools for the "quickest time to insight" into the characteristics of acquired waveforms. Most instruments calculate measurements on all samples in an acquisition, enabling you to rapidly accumulate thousands or millions of parameter values. You can also apply a variety of mathematical functions to the input waveform trace and view the transformation in a math trace.

Zooming

Zooms magnify a selected region of a trace by altering the horizontal and/or vertical scale relative to the source trace. They may be created in several ways, using either the front panel or the touch screen.

The current settings for each zoom trace can be seen on the [Zn dialogs](#), while the [Zoom dialog](#) is a convenient panel for turning on/off different zooms or quickly changing the zoom source.

You can adjust zooms the same as any other trace by using the front panel Vertical and Horizontal knobs or the touch screen zoom factor controls.

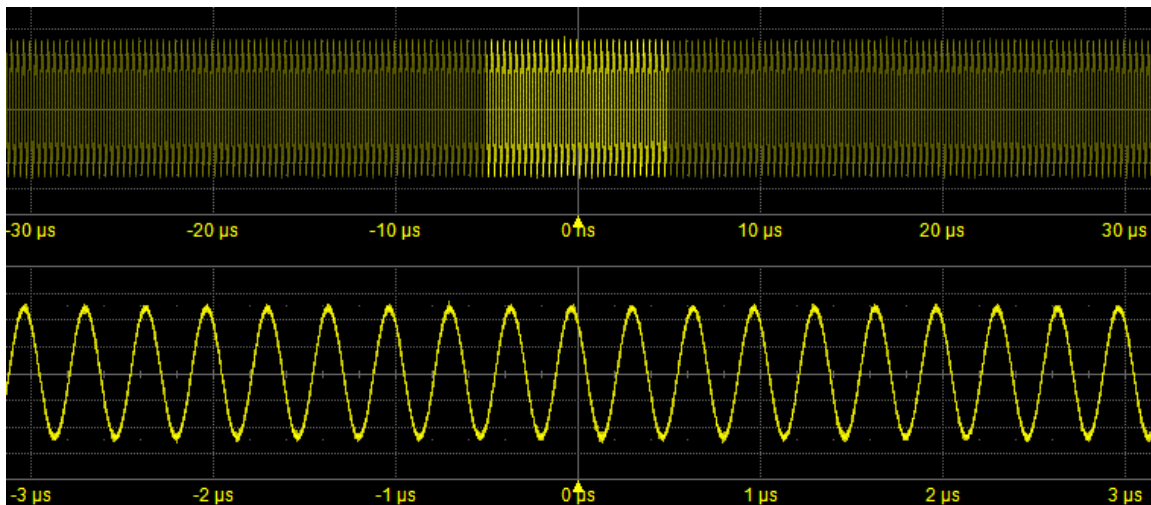
The [MultiZoom](#) feature locks the Horizontal Scale and Center of those traces that you choose to include in the MultiZoom group. As you change the scale or position of any trace in the group, all traces change in unison.

Creating Zooms

Any type of trace can be zoomed by creating a new zoom trace (Z_n) following the procedures here. Zoom traces open in the next empty grid, with the zoomed portion of the source trace highlighted. If there are no more available grids, zooms will open in the same grid as the source trace.



Note: On most instruments with OneTouch, traces can be "zoomed" by pinching/unpinching two fingers over the trace, but this method does not create a separate zoom trace. Pinching channel traces will alter the acquisition timebase and the scale of all traces. Create a separate zoom trace to avoid this.



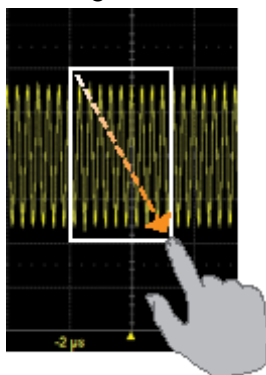
Zoomed area of original trace highlighted. Zoom in new grid below.

Quick Zoom

Use the **front panel Zoom button** to quickly create one zoom trace for each displayed channel trace. Quick zooms are created at the same vertical scale as the source trace and 10:1 horizontal magnification. The MultiZoom feature is turned on, and all the new zooms are automatically added to the MultiZoom group.

To turn off the quick zooms, press the Zoom button again.

Rectangle Zoom



To "rectangle zoom", touch-and-drag diagonally to draw a rectangle around the part of the source trace you wish to magnify. If you choose a Zn location, a new zoom of that trace is created; if you choose the source trace as the destination, you will rescale the original trace.

A new zoom will expand the horizontal area selected to fit the full width of the grid, while the vertical area will be rescaled proportionally. The degree of vertical and horizontal magnification, therefore, depends on the size of the rectangle that you draw.

Alternatively, with OneTouch you can drag any Zn descriptor box over the **Add New box**, or touch the Add New box and choose Zoom from the pop-up menu. The next available zoom trace opens with its Zn dialog displayed for you to modify scale as needed.

Zoom Function

Finally, you can create a Zoom math function. This method creates a new F_n trace, rather than a new Z_n trace, but it can be rescaled in the same manner. It is a way to create more zooms than you have Z_n slots available on your instrument.

Index Zoom

If you are working in a serial decoder, you can zoom the region of the source trace that is represented by one index (row) of the decoder result table simply by touching that row. This method works for many software options that present tabular results, besides the decoders.

Adjusting Zoom Scale

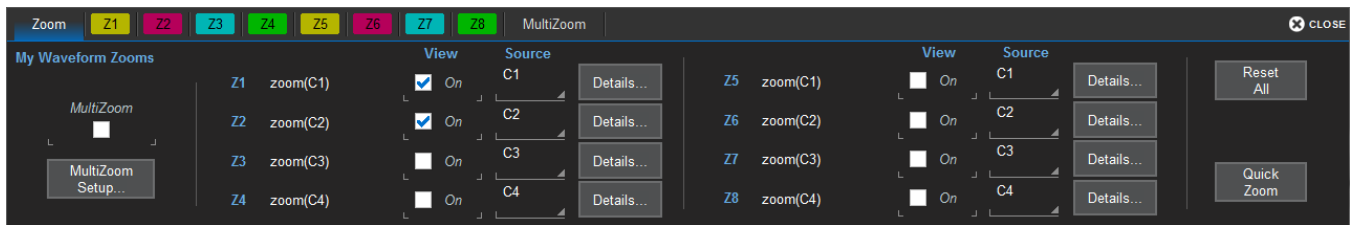
The zoom's horizontal units will often differ from the signal timebase, because the zoom is only showing a portion of the total acquisition spread across 10 divisions. You can adjust the zoom factor using the front panel knobs or the [zoom factor controls](#) however you like without affecting the timebase (a characteristic shared with math and memory traces).

Close Zoom

New zooms are turned on and visible by default. If the display becomes too crowded, you can close a particular zoom and the zoom settings are saved in its Zn slot, ready to be turned on again when desired.

To close the zoom, right-click (touch-and-hold until the white box appears) on the zoom descriptor box, then from the context menu choose **Off**.

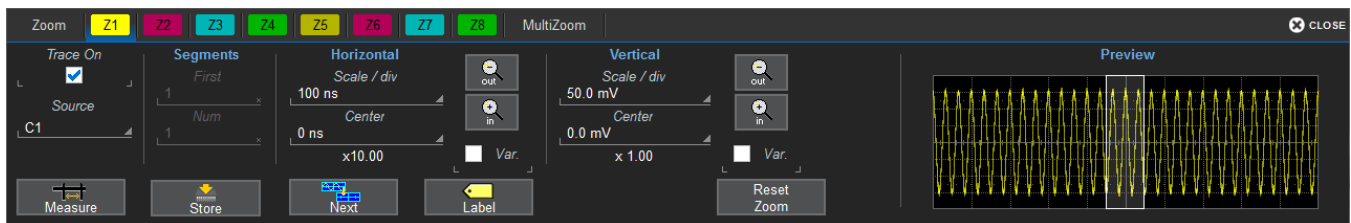
Zoom Dialog



Choosing **Math > Zoom Setup** from the menu bar opens a dialog summarizing all active and inactive zoom trace settings. Use the selection boxes to turn on/off zooms. There are also options to:

- **Reset All**, return all zooms to x1 magnification.
- **Quick Zoom**, create a corresponding zoom trace for each open channel trace, same as using the front panel Zoom button.
- Turn on [MultiZoom](#) for all active zooms.

Zn Dialog



Behind the main Zoom dialog is a separate tab for each potential zoom trace (Z1-Zn). Each Zn dialog reflects the center and scale for that number zoom. Use the Zoom factor controls to adjust each zoom independently.

Trace Controls

Trace On shows/hides the zoom trace. It is selected by default when the zoom is created.

Source lets you change the source of the zoom to another trace while maintaining all other settings.

Segment Controls

These controls are used to select the segment(s) to be "zoomed" for display when sampling in [Sequence Mode](#).

Zoom Factor Controls

- **Out** and **In** buttons increase/decrease zoom magnification and consequently change the Horizontal and Vertical Scale settings. Touch either button until you've achieved the desired level.
- **Var.checkbox** enables zooming in single increments.
- **Horizontal Scale/div** sets the time represented by each horizontal division of the grid. It is the equivalent of Time/div in channel traces, only unlike that setting, it may differ for each zoom trace.
- **Vertical Scale/div** sets the voltage level represented by each vertical division of the grid; it's the equivalent of V/div in channel traces.
- **Horizontal/Vertical Center** sets the time/voltage at the center of the grid.
- **Reset Zoom** returns the zoom to x1 magnification.

MultiZoom

MultiZoom unifies the Horizontal Scale (Time/div) setting of those traces that you add to the MultiZoom group. The traces can be zooms or other types of calculated (as opposed to acquired) time traces, such as memories or math functions. This allows you to zoom in/out on several traces in unison, even if they represent different sources, and pan the entire group together by dragging one trace or using the Auto Scroll controls.



Note: Traces that cannot be in the same MultiZoom group because they are not time traces or are different record lengths will be excluded from selection when setting up MultiZoom.

MultiZoom is automatically enabled when you use the Quick Zoom method, and all Quick Zooms are added to the MultiZoom group. The descriptor boxes of those traces in the group are marked with a green underline.

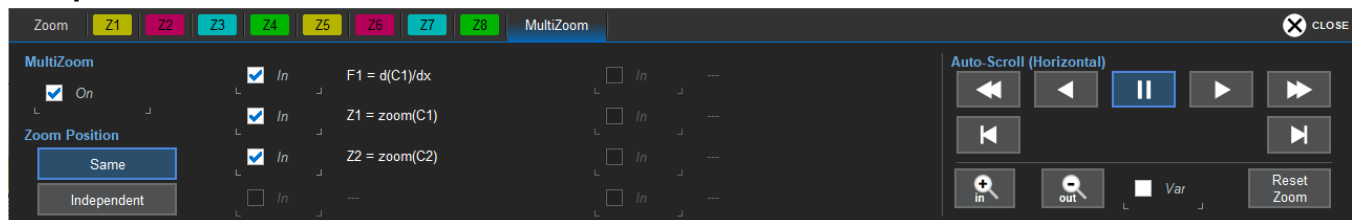
When MultiZoom is enabled manually from the Zoom or MultiZoom dialogs, active zooms are automatically added to the MultiZoom group, although other types of calculated traces must be added manually. As you add traces to the group by checking the selection box on the MultiZoom dialog, they are set to the same Horizontal Scale as the *first trace that was added to the group* since MultiZoom was last enabled. Once the group is set, modifying any member of the group using the front panel Horizontal knobs or touch screen Horizontal controls will change the entire group.



Note: The lowest numbered zoom is usually the "master" trace to which all others are rescaled. When MultiZoom is used with decoded Serial Data waveforms, the result table functionality overrides this behavior, and zooms created by touching a table cell will center on that part of the acquisition.

MultiZoom does not affect the Vertical Scale and Offset of any traces in the MultiZoom group. These continue to be controlled independently for each trace.

Set Up MultiZoom



1. Choose **Math > Zoom Setup...** to open the Zoom dialog.
2. Check the **MultiZoom** box. Active zooms are added to the group and rescaled to the first active zoom.
3. To modify the group further by adding or removing other types of traces, open the **MultiZoom dialog** and select all the traces that are **In** the MultiZoom group.
4. Optionally, choose an **Independent Zoom Position** to simultaneously view different time spans of different traces, while continuing to zoom and scroll in unison. After you select **Independent**, open the individual trace dialog (e.g., **Zn**) and change the **Horizontal Center**.



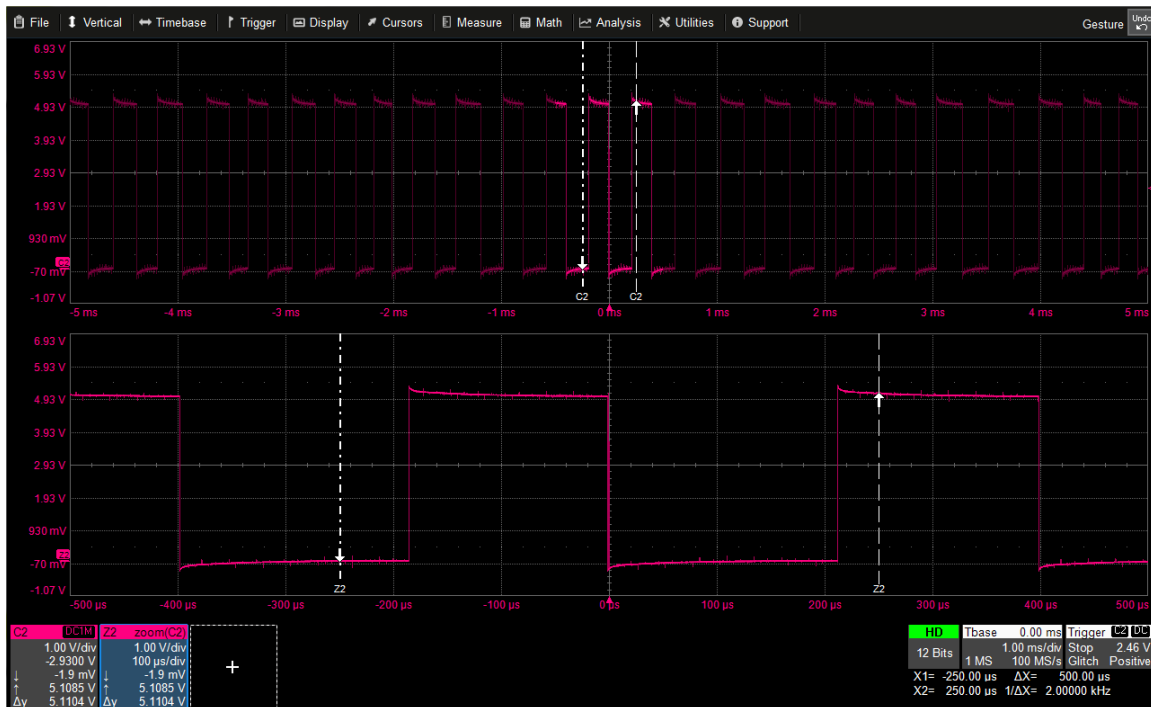
Note: Scrolling or dragging any of the MultiZoom group traces will shift the Horizontal Center of this trace by the same amount of Delay as the others, however, it will remain proximate to the center you set, which can be useful when wanting to step through two different sections of a longer acquisition.

Scroll Waveforms

The Auto-Scroll controls appear at the right of the MultiZoom dialog. They work similarly to A/V controls to allow you to continuously scroll all the selected traces in time-locked steps from the beginning to the end of the acquisition.

Cursors

Cursors are markers (lines, cross-hairs, and arrows) that identify horizontal and vertical values where they intersect the X or Y axis. Use cursors to make fast, accurate measurements of points on the waveform.



Both Relative cursors. The same cursor type is applied to all open traces.

Cursor Types

Horizontal Cursors

Horizontal cursors are positioned at points on the x-axis and will measure the source trace horizontal and vertical values at that point.

Horizontal Cursor Readouts

The **Horizontal Abs(olute)** cursor displays a single line, X1. The readout below the Timebase and Trigger descriptors shows the horizontal value where X1 intersects the x-axis, in whatever is the x-axis unit of the source trace. The readout on the source trace descriptor box shows the vertical value where X1 intersects the source trace, y@X1, in whatever is the y-axis unit of the source trace.

The **Horizontal Rel(ative)** cursor displays two lines: X1 with the down-pointing arrow, and X2 with the up-pointing arrow. The readout below the Timebase and Trigger descriptors always shows:

- The value where each cursor intersects the x-axis (X1 and X2)
- The difference of $X2 - X1$ (Δx)
- For time traces, the frequency in Hz calculated from the delta time ($1/(\Delta x)$).



Tip: On instruments with OneTouch, when you drag the horizontal cursor readout from below the Timebase descriptor box onto a zoom trace grid or zoom descriptor box, the cursors will automatically adjust position to reflect the difference in scale between the zoom and source traces.

The readout on the source trace descriptor box depends on which Show option is selected:

- **Absolute** shows the vertical values where X1 and X2 intersect the source trace.
- **Delta** shows the difference in vertical value where each cursor intersects the source trace (marked by the arrows), calculated as: $y@X2 - y@X1 = \Delta y$. When the X1 arrow is higher than the X2 arrow, this will be a negative number, as it represents a drop (e.g., in voltage), even when X2 is positioned above the zero level. When the X1 arrow is lower than the X2 arrow, this will be a positive number, as it represents a rise.
- **Abs + Delta** shows both absolute and delta readouts.
- **Slope** calculates the difference in vertical value over the difference in horizontal value represented by the slope from the X1 arrow to the X2 arrow, or: $\Delta y / \Delta x$. The value will be intelligently converted to whatever unit is appropriate for the source trace. Like the Delta readout, it will be positive or negative depending on the vertical position of X2 relative to X1, regardless of its horizontal position.

When horizontal cursors are not tracking, they can be dragged to any position along the x-axis individually. The horizontal delta represents $X2 - X1$, which will be a positive number so long as X2 remains to the right of X1. If X2 is moved to the left of X1, this will now be a negative number.

Horizontal Scale

Horizontal cursors can be placed on traces whose x-axis has a dimension other than time, such as an FFT or a Trend. When there is at least one non-time-domain trace open, the [Standard Cursors dialog](#) contains an **X-Axis** control where you can choose the units to be measured by the horizontal cursors. The options will be appropriate to the types of traces open; for example, if there is an FFT trace, there is an option for Hz. The cursors are placed on those traces that display x-axis values in the selected units, rather than those with an x-axis of time.

Vertical Cursors

Vertical cursors intersect the y-axis and show the vertical value at that point (e.g., a voltage). These cursors can go "off trace" to show vertical scale values that are not represented in the acquisition. Vertical cursors have no horizontal readout below the Timebase descriptor, as they do not have an x-axis element. As they are set by divisions, they remain in the same position and do not "readjust" with changes in the scale of the underlying traces.

The **Vertical Abs(olute)** cursor displays a single line, Y1. The readout on the source trace descriptor box shows the vertical value at the point where Y1 intersects the y-axis.

The **Vertical Rel(ative)** cursor displays two lines: the dashed-dotted line is Y1, and the dashed line is Y2. As with the Horizontal Relative cursor, the readout on the source trace descriptor box depends on the Show selection:

- **Absolute** shows the vertical values where Y1 and Y2 intersect the y-axis.
- **Delta** shows the difference in value of $Y2 - Y1 (\Delta y)$. As long as Y2 remains below Y1, this is a negative number, even if Y2 is positioned above the zero level. If Y2 is moved above Y1, it will become a positive number.
- **Abs + Delta** shows both vertical readouts.

Combination Cursors

The **Both Rel(ative)** option places both Vertical Relative and Horizontal Relative cursors together. The readouts will be the same as when placing the cursors individually.

Apply and Position Cursors

To turn on cursors, either:

- From the menu bar, choose **Cursors** and select the desired cursor type from the drop-down list.
- On the front panel, press the **Cursor button** to turn on cursors, then continue pressing to cycle through all the cursor types. Stop when the desired type is displayed.



Note: There must be a trace on the grid for cursors to execute, although acquisition may be in process or stopped when you turn them on.

To turn off cursors, either:

- From the menu bar, choose **Cursors > Off**.
- Continue cycling the **Cursor button** until you reach "Off" (the cursor lines disappear).

To reposition a cursor:

- Drag-and-drop the **cursor marker** to a new position. Indicators outside the grid show to which trace the cursor belongs when you have multiple traces on one grid.

Use the **Position** data entry controls on the [Standard Cursors dialog](#) to place cursors precisely.

- Alternatively, use the Front Panel **Cursor knob**. Push the knob until the correct cursor is selected, then turn the knob to move it. The third press of the Cursor knob selects both cursors so they will track together when the knob is turned.



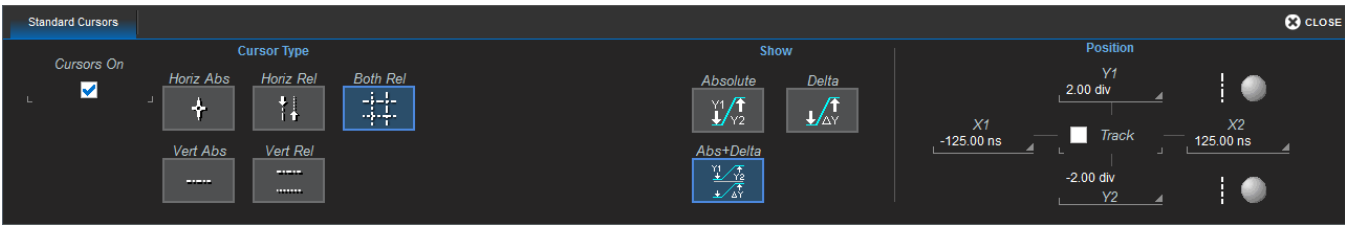
Tip: When there are multiple traces on the same grid, first bring the desired trace to the foreground by touching the trace or its descriptor box. The Cursor knob will only operate on the foreground trace.

On oscilloscopes with OneTouch, if Horizontal cursors are applied to a source trace but do not appear on its dependent traces (e.g., a zoom) because of differences in scale, drag-and-drop the cursor readout from below the Timebase descriptor box onto the target trace descriptor box. This will apply the cursor at the 5 (absolute) or 2.5 and 7.5 (relative) division marks of the target trace and adjust the source trace cursor accordingly.

To track cursors, moving both lines together at a consistent distance, check **Track** on the Standard Cursors dialog. Drag the X1 or Y1 cursor marker, or select the set using the front panel controls and turn the Cursor knob. The delta readouts should show little or no change when tracking, although absolute readouts will change depending on the new position of the cursors. Moving the X2 or Y2 cursor will reset the relative distance and the delta, after which you can again track by moving the X1 or Y1 markers.

Standard Cursors Dialog

These controls can be used instead of the front panel controls to turn on cursors or to refine the cursor position. Access the dialog by choosing **Cursors > Cursors Setup** from the menu bar.



Cursor Type buttons select the type of cursor displayed on the grid.

The **Show** controls determine what values are shown in the vertical readout when using relative cursors:

- **Absolute** shows specific voltages for the two cursor locations.
- **Delta** shows the difference between the specific voltages at the cursor locations.
- **Abs+Delta** shows both the absolute and delta readouts.
- **Slope** (Horizontal Relative only) shows the slope of the waveform between the cursor locations.

Refer to [Cursor Types](#) for a detailed explanation of what is shown with each option.

The **Position** controls at the right-side of the Standard Cursors dialog display the current cursor location and can be used to set a new location.

- **X 1** and **X 2** sets the position of Horizontal cursors. They may be entered as time or a fraction of a division.
- **Y 1** and **Y 2** sets the position of Vertical cursors, entered as a fraction of a division.

Track locks relative cursor lines so they move together, maintaining the same distance from each other. Only move X1 or Y1 to reposition the cursors. Moving X2 or Y2 will change the relative distance.

XY Cursors Dialog

X-Y cursors read the vector magnitude (Radius) and Phase relative to the positive X axis as well as the voltages in the source channel sample points. The cursor readings can track across the X-Y waveform displays, so that the source components for any cursor measured vector are measured at the same time. This information is useful in applications that use quadratic signal generation such as radar and digital communications, where an error in the vector parameters can be traced easily to the source components.

If your Grid Mode selection includes an XY trace display, an XY Cursors dialog appears behind the Standard Cursors dialog. Use it to exactly position and track cursors on XY traces, the same as you use the settings on the [Standard Cursors](#) dialog for time traces. The user interface is the same.

The XY cursor readouts immediately below the XY plot show:

Marker	Value shown
$\Delta Y / \Delta X =$	Ratio of ΔY and ΔX values
$\Delta Y * \Delta X =$	Product of ΔY and ΔX values
dB	Ratio in dB calculated $20 * \log_{10}(\text{ratio})$
Angle =	Angle (polar) calculated $\arctan(\Delta Y / \Delta X)$ range $[-180^\circ \text{ to } +180^\circ]$
Radius =	Radius (distance to origin) calculated $\sqrt{(\Delta X * \Delta X + \Delta Y * \Delta Y)}$

Measure

Parameters are tools that give you access to a wide range of waveform properties, such as Rise Time, RMS voltage and Peak-Peak voltage. The instrument offers a quick selection of standard parameters, or you can create a user-defined set of parameters (My Measure) drawn from all available measurements.

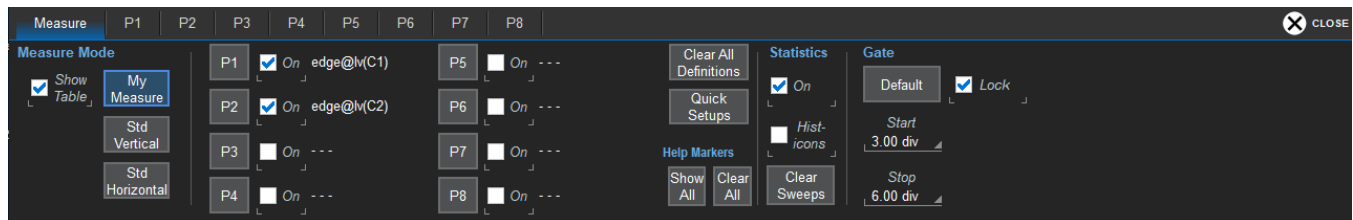
On instruments equipped with CustomDSO (XDEV), custom scripts may be used to calculate a parameter. Several scripting "languages" are supported, depending on the application. You can find these options in the Custom submenu of the Measure Selector. Scripts may be imported or written in the instrument's Script Editor window. See [Using P Script](#) for a description of the process.

Parameter readouts are shown in a dynamic Measure table that appears below the waveform grids. All active measurements can be used as inputs to other processes, such as Pass/Fail tests, even when the Measure table is hidden from view. The history of a parameter can be graphed as a [histogram](#), [track](#) or [trend](#) for statistical analysis.

Measure Dialog

The Measure Dialog gives quick access to measurement features. Besides turning on/off parameters, use the Measure dialog to display [statistics](#), [histicons](#) and [help markers](#) for standard and user-defined parameter sets. You can also [gate](#) parameters to limit the horizontal scope of the measurement.

Use the Parameter (Pn) dialogs to [create a user-defined set of parameters](#).



Selecting Measurements

1. To open the Measure dialog, touch the **Add New** box and select **Measurement**, or choose **Measure > Measure Setup** from the menu bar.
2. Check **Show Table** to display the readout. This is not required to take the measurement.
3. Choose the **Std. Vertical** or **Std. Horizontal** parameters.

Or, to turn on your own parameters, choose **My Measure**, then select the **On** checkbox next to each parameter you wish to display. Open the [Pn dialogs](#) to define new parameters.

4. Optionally:
 - Show Help Markers.
 - Gate parameters to limit measurements to only edges inside the gates.
 - Add Statistics and **Histicons** to the Measure Table.

Touch **Clear Sweeps** to reset all measurement counters and restart all statistics.

Touch **Clear All Definitions** to reset all parameters to "None".



Caution: Definitions cannot be restored after clearing, you must repeat parameter set up.

Standard Parameter Sets

The pre-configured standard parameter sets available on the Measure dialog are:

- **Std Vertical:** Pk-Pk, Ampl, Max, Min, Sdev, Mean, Base, Top
- **Std Horizontal:** Rise, Fall, Period, Frequency, Width, Duty Cycle, Delay, N Points

To quickly begin a new set of user-defined parameters based on the standard vertical or horizontal sets, touch **Quick Setups** and choose the set to copy. Refine the settings on the [Pn dialogs](#).

Statistics and Histicons

Checking **Statistics On** on the Measure dialog adds the mean, min, max and sdev of each parameter to the measured value shown on the Measure table.

Statistics for each parameter are calculated once per acquisition and accumulate until you either Clear Sweeps or the measurement buffer is full. The Num row of the Measure table shows the total number of measurements included in the Statistics calculation. If the measurement is gated, the statistics are calculated for only the data points between the gates, just as the parameter value itself will reflect the limits imposed by the gate.

Mean	The weighted mean of the parameter calculated over the number of times shown.
Min	The minimum value of the parameter measured over the number of times shown.
Max	The maximum value of the parameter measured over the number of times shown.
Sdev	The population standard deviation of the parameter calculated over the number of times shown.
Num	<p>For any parameter that computes once on an entire acquisition, Num represents the number of sweeps over which the statistics are computed.</p> <p>For any parameter that computes on every event within an acquisition, such as a full period, Num represents the number of events per sweep times the number of sweeps computed. Thus, for a Single acquisition of five periods, the Num shown for any per period measurements will be 5, as five measurements were made and the statistics reflect those five measurements. After another Single acquisition, Num will be 10, or five measurements times two sweeps. The statistics now reflect all 10 measurements.</p>



Histicons are miniature histograms of measurements that may be added to the Measure table. They let you see at a glance the statistical distribution of each parameter. Check **Histicons** on the Measure dialog.

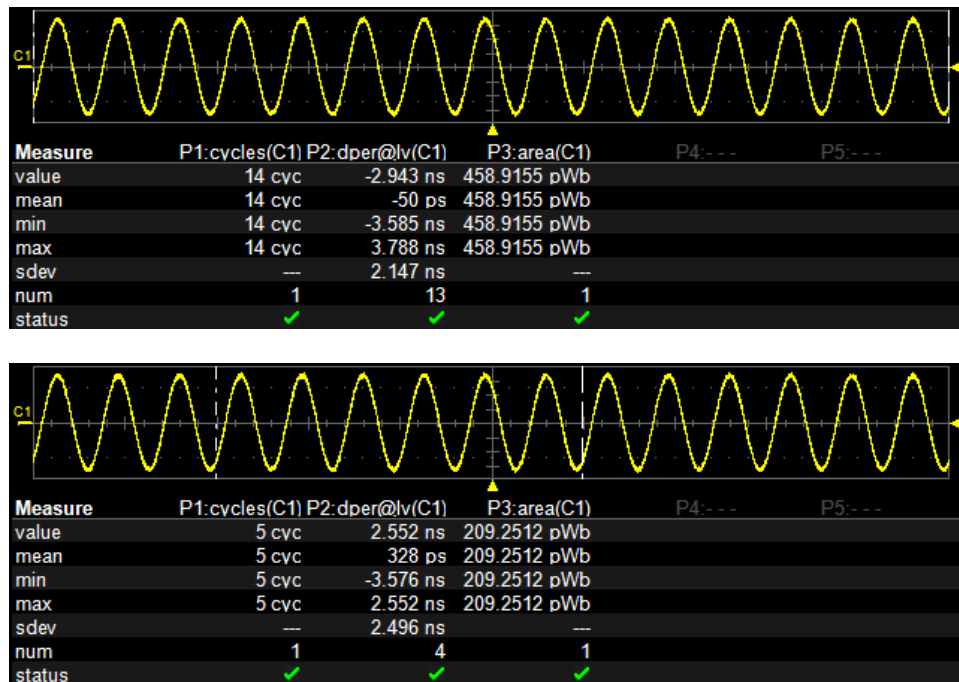


Tip: You can quickly display a full histogram by touching the histicon you want to enlarge.

Gating Measurements

All measurements are calculated on only that portion of the waveform trace that is visible on the grid *and* within the measurement gates. Any setting that moves the trace outside the observation window or makes it appear "clipped" will affect measurements.

The default starting positions of the measurement gate posts are 0 div and 10 div, which coincide with the left and right edges of the grid, and the First and Last points. Therefore, the measurement gates initially enclose the entire visible acquisition. By moving the measurement gates, you can focus the measurement on the section of the acquisition of greatest interest. For example, if you "gate" six rising edges of a waveform, calculations are performed only on the six pulses bounded by the gate posts.



Gates (vertical white lines) limit the data measured and visibly change measurement calculations.

If you wish to gate all parameters to the same number of edges, use the **Gate** fields on the Measure dialog. For user-defined parameter sets ("My Measure"), first check **Lock** to activate the Start and Stop fields. Standard parameter sets are automatically gated to the same number of edges, you do not need to first Lock the gates. The quickest way to set a gate is to drag the gate posts from the far left and right of the grid to the desired positions, or you can enter the **Start** and **Stop** positions down to hundredths of a division. When gates are locked, all measurements will change together when you drag either gate post to reposition the gate.

Deselect Lock to return gates to their last unlocked position. Touch **Default** to return gates to the edge of the grid.

To apply different gates to individual user-defined parameters, deselect Lock on the Measure dialog and use the Gate subdialog of the Pn dialog to enter the Start and Stop positions. These positions will be resumed when gates are unlocked.

Help Markers

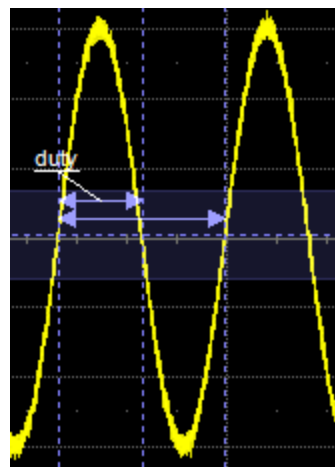
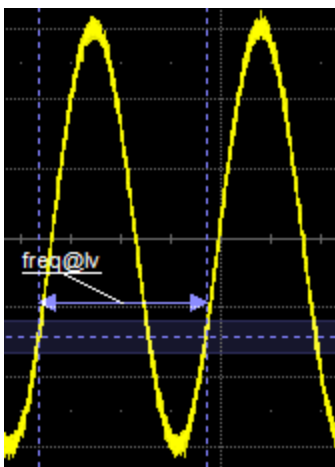
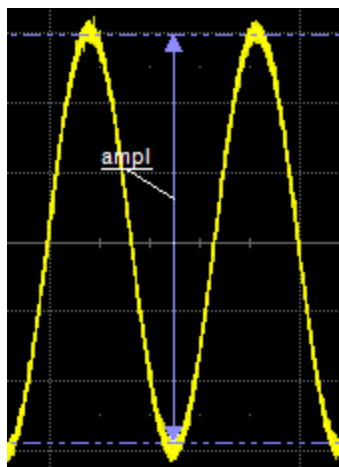
Help Markers clarify measurements by displaying lines, labels and hysteresis bands to mark the points being measured on the trace. For "@Level" parameters, markers make it easier to see where your waveform intersects the chosen level. If you change the set of parameters displayed, the markers will change, as well.

You can choose to use **Simple** markers, which are only the lines, or **Detailed** markers, which include the measurement point labels.

You also have the option, by means of the **Always On** checkbox, to leave the markers displayed over traces after you have closed the Measure dialogs or readout table.



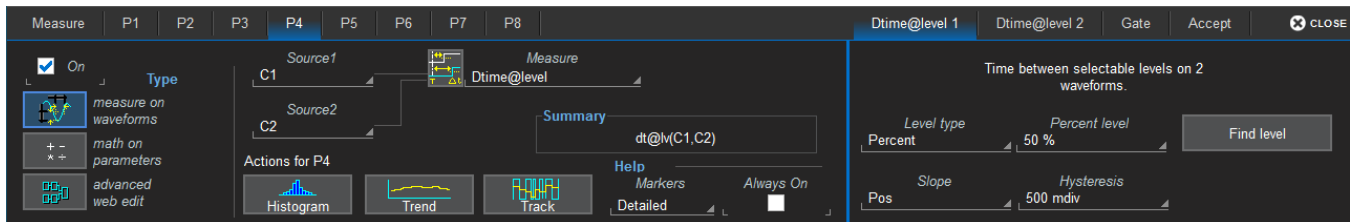
Note: Unlike regular cursors, which are white and can be moved, help markers are blue and only augment the display; they cannot be moved, and they do not reset the measurement points. Some optional analysis software packages include markers designed specially for that domain of reference, which are documented in the option manual.



Detailed Help Markers

Parameter Set Up

Use the Pn dialogs to define a new set of measurement parameters ("My Measure").



1. From the menu bar, choose **Measure > Measure Setup**.
2. Choose Measure Mode **My Measure**.
3. Open the **Pn** dialog and check **On** to activate the parameter.
4. Select the Type **Measure On Waveforms**.
5. Touch the **Source** selectors and choose the trace to be measured. Some measurements require two sources.
6. Touch the **Measure** field and select the measurement from the pop-up menu.
7. Make any further selections on the subdialogs that appear after your Measure selection. These are explained on the dialog and are necessary to fully define the measurement.
 - For @Level parameters, enter the measurement [level](#) and optional hysteresis.
 - For certain time-based measurements, choose the [slope\(s\)](#) on which to begin the measurement.
 - Where relevant, choose to make the measurement [per period or cycle](#).
8. Optionally, turn on [help markers](#), or use the parameter subdialogs to:
 - [Gate](#) measurements (limit the horizontal scope of the measurement)
 - [Accept](#) only measurements that meet additional conditions
 - Change the output [units](#) of measure.

Slope, Level and Hysteresis

Several time-based measurements enable you to select on which edge of the waveform the measurement begins, or at what level the measurement is taken (e.g., *@level parameters). These measurements usually also offer options for determining how the level is defined, and for setting up a hysteresis band to prevent unwanted waveform effects from altering the measurement.

Slope

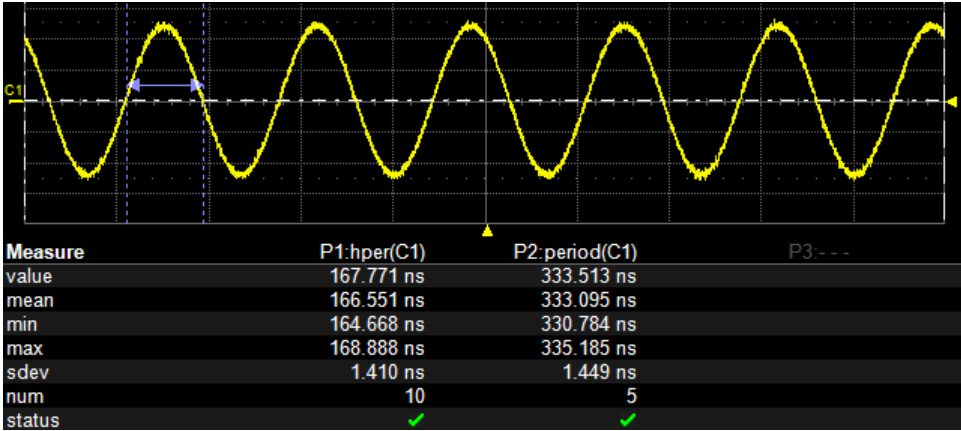
The Slope determines the edge of a pulse (the X axis point) at which measurements are made, or from which edge to which edge a single period/cycle is counted. Slope can impact per period and cyclic measurements, as the number of complete periods may be different depending on which edge is used.

For two-input parameters, such as Dtime@level, you can specify the Slope used for each input separately to determine the points on each waveform to be compared.

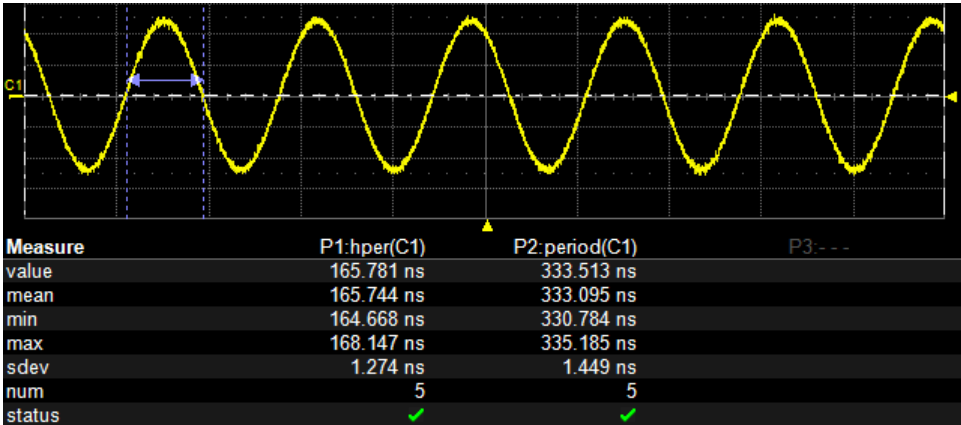
There are three possible settings for Slope:

- **Positive**, use the rising edge of a pulse
- **Negative**, use the falling edge of a pulse
- **Both**, use either edge, whichever next occurs that meets the other criteria

Here, the P1 Half Period parameter uses a Slope of Both, resulting in 10 measurements in this five period acquisition, one every time the signal crosses the 50% Level, rising or falling (only the first rising edge measurement is marked by the Help Marker).



If Slope were set to Positive, there would be only five measurements in this acquisition, one every time the rising edge crossed the 50% Level, but not the falling edge (the Num row shows the difference).



Level

Level is the point on the Vertical (Y) axis used to take a measurement. The default Level for measurements is 0 V or 50% amplitude, the center grid line when there is no Vertical Offset. When Level can be specified, it can usually be set as either:

- An **Absolute** number of Volts, or whatever is the vertical unit of the source waveform
- A **Percent** of waveform amplitude, as determined by the Top-Base calculation

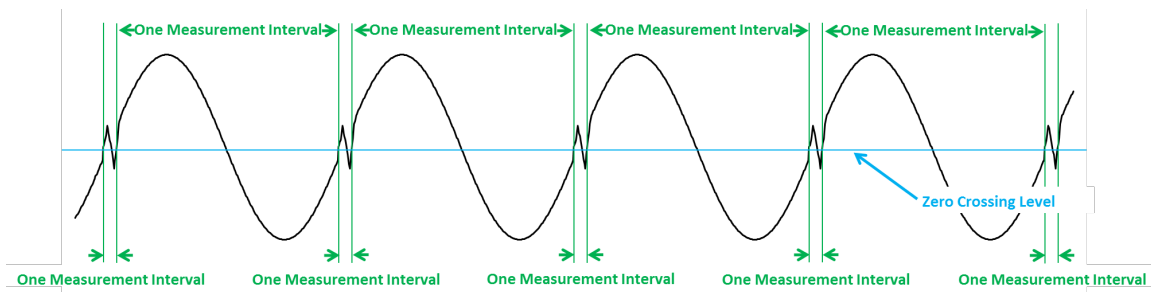
Measurements that may be calculated per period usually have a Levels setting to specify the Level on the rising edge from which full periods are counted.

Hysteresis

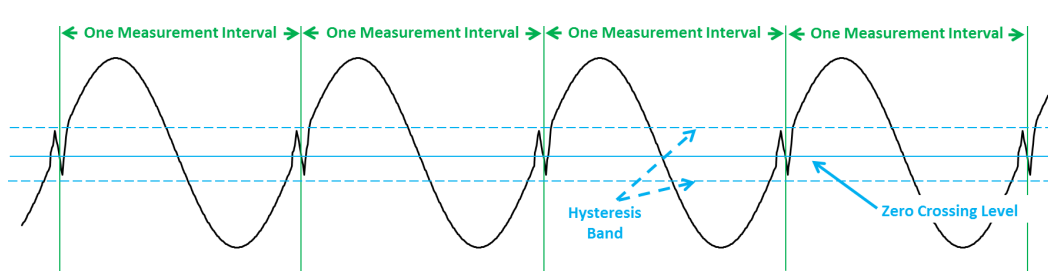
The Hysteresis setting defines an amplitude “band” which the input signal must exceed before a crossing can be determined. Some non-zero Hysteresis value is required to prevent false crossing determinations. The default value is 500 millidivisions (mdiv), with the unit “divisions” being equal to oscilloscope vertical grid divisions.

- Lower hysteresis values improve the ability to detect crossings on a smaller amplitude signal, but with risk that false crossings will be detected. This also means that the signal must meet a minimum amplitude requirement, and be relatively noise free at lower amplitudes.
- Higher hysteresis values improve the ability to reject the impact of signal distortion or noise in determination of the crossing, but with risk that accuracy of crossing detection will be reduced.

For example: a non-monotonic signal crosses the 50% measurement threshold on the rising edge nine times within the observation window, although there are actually only four waveform cycles. Without Hysteresis, the non-monotonicity period is incorrectly detected as crossing and therefore a measurement interval, which will result in incorrect calculation of periodic measurements.



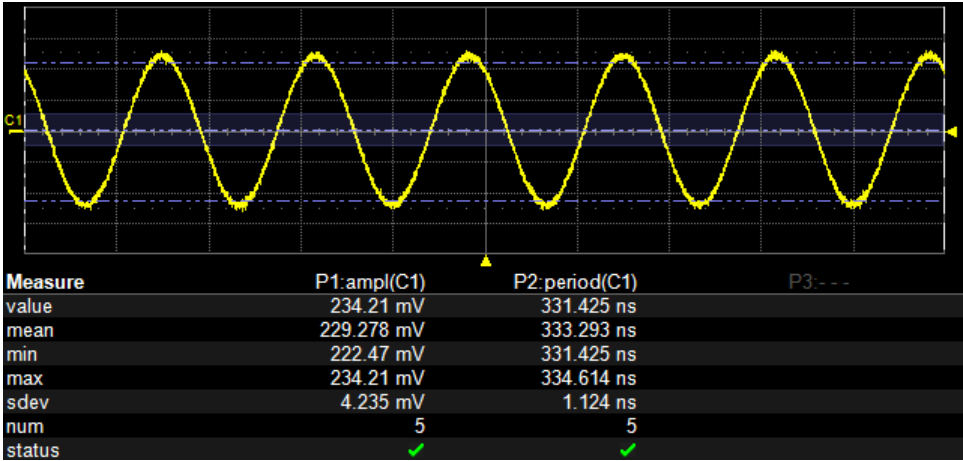
A Hysteresis level that is greater than the amplitude of the non-monotonicity results in only four measurement intervals, avoiding false measurement calculations.




Periodic and Cyclic Measurements

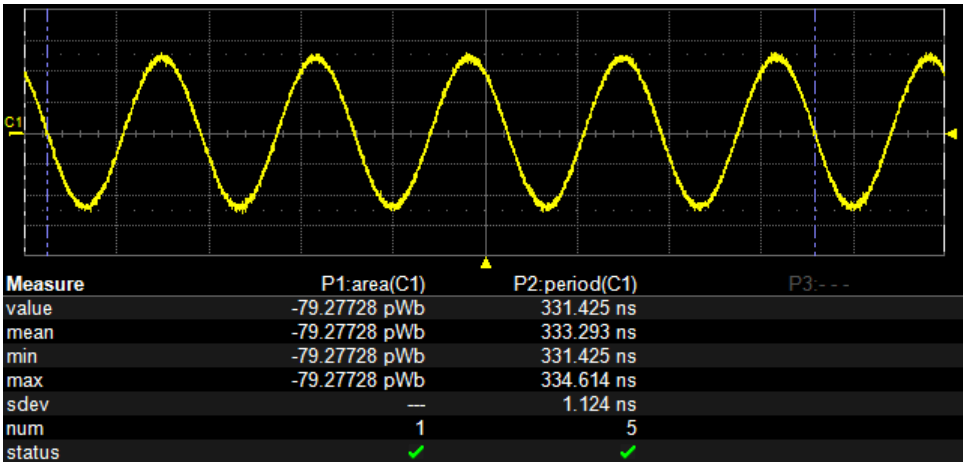
Some measurement set up dialogs display a checkbox for **Show one value per period** or **Cyclic**.

Periodic measurements return one measurement per full waveform period in the acquisition. Usually, "per period" is an option for Vertical parameters, like Amplitude, that would normally return only the value of the last full period in the acquisition. By choosing Show one value per period, the Amplitude of each full period measured is computed into the mean, and num will show the number of measurements used (value will still show the value of the last pulse measured). The example below shows how the P1 Amplitude parameter Num statistic changes from 1 to 5 when set to measure per period. A hysteresis band Help Marker also appears, showing the level at which the periods are counted.



 **Tip:** A WaveScan set to Measurement mode on the same source and measurement will show all the per period values within the acquisition.

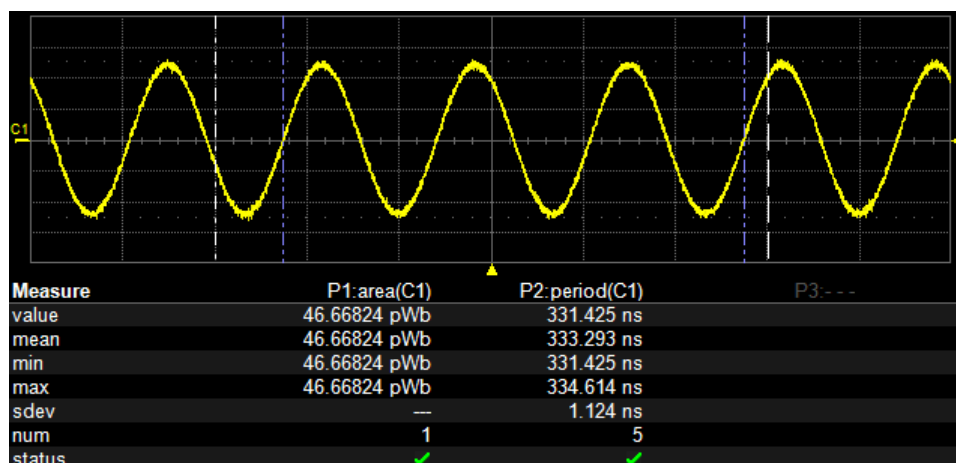
Similarly, cyclic measurements are computed over the span of full periods in the acquisition, ignoring any partial periods at the beginning or end of the acquisition. For example, if the Area parameter is set to Cyclic, and the acquisition has five full cycles, then only the Area of those five cycles is calculated, as shown below. The blue Help Markers show the five full periods, while the partial periods at the start and end of the acquisition are omitted. Normally, the Area of the full, visible acquisition is calculated. In both cases, only one measurement value is returned, but the value will be different.



Counting Periods/Cycles

Per period and cyclic measurements are subject to the other measurement settings, such as the Slope and Level from which to count the waveform periods. Always visit the subdialogs that appear when checking Show one value per period or Cyclic to determine if there are further settings to be made.

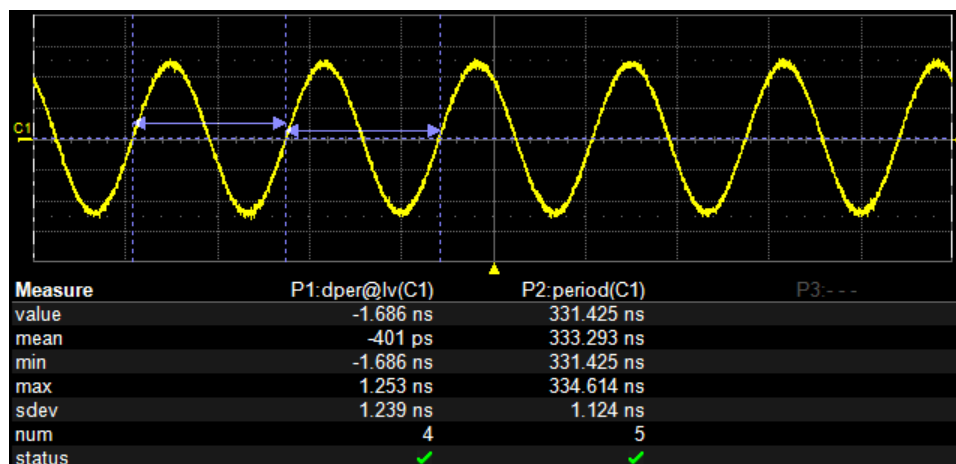
When the measure gates are in their default positions of 0 and 10 div, the periods/cycles are counted across the full width of the grid. If the gates are set elsewhere, then the measurements are computed on only as many full periods/cycles are within the gate. As shown below, gating the cyclic Area measurement reduces the calculation to the three full cycles that are within the measure gates.



N-Cycle and N-Period Set Up

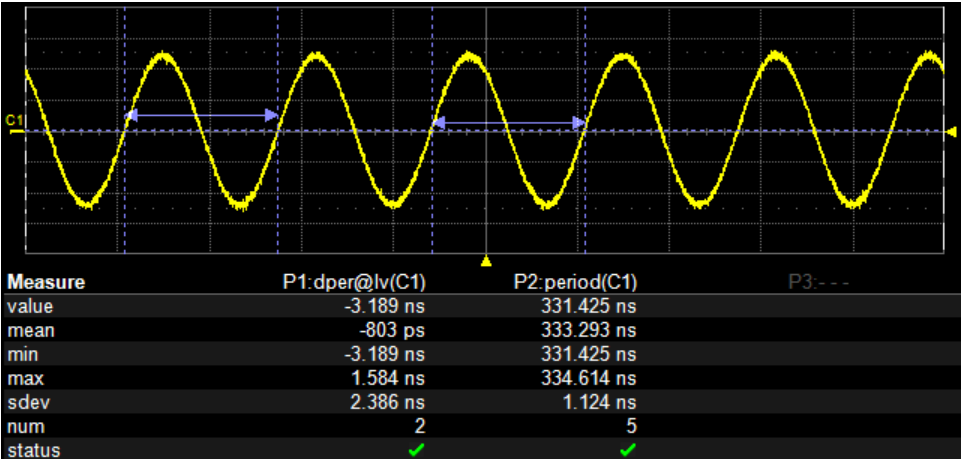
The measurements Period@level and Dperiod@level include settings to specify how often to make the measurement and at which cycle to start, rather than using only the full integer number of cycles. The subdialogs containing these settings are called variously N-Cycle Setup and N-Period Setup, but they do the same thing.

Group Size sets the interval of full cycles at which to take the measurement. For example, the image below shows an acquisitive of five full cycles, which is evident from the P2 Period statistics showing Num 5, indicating that's how many periods were calculated. P1 Dperiod@level, which by default measures the delta between two consecutive periods, shows only a Num of 4, because using a Group Size of 1, four comparisons could be made—period 1 to period 2, period 2 to period 3, and so forth.

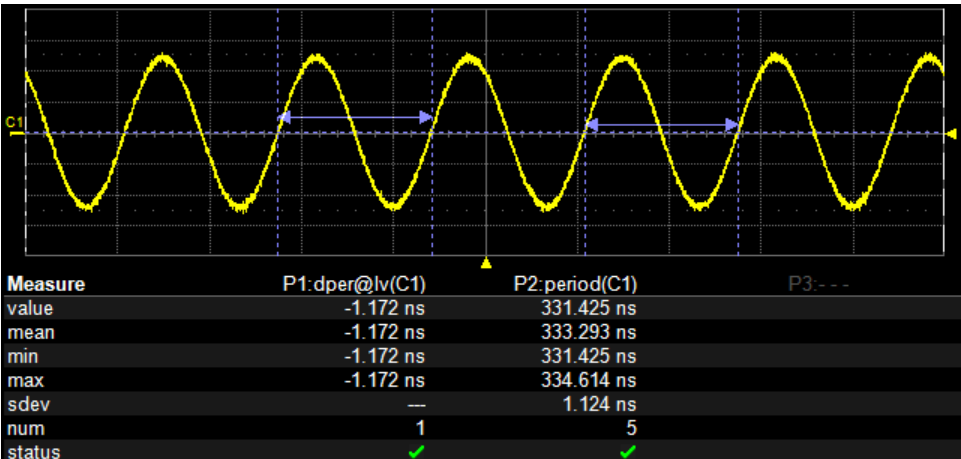


Note that although the Help Markers overlay the first two periods, the measurement value of -1.686 ns reported is actually the final measurement comparing the last two periods, as would be shown by looking at a WaveScan of the same acquisition.

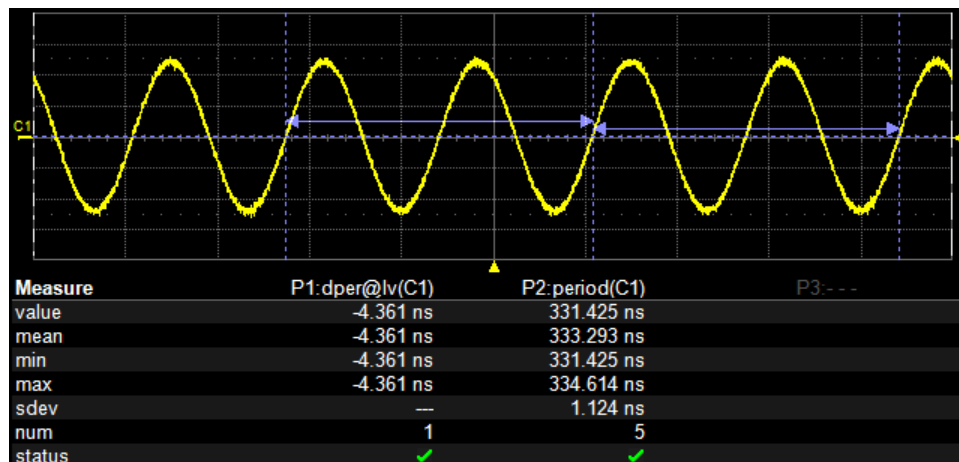
When the Dperiod@level Group Size is changed to 2, the measurement is taken every other period, and because only two measurements can be made out of the five period total (periods 1 to 3 and 2 to 4), the P1 Num changes to 2.



Start Cycle is the cycle from which to begin counting the measurement, which can be any number *Group Size*-1, as the count will begin with the first full group. When the P1 Dperiod@level Start Cycle is changed from 0 to 1, period 1 is skipped, and the measurement begins at period 2. Now, Num has changed to 1, because only one measurement can be made using periods 2 and 4, omitting 3 and 5 due to the Group Size of 2.



Dperiod@level also allows you to also specify how the Group Size interval is treated, as a separator or a summation. **Use One Value Per Group** (shown above) measures every n th cycle, the first in each group. **Sum All Values in Group** (shown below) calculates the sum of all the cycles in the group and compares it to that of the next group.



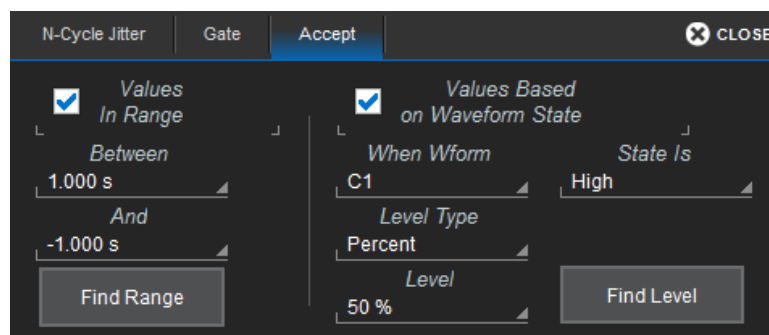
Accepting Measurements

Some measurements can be constrained to a vertically or horizontally limited range of values, or to samples "gated" by the state of a second waveform. Both constraints can operate together. This capability enables you to exclude unwanted characteristics from your measurements. It is much more restrictive than a [measurement gate](#), which is used only to narrow the span of analysis along the horizontal axis.



Note: Since this feature operates on only a subset of the data, possible alerts or status indicators concerning the measurement (such as "Data range too low") are not displayed.

If the measurement supports this feature, you will see the Accept subdialog next to the P_n dialog for you to define your constraints.



Range Limited Parameters

1. From the menu bar, choose **Measure > Measure Setup...**, then touch the **P_n** tab to open the parameter setup dialog.
2. On the **Accept** subdialog, select **Values In Range** and enter the start and stop values, or touch the **Find Range** button to quickly display the most recently measured range of values.



Note: The correct units for the measurement (V, s, Hz, dB, etc.) are automatically displayed. If you select a simple ratio parameter that yields a dimensionless number (such as power factor), units are omitted.

Waveform Gated Parameters

1. From the menu bar, choose **Measure > Measure Setup**, then touch the **Pn** tab to open the parameter setup dialog.
2. On the **Accept** subdialog, select **Values Based on Waveform State**.
3. Touch **When Wform** and select the gating waveform. It can be any waveform active at the same time as the measurement source waveform.
4. Touch **State Is** and select **High** or **Low** from the pop-up menu. Measurements will only be taken when the gating waveform is in the selected state.
5. Touch **Level Type** and select **Absolute** (voltage) or **Percent** (of amplitude) from the pop-up menu.
6. Enter the crossing **Level** value at which you want measurements to begin.

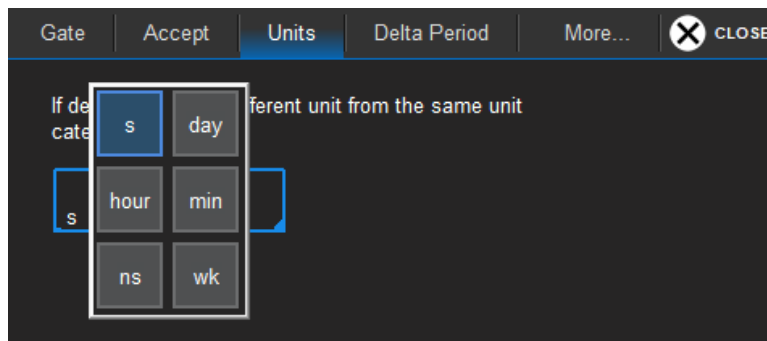
You can also touch the **Find Level** button to automatically set the level at 50% of the gating waveform.

Changing Units

Use the Units subdialog to change the output unit of a measurement parameter or math function trace. The dialog is only active when there are alternative units in the equivalent dimension as the source unit.

Unit Category is the unit type, for example, Length, Velocity, or Time.

Units reflect the Category selection, for example, a Length unit of meters (m) versus a Velocity unit of meters per second (m/s).



List of Standard Measurements



Note: Unless otherwise stated, measurements are calculated according to IEEE standards. Additional measurements may be available depending on the software options installed. The keyword to use in remote control programs appears in Summary on the Pn dialog.

Waveform Measurements

Amplitude - Difference between the upper and lower levels in two-level (bi-modal) signals. Differs from Peak-to-Peak (pkpk) in that noise, overshoot, undershoot, and ringing do not affect the measurement. Amplitude is calculated using the formula for Top-Base. On signals that cannot be identified as bi-modal (e.g., triangle waveforms), Amplitude returns the same value as Maximum – Minimum. Amplitude may be calculated once per period, rather than once per acquisition, by selecting "Show one value per period" on the Amplitude subdialog.

Area - Integral of data. Computes the area of the waveform relative to the zero level. Values greater than zero contribute positively to the area; values less than zero contribute negatively. If Cyclic is checked on the Area subdialog, the area is calculated only over the total number of full cycles, rather than the entire acquisition. See [Periodic Measurements](#).

Base - Lower level in two-level (bi-modal) signals (the higher is Top), or lower of two most probable waveform states on waveforms that are not bi-modal. Base differs from Minimum in that noise, overshoot, undershoot and ringing do not affect the measurement. On signals that are not bi-modal (e.g., triangle waveforms), Base returns the same value as Minimum. Base may be calculated once per period, rather than once per acquisition, by selecting "Show one value per period" on the Base subdialog.

Bit Rate - Bit rate of input data stream, calculated on rising edges only, so it is not affected by DCD. The measurement must be made on at least three rising edges, so that there is more than one interval between rising edges. Otherwise, the measurement returns the clock frequency, and a warning symbol will appear on the Measure table.

Cycles - Number of cycles in a periodic waveform that occur between the measurement gates (by default, 0 and 10 divisions, or the full acquisition). The first cycle begins at the first rising threshold crossing after the left measurement gate.

Delay - Time from the acquisition trigger to the first 50% level crossing visible in the observation window. On acquisitions without a Timebase Delay setting, this is usually a negative number.

Delta Delay - Time from the first 50% level crossing of Source1 to the first 50% level crossing of Source2. Delta Delay can be used to measure the propagation delay between two signals by triggering on one and measuring the Delay of the other. It may yield a negative result in cases where the Source2 crossing occurs before the Source1 crossing. See [Gating Measurements](#).

Dperiod@level - Cycle-to-cycle deviation of the period measurement, measured from rising edges (Pos Slope), falling edges (Neg Slope), or next crossing (Both Slope) at the specified Level. See [Slope, Level and Hysteresis](#). By default, it measures the adjacent cycle deviation (cycle-to-cycle jitter) for each cycle in a waveform, but it may be configured to compare cycles at set intervals or the mean value of groups of cycles by using an N-Cycle Setup. See [Periodic Measurements](#).

Dtime@level - Time between transitions on two, different input signals, measured on rising edges (Pos Slope), falling edges (Neg Slope), or next crossing (Both Slope) at the specified Level. Dtime@level may yield a negative result in cases where the Source2 crossing occurs before the Source1 crossing. See [Gating Measurements](#) and [Slope, Level and Hysteresis](#).

Dtrig Time - Time from last acquisition trigger to the present acquisition trigger. For Sequence Mode acquisitions, the time between segment triggers within a single segmented waveform.

Duration - Time from first acquisition trigger to last acquisition trigger included in an average, histogram, or segmented waveform. For single-sweep acquisitions, Duration is 0. For segmented waveforms (Sequence mode acquisitions), Duration is the time from the first segment trigger to the last segment trigger (that occurs between the measurement gates). For averages, histograms and other waveforms calculated over a history of acquisitions, Duration is the time from the first to the last accumulated waveform's trigger.

Duty Cycle - Percent of period for which data are above or below the 50% level of the signal, using a hysteresis band of 22% of amplitude.

Duty@level - Percent of period for which data are above or below a specified level, measured on rising edges (Pos Slope) or falling edges (Neg Slope). See [Slope, Level and Hysteresis](#).

Dwidth@level - Difference between adjacent Widths, measured on rising edges (Pos Slope), falling edges (Neg Slope), or next crossing (Both Slope) at the specified Level.

Edge to Edge - Time from the specified edge on Source1 to the specified edge on Source2.

Edge@level - Number of edges in waveform that cross the specified threshold Level, measured on rising edges (Pos Slope), falling edges (Neg Slope), or next crossing (Both Slope). See [Slope, Level and Hysteresis](#).

Fall 80-20% - Duration of a pulse waveform's falling transition from 80% to 20% of the amplitude, measured for all falling transitions with the value for the last full pulse shown. On signals that do not have two major levels (e.g., triangle waveforms), the Top-Base measurement used to calculate Amplitude can default to Maximum and Minimum, giving less predictable results.

Fall Time - Duration of a pulse waveform's falling transition from 90% to 10% of the Amplitude, measured for all falling transitions, with the value for the last full pulse shown. On signals that do not have two major levels (e.g., triangle waveforms), the Top-Base measurement used to calculate Amplitude can default to Maximum and Minimum, giving less predictable results.

Fall@level - Duration of pulse waveform's falling transition between two, user-specified transition levels, measured for all falling transitions, with the value for the last full pulse shown. Two vertical values on the falling edge are used to compute fall time:

High = upper threshold value x Amplitude/100 + Base

Low = lower threshold value x Amplitude/100 + Base

See [Slope, Level and Hysteresis](#).

First - Time at which the left measurement gate intersects the Horizontal axis, marking the first sample point included in the measurement. By default, this is the time at 0 divisions, set at the far left of the grid.

Frequency - Reciprocal of each Period of cyclic signal. Period is measured as time between every pair of 50% crossings on the rising edge, starting with the first rising transition after the left measurement gate.

Freq@level - Reciprocal of each Period of a cyclic signal. Period is measured as the time between every pair of crossings at the specified level and edge, starting with first matching transition after left measurement gate. See [Slope, Level and Hysteresis](#).

Half Period - Half period of a waveform, measured as the time between adjacent transitions of opposite slope at a specified level. You can configure this measurement to be taken from only rising edges to falling edges (Pos Slope), from only falling edges to rising edges (Neg Slope), or from every crossing to the next (Both Slope). See [Slope, Level and Hysteresis](#).

Hold Time - Time from the first data signal edge at specified slope and level (Source2), to nearest previous clock signal edge at specified slope and level (Source1). Use Hold Clock subdialog to specify clock edge, and Hold Data subdialog to specify the data edge.

Last - Time at which the right measurement gate intersects the Horizontal axis, marking the last sample point included in the measurement. By default, this is the time at 10 divisions, set at the far right of the grid.

Level@X - Vertical value at the specified x-axis position, which may be set by entering a value or moving the white measurement cursor. If the position is between two sample points, it gives the interpolated value. When the **Nearest point** checkbox is selected, it gives the vertical value of the nearest data point.

Maximum - Largest vertical value in a waveform. Unlike Top, does not assume the waveform has two levels.

Mean - Average of vertical values in a waveform. Computed as centroid of distribution for a histogram of the data values.

Median - Average of Top and Base values.

Minimum - Smallest vertical value in a waveform. Unlike Base, does not assume the waveform has two levels.

N-Cycle Jitter - Peak-to-peak jitter between edges measured at N UI intervals. Results may be viewed in time (S) or UI.

NBPhase - Narrow Band Phase, phase at a specified frequency of the signal.

NBPower - Narrow Band Power, power at a specified frequency of the signal.

Num Points - Number of data points in the source waveform between the measurement gates.

Overshoot- - Amount of overshoot following falling edges, represented as percentage of amplitude. Overshoot- is calculated using the formula $(\text{Base} - \text{Minimum}) / \text{Amplitude} \times 100$. On signals that do not have two major levels (e.g., triangle waveforms), this measurement may not give predictable results.

Overshoot+ - Amount of overshoot following rising edges, represented as a percentage of amplitude. Overshoot+ is calculated using the formula $(\text{Maximum} - \text{Top}) / \text{Amplitude} \times 100$. On signals that do not have two major levels (e.g., triangle waveforms), this measurement may not give predictable results.

Peak to Peak - The difference between the maximum and minimum vertical values within the measurement gates. Unlike Amplitude, does not assume a waveform has two levels.

Period - The time between 50% crossings on the rising edge, starting with the first transition after the left measurement gate. Period is measured for each adjacent pair, with values averaged to give the final result.

Period@level - The time between crossings at a user-specified slope and level, starting with first transition after the left measurement gate. See [Slope, Level and Hysteresis](#). By default, Period is measured for each adjacent pair, with values averaged to give the final result, but it can be configured to compare cycles at set intervals by using an N-Period Setup. See [Periodic Measurements](#).

Phase - Phase difference between analyzed and reference signals, measured from the 50% level of their rising edges.

Rise 20-80% - Duration of a pulse waveform's rising transition from 20% to 80% of amplitude, measured for all rising transitions with the value for the last full pulse shown. On signals that do not have two major levels (such as triangle or saw-tooth waves), the Top-Base measurement used to calculate rise can default to Maximum and Minimum, giving less predictable results.

Rise Time - Duration of a pulse waveform's rising transition from 10% to 90% of amplitude, measured for all rising transitions with the value for the last full pulse shown. On signals that do not have two major levels (e.g., triangle

waveforms), the Top-Base measurement used to calculate rise can default to Maximum and Minimum, giving less predictable results.

Rise@level - Duration of a pulse waveform's rising edge between user-defined transition levels, measured for all rising transitions with the value for the last full pulse shown. The two values used to compute the rise time are calculated as:

Low = lower threshold x Amplitude/100 + Base

High = upper threshold x Amplitude/100 + Base

See [Slope, Level and Hysteresis](#).

RMS - Root Mean Square of the vertical values (between the measurement gates).

If Cyclic is checked on the RMS subdialog, the RMS is calculated over only full cycles, rather than the entire acquisition. See [Periodic Measurements](#).

Setup - Time from data edge (Source2) to next nearest clock edge (Source1).

Skew - Time of Clock2 edge (Source2) minus the time of previous Clock1 edge (Source1).

Slew Rate - Slew rate (local dV/dt) at user-specified slope and level. See [Slope, Level and Hysteresis](#).

Std Dev - Standard deviation of the vertical values between the measurement gates.

This is equivalent to the RMS for a zero-mean waveform. Also referred to as AC RMS. If Cyclic is checked on the Std Dev subdialog, the standard deviation is calculated over only full cycles, rather than the entire acquisition. See [Periodic Measurements](#).

TIE@level - Difference between the measured crossing time at the specified slope and level and the ideal expected time. The measurement may be given in time (S) or unit interval (UI). A UI equals one clock period. The Virtual Clock (set up on the VClock subdialog) enables you to simulate your choice of Standard (1.544 MHz) or Custom reference clocks. You can also use a mathematically derived Golden PLL to filter low frequency jitter. The cutoff frequency is user selectable. See [Slope, Level and Hysteresis](#).

Time@level - Time from trigger ($t=0$) to crossing at a specified slope and level. See [Slope, Level and Hysteresis](#).

Top - Higher vertical value in two-level (bi-modal) signals (the lower is Base), or higher of two most probable waveform states on waveforms that are not bi-modal. Top differs from Maximum in that noise, overshoot, undershoot and ringing do not affect the measurement. On signals that do not have two major levels (e.g., triangle waveforms), Top returns the same value as Maximum. Top may be calculated once per period, rather than once per acquisition, by selecting "Show one value per period" on the Top subdialog.

Width - Width of cyclic signal at 50% level and positive slope, using a hysteresis of 22% of amplitude, measured for all transitions with the value for the last full pulse shown.

WidthN - Width of cyclic signal at 50% level and negative slope, using a hysteresis of 22% of amplitude, measured for all transitions with the value for the last full pulse shown.

Width@level - Width of cyclic signal at a user-specified level, slope and hysteresis, measured for all transitions with the value for the last full pulse shown. See [Slope, Level and Hysteresis](#).

X@max - The horizontal axis location of the maximum vertical value between the measurement gates.

X@min - The horizontal axis location of the minimum vertical value between the measurement gates.

Histogram Measurements

These measurements can be made on histogram math functions. You will receive an error status if you attempt to place them on a pulse waveform or other incompatible source.

FWXX - Full Width at xx%, width of the largest area histogram peak at a user-specified percentage of the population of the highest peak.

Hist ampl - Difference in value of the two most populated peaks in a histogram when the distribution is bi-modal. If the distribution is not bi-modal, it is the difference between the Maximum and Minimum values in the histogram.

Hist base - Value of the left-most of the two most populated histogram peaks.

Hist max pop - Count of the maximum population (highest) peak in a histogram.

Hist maximum - Highest measured value in a histogram.

Hist mean - Average or mean value of measurements in a histogram.

Hist median - Median value of measurements in a histogram, the 'X-axis' of a histogram that divides the population into two equal halves.

Hist minimum - Lowest measured value in a histogram.

Hist mode - Value represented by the highest histogram peak, shown in the unit of the histogrammed parameter.

Hist pop@x - Population of the histogram bin at a specified horizontal position. It is helpful to Stop Trigger and turn on Axis Labels for this measurement so you can see the visible range of horizontal values. Once you enter a value in this range, the histogram cursor will appear for you to drag to different positions along the X axis. The value reported on the Measure table will change as you drag the cursor.

Hist range - The Max-to-Min range of a histogram.

Hist rms - Root mean square of the values in a histogram.

Hist sdev - Standard deviation of the values in a histogram.

Hist top - Value of the right-most histogram peak.

Hist X@peak - Value of the n th highest histogram peak. You supply the value of n .

Peaks - Number of peaks in a histogram.

Percentile - Horizontal data value that divides a histogram so that the population to the left is xx% of the total.

Total Pop - Total population (number of values plotted) of a histogram.

Custom Measurements

These "measurements" enable you to insert a custom script into the oscilloscope process and read back results into the parameter in real time. The script must yield a numeric result.

Custom measurements are standard on WaveMaster, LabMaster, DDA and SDA models. They are enabled with the XDEV option on others.

ExcelParam - Custom measurement calculated in Excel. The measurement will transfer one or two waveforms (as a series of time-value pairs) into an Excel spreadsheet and read the result of the function into the parameter.

Fast MultiWave Port - Provides memory mapped C++ file access using multiple inputs for custom measurement calculation. The result may optionally be read back into the parameter.

HParamScript - Custom Visual Basic or Java script that calculates a measurement on one or two input histograms, as opposed to waveforms.

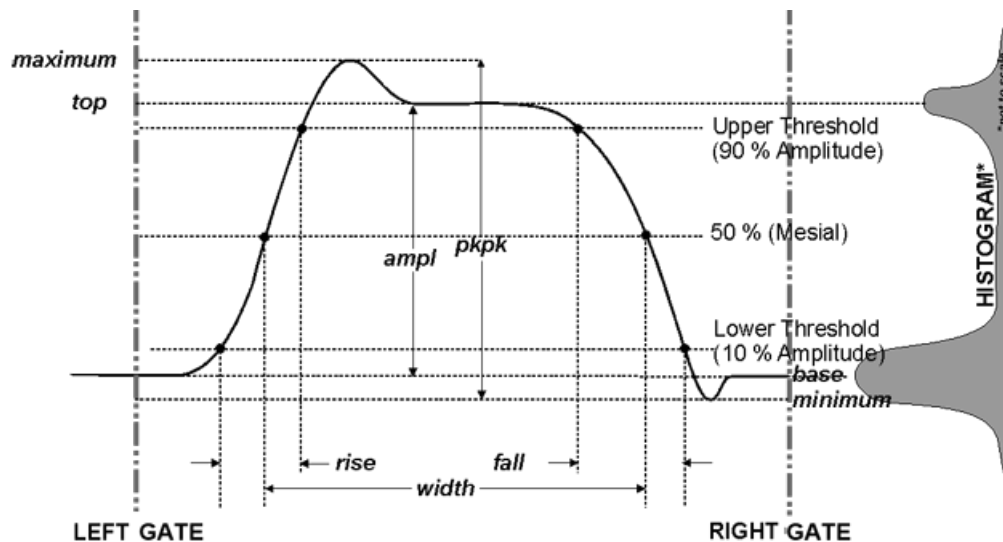
MathCad param - Custom MathCad function that calculates a measurement.

MATLAB param - Custom MATLAB function that calculates a measurement. You may write a MATLAB script on the oscilloscope, or call a pre-existing MATLAB function into a script. MATLAB can run locally on the oscilloscope, or remotely on a host that is accessible to the oscilloscope. See the [MAUI Oscilloscopes Remote Control and Automation Manual](#) for instructions on connecting to MATLAB remotely.

ParamScript - Visual Basic or Java script that calculates a measurement from one or two input waveforms. The script may run locally on the oscilloscope, or remotely on a host that is accessible to the oscilloscope. See the [MAUI Oscilloscopes Remote Control and Automation Manual](#) for instructions on connecting remotely.

Determining Top and Base Lines

Proper determination of the Top and Base reference lines is fundamental for ensuring correct parameter calculations. The analysis begins by computing a histogram of the waveform data over the time interval spanned by the left and right measurement gates. For example, the histogram of a waveform transitioning in two states will contain two peaks (see figure). The analysis will attempt to identify the two clusters that contain the largest data density. Then the most probable state (centroids) associated with these two clusters will be computed to determine the Top and Base reference levels: the top line corresponds to the top and the base line to the bottom centroid.



Determining Rise and Fall Times

Once Top and Base are estimated, calculation of the rise and fall times is easily done (see figure). The appropriate threshold levels are automatically determined by the instrument, using the amplitude (ampl) parameter.

Threshold levels for rise or fall time can also be selected using absolute or relative settings (if @level measurements are included with your model). If absolute settings are chosen, the rise or fall time is measured as the time interval separating the two crossing points on a rising or falling edge. But when relative settings are chosen, the vertical interval spanned between the base and top lines is subdivided into a percentile scale (base = 0 %, top = 100 %) to determine the vertical position of the crossing points.

The time interval separating the points on the rising or falling edges is then estimated to yield the rise or fall time. These results are averaged over the number of transition edges that occur within the observation window.

Rising Edge Duration

$$\frac{1}{M_r} \sum_{i=1}^{M_r} (Tr_i^{90} - Tr_i^{10})$$

Falling Edge Duration

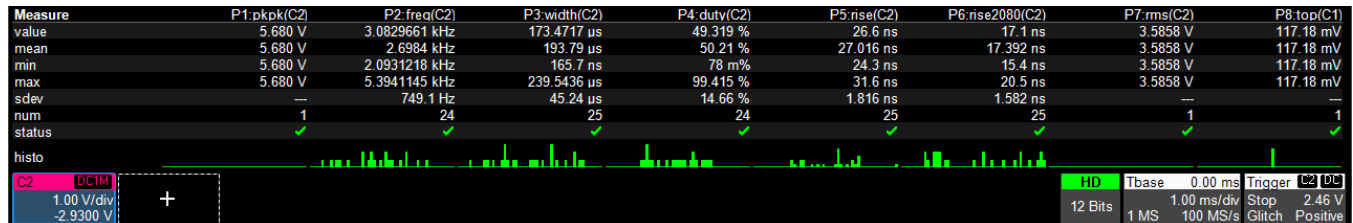
$$\frac{1}{M_f} \sum_{i=1}^{M_f} (Tf_i^{10} - Tf_i^{90})$$

Where M_r is the number of rising edges found, M_f the number of falling edges found, Tr_i^x the time when rising edge i crosses the $x\%$ level, and Tf_i^x the time when falling edge i crosses the $x\%$ level.

Measure Table

The header of the Measure table shows the parameters configured for each measurement slot (P1-Pn).

The **value** row of the Measure table shows the measurements taken for each parameter on the last acquisition. You may optionally calculate and display the statistical mean, min, max and sdev of all parameters. [Statistics](#) are calculated once per acquisition and accumulate over multiple acquisitions, up to the two billion value limit of the measurement buffer.



To quickly set up the table, drag any configured cell onto an empty cell of the Measure table. Then, drag the descriptor box of the trace to be measured onto the new parameter. Touch the cell to choose a new measurement or make any other modifications on the Pn dialog.

Close setup dialogs when the Measure table is displayed to maximize the area available for viewing waveforms. The table itself can be used to reopen setup dialogs. To open the [Parameter Setup \(Pn\) dialog](#), touch the Pn cell of the table. Touch the far left Measure column to open the [Measure dialog](#) and modify the table. The table is static when using standard measurement sets, as these cannot be changed.

Symbols in the **status** row of the Measure table indicate the following:



OK: valid value returned.



Warning: there is a problem with the signal or the setup that prevents measuring. Touch the parameter cell to see an explanation in the message bar.



No Pulse/Insufficient Data: The software is unable to determine top and base. This may indicate that there is insufficient difference between the maximum and minimum for the software to detect a pulse, or there may be an insufficient number of points in the visible top or base of a pulse, such as when closely examining a step response.



Underflow Condition: The bottom most (negative) sample point of the waveform falls below the ADC range. Probably, the bottom of the pulses appear to be cut off.



Overflow Condition: The top most (positive) sample point of the waveform is above the ADC range. Probably, the top of the pulses appear to be cut off.



Simultaneous Underflow and Overflow Condition: Both conditions are present at once.

Parameter Math

In addition to measuring waveforms, you can set up a parameter that performs mathematical operations on the results of other parameters. Parameter math differs from math functions in that the input and the output are still numerical values that display in the Measure table. Math functions, on the other hand, input and output waveform traces that appear on the grid.

The setup for parameter math is much like that for other parameters. Some parameters can be qualified on the Accept subdialog using value ranges or gating waveforms, as can regular waveform measurements. If you have the Advanced Customization (XDEV) option, there is functionality for applying custom scripts to calculate the results.

Exclusions

The following are not supported by Parameter Math:

- Multiplication and division of parameters that return logarithmic values
- Source parameters that are the result of other parameter math operations

Setting Up Parameter Math

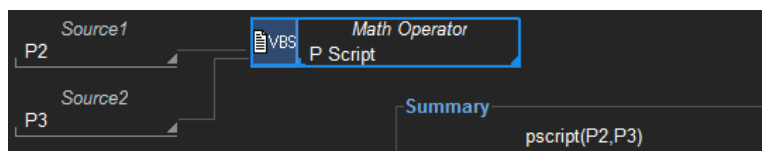
1. From the menu bar, choose **Measure > Measure Setup...**
2. Choose Measure Mode **My Measure** and open a parameter setup (Pn) dialog.
3. Touch the **Math on Parameters** button.
4. Touch **Math Operator** and choose an operation from the **Select Measurement** menu.
5. Touch the **Source** fields and select the parameters that are the inputs to the measurement.
6. Check **On** to enable the new output parameter and add it to the measurement readout.

Using P Script (Custom Parameter Math)

On instruments installed with the Advanced Customization option (XDEV), you can write your own VBScript or JavaScript to apply a mathematical operation to one or two input parameters. Choose the Math Operator **P Script**. Scripting can be done directly on the instrument in the Script Editor window, or you can import an existing script.

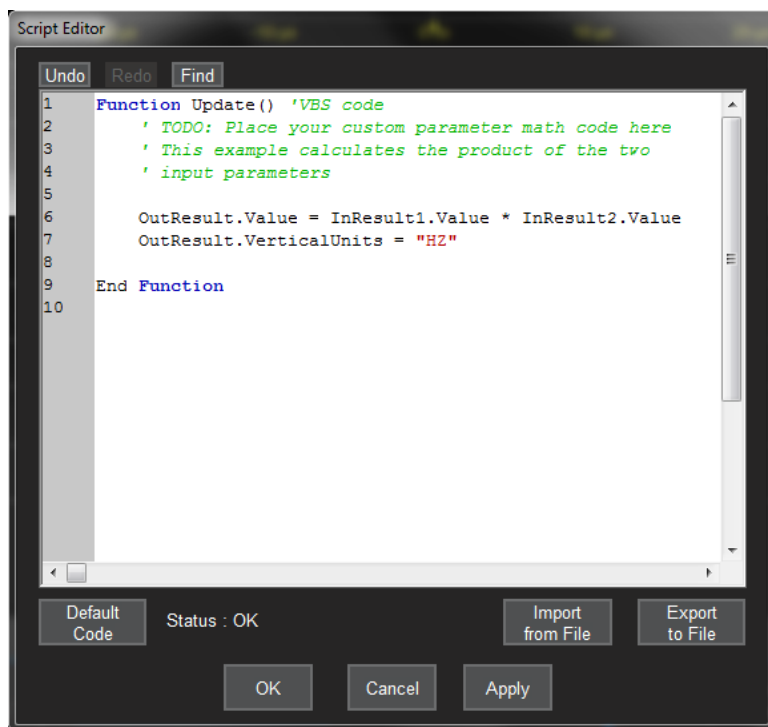


Note: Param Script is a VBScript or JavaScript that performs a measurement on one or two *waveforms* to output a parameter. P Script, which is Parameter Math, is a VBScript or JavaScript that inputs one or two *parameter values* and performs a math operation on them to output another parameter.



1. Choose **Measure > Measure Setup** from the menu bar.
2. Touch the **Pn tab** of the output parameter to display the parameter setup dialog.
3. Touch the **Math on Parameters** button.
4. Touch **Math Operator** and choose **P Script**.
5. Enter the **Source** input parameter(s).

6. On the Script Math subdialog, touch **Script Language** and choose either VBScript or JScript.
7. Touch the **Edit Code** button to open the Script Editor window.



8. Enter your code in the window, or **Import from File** an existing script. Click **Apply** and **OK** to finish.
- Scripts created in this window can be exported to a new file for future use.

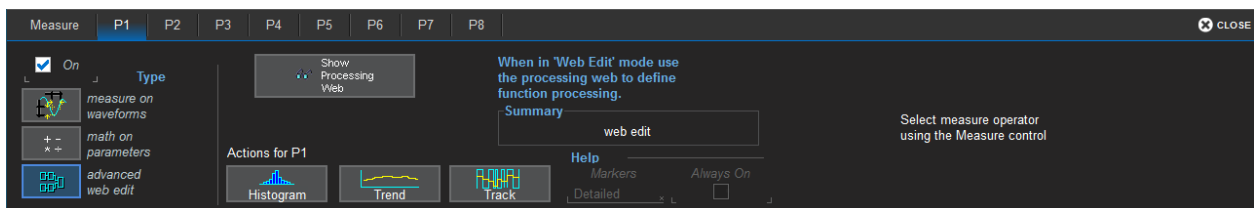
Using Web Editor

Whereas with Parameter Math you can apply a single math operation to measurement parameters, the Web Editor enables you to create processes that chain many operations on multiple inputs, including custom math and measurements (with the XDEV option), and yield multiple outputs. These processes are integral to the operation of the instrument; there is no need to export data to other programs.

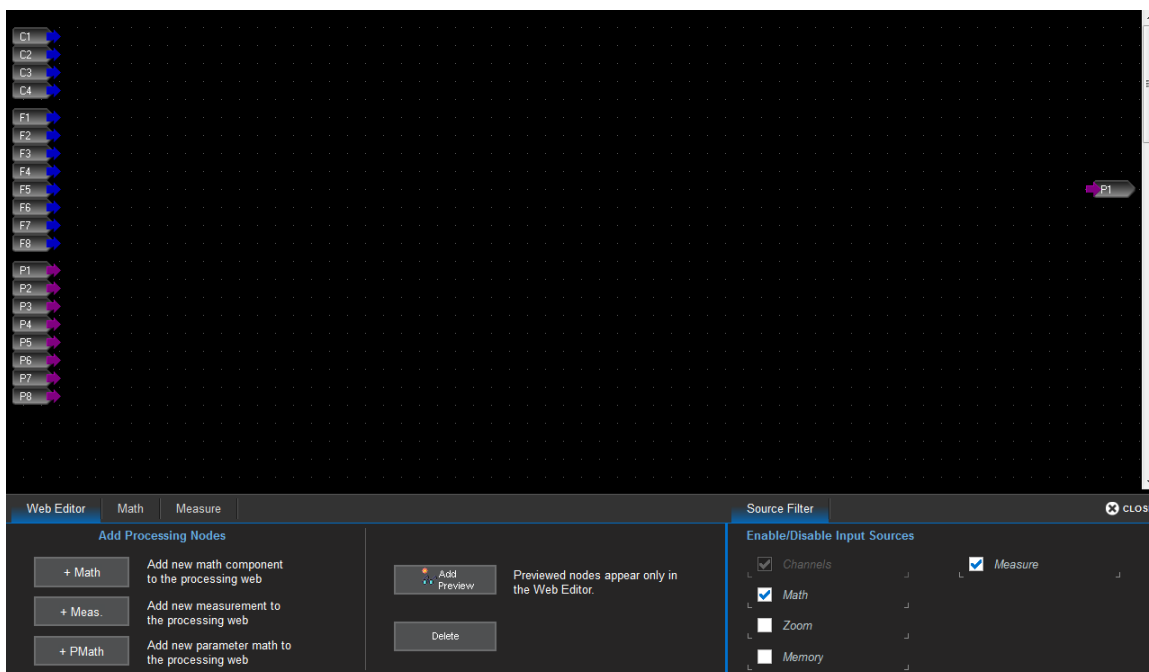
Processes are "programmed" in the X-Stream application simply by arranging a series of blocks representing different math functions or measurements and connecting them to form a flow chart—a "processing web." The terminal parameters and functions represent the final outputs of this process.

Create Processing Web

1. From the menu bar, choose **Measure > Measure Setup**.
2. On the Measure dialog, choose Measure Mode **My Measure**.
3. Open the **Pn** dialog and select **Advanced Web Edit**.



4. Touch the **Show Processing Web** button. You will see a "peg board" display with potential input sources aligned along the left, and a terminal marked with the parameter number to the far right.



5. On the Source Filter subdialog, deselect any types (e.g., zooms) that you do not want to use in the process. This simplifies the display and reduces the need to scroll.

6. On the Web Editor dialog, choose the type of process to add to the flow. You can **Add Math**, **Add Measure**, or **Add Param Math**.
7. From the pop-up, choose the operation or measurement that will occur at that node. A new block appears on the display. Drag the block to a location in the flow.



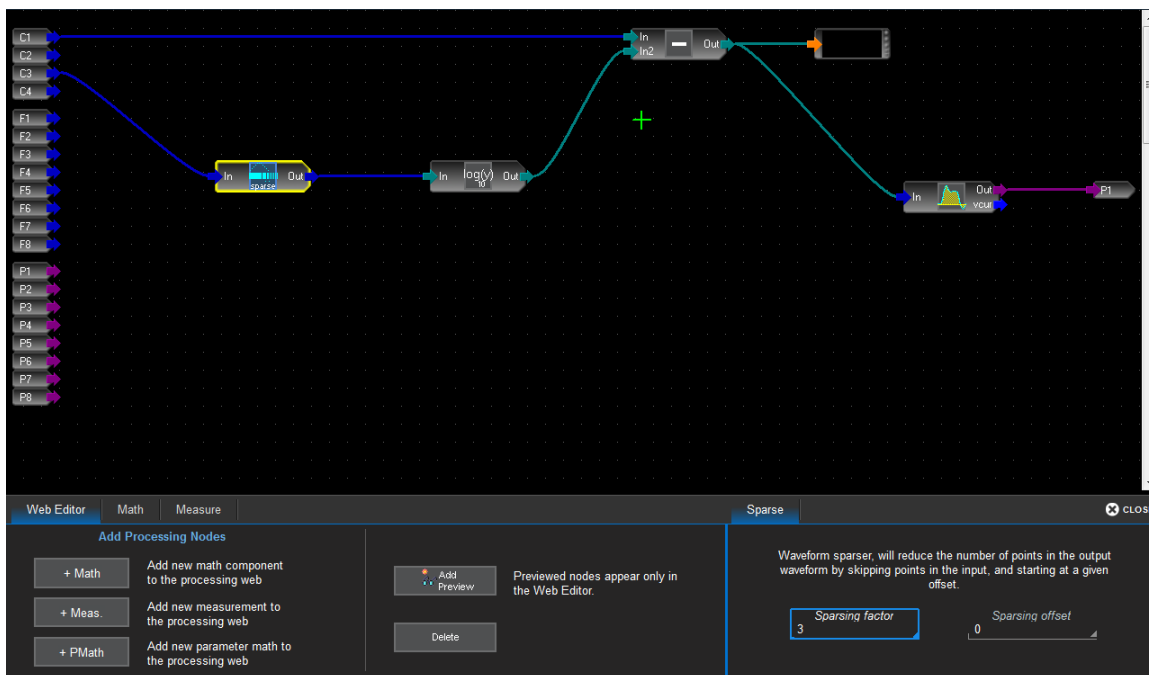
Tip: Touch the location to place a green plus sign before adding the node. Then, the new block will be created at this spot. Otherwise, blocks may cover one another until moved.

8. The process block will have a input "pin" on the left. If a waveform is required, the pin is blue; if a number is required, the pin is purple. Touch and drag a matching colored pin from the sources on the left of the screen to the block. Choose as many sources as there are input pins on the block.



Tip: You may need to scroll to see all the available sources. For convenience, the Math and Measure dialogs behind the Web Editor dialog summarize what is currently configured for those sources.

When you drop the pin, a line is drawn from the source to the process. If a source is incompatible with a process, you will not be able to pin it.



9. If the process requires additional configuration, a subdialog appears next to the Web Editor dialog. Use it to enter the values to apply to that processing node.
10. Continue to add processes as needed, pinning the output of each block to the input of the next block in the flow. The final process should be the same type as the terminal (in this example, a measurement).



Tip: The color of the input/output arrows indicates which connections are compatible. The flow does not need to be strictly sequential, as many processes can accept inputs that have undergone other processes. The only requirement is that the outputs are pinned to acceptable inputs.

11. Drag the output pin from the final process block to the input pin on the terminal.

Preview Outputs

You can add preview "windows" to see the output of a process at any stage in the flow. These previews apply only to the Web Editor.

Select the output pin of the processing block you wish to preview. It will turn bright green. Then, on the Web Editor dialog choose **Add Preview**.

Delete Process/Connection

To delete any process from the web, select the block then touch **Delete**. All the connections to/from it are automatically deleted.

To remove a connection between process blocks, touch the line. A scissor icon appears above it. Confirm whether or not to "cut" the connection.

Add Other Terminals to Processing Web

Other measurements or math functions can share the same processing web. For example, you may wish to create a math function of the waveform that would result from a sub-processing node, while the final output of the full process is a measurement parameter.

To add a terminal:

1. Open the Math or Measure dialog behind the Web Editor dialog.
2. Touch the Web Edit icon following the location (P_n or F_n). The summary changes to Web Edit, and a new terminal block appears on the Web Editor peg board.
3. Connect the output pin of the desired process to the input pin of the terminal. You can select outputs that are already pinned to other blocks.

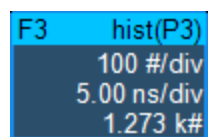
Exit Web Editor

When your processing web is complete, close the Web Editor dialog or choose Scope Display from the Display menu. The screen will resume the regular oscilloscope display.

Using Histograms

Histograms display the statistical distribution of parameter values using bars of varying heights to represent measurement frequency. The Histogram math function plots the number of parameter measurements that fall within a small range, known as a bin, as a function of the parameter value. Each bin is represented by a bar on the chart. The histogram can use from 20 to 5000 bins, each representing a consecutive sub-range of measured values, and it can hold up to two billion measured values.

The [Phistogram](#) function creates a histogram of parameter values falling within a vertical or horizontal "slice" of a persistence map (the trace created when Persistence display is turned on during acquisition).



F3 hist(P3)
100 #/div
5.00 ns/div
1.273 k#

The Histogram function descriptor box shows: the number of values represented by each vertical grid division of the histogram bars (#/div), the bin width represented by each bar of the histogram (vertical or horizontal units/div), and the total number of values computed in the histogram (#).

Thumbnail versions of parameter histograms are called [Histicons](#). They are available as a checkbox option on the Measure dialog. Histicons appear on the Measure table, rather than as a new math trace, although they can be converted to a regular histogram function simply by touching them.

Uses of Histograms

Histograms show the distribution and probability density of waveform parameter values over multiple acquisitions. They are especially useful for visualizing and quantifying random processes, such as jitter. Comparing the total populations of each bin of the histogram can help quantify rarely occurring events that might otherwise be overlooked, one advantage of the statistical study of measured data. Example applications of histograms include:

- [Characterizing DDR read/write timing limits](#)
- [Examining systemic and random variations](#) that produce jitter and time interval error
- [Measuring rise time, setup / hold time, and propagation delay](#) of electronic devices
- [Detecting and diagnosing circuit problems](#), such as crossover distortion

The shape of the histogram yields immediate information about the parameter being measured:

Gaussian/Unimodal histograms have one peak near the center of the distribution with roughly equilateral roll off on each side. The Gaussian distribution is a good indication that a random process is shaping variations in the measurement, such as the effect of random jitter on a pulse measurement.

Bimodal histograms have two, distinct peaks in the distribution at the outer edges, indicative of steady-state high and low values.

Uniform/Symmetric histograms look rectangular, indicating a wide distribution of values.

Skewed histograms show a peak at either the negative or positive edge of the measurement range, with a steady roll off toward the other side.

Because the shape of histogram distributions is particularly interesting, additional [histogram measurements](#) are available for analyzing these distributions. They are generally centered on one of several peak value bins. You will find the histogram measurements in the Statistics sub-menu of the Measure Selector.

Histogram Calculation

Histograms are calculated on the portion of the waveform within the acquisition window and the measurement gates, just as are the parameters. Likewise, histogram measurements are limited to the bars of the histogram that are visible on the grid *and* that fall within the measurement gates.

In Sequence sampling mode, one acquisition for each segment occurs prior to parameter calculations, and a sweep is equivalent to acquisitions for all segments (for non-segmented waveforms, an acquisition is identical to a sweep). If a single segment of a sequence-mode acquisition is selected for viewing, histograms will be recalculated for only the measurements on that segment.

Measurements calculated once per acquisition (Amplitude, Area, Base, Cycles, Delay, Delta Delay, Duration, First, Last, Maximum, Mean, Median, Minimum, Nb Phase, Nb Power, Overshoot+, Overshoot-, Peak-Peak, Phase, Points, RMS, Std Dev., etc.) will not produce characteristic histogram distributions, unless you allow sweeps to accumulate.

Plotting Histograms

1. Open the parameter setup dialog (P_n) for the parameter you wish to histogram.



Tip: A quick way to do this is to touch the Measure table P_n cell.

2. Touch the **Histogram** action button at the bottom of the P_n dialog and choose the function (F_n) in which to draw the histogram.
3. Touch the new **hist descriptor box** to display the F_n dialog, then open the **Histogram subdialog** and define the histogram Buffer and Scaling.

Pressing **Clear Sweeps** at any time resets the measurement counter and restarts the histogram.

Histogram Buffer

Enter the maximum **#Values** in one bin of the histogram. This determines the total number of measurements that are represented by a bar at full height. Once this number is reached, the histogram will be rescaled according to the Vertical Scale method selected, as it continues to accumulate data.

Histograms are dynamically computed using the last N measurements in the parameter buffer, up to two billion. If **#Values** is modified, the histogram is redrawn using the last N events required.

If the parameter source is a memory, storing new data to memory effectively acts as an acquisition trigger/sweep and updates the parameter buffer and the histogram.

Histogram Scaling

Bins

First, enter the total **#Bins** that comprise the histogram. This determines how many bars appear in the histogram. Histogram peak bin values are useful because they indicate the dominant values of a parameter, but using a too high number of bins can yield a spiky histogram, making meaningful peaks hard to distinguish. An optimal bin number is one where the change in bin value is insignificant, and the histogram distribution does not have a jagged appearance.

- For Vertical (amplitude) parameters, the default value of 100 is a good number .
- For Horizontal (timing) parameters, it is safe to use up to the maximum number of bins.

The instrument analyzes histogram data to identify peaks from background noise and histogram definition artifacts such as small gaps, which are due to very narrow bins.

Histogram bins represent a sub-range of parameter measurements, and measurements within a bin may have a value anywhere within that sub-range. However, *measurements of the histogram itself* assume that all measurements in a bin have a single value. The instrument uses the center value of each bin in all its histogram measurements. The greater the number of bins used to subdivide a histogram's range, the less the potential deviation between actual center values and the values used in histogram measurements. However, more bins may require a greater number of sweeps to populate the bins sufficiently to yield a characteristic histogram distribution.

Center and Width

How parameter values are distributed into the bins is determined by the Center and Width values.

The **Center** is the center value of the measurement range represented by the histogram. This will generally be a value near the expected peak value, or a center bar in a symmetric histogram. Examine the mean value of the parameter you wish to histogram to determine a good value to place at center.

The **Width** is the measurement interval represented by each bin of the histogram, which is counted in vertical units/div for Vertical parameters, or horizontal units/div for Horizontal parameters. If Width is 500 ns, a Horizontal measurement between 0 (center) and 500 ns falls into the first positive bin, and one between 0 and -500 ns falls into the first negative bin, and so forth. The more bins that are in the histogram, the smaller the Width should be to ensure that values will distribute across the histogram, showing a meaningful deviation from center.

The instrument's range finding function, **Find Center and Width**, can be used to calculate an optimal range and redraw the histogram using it. The instrument gives a running count of where values fall relative to the range on the Histogram function subdialog, and if any fall above or below it, the range finder can recalculate the histogram using those values while still in the buffer. First check **Enable Auto Find** to use this feature.

Vertical Scale

Histograms build vertically as data accumulates over multiple acquisitions. It is possible that, after a sufficient number of sweeps, the peak bars of a histogram will reach the grid maximum, causing an overflow condition, and the histogram must be rescaled to accurately reflect the distribution. Choose a **Vertical Scale** method by which to handle situations where the histogram buffer is full:

- **Linear** rescales the number of values represented by each vertical division as the histogram reaches the top of the grid. The histogram will appear to shrink then grow again as more data is accumulated, until another rescaling of the values/div is required.
- **LinConstMax** keeps the histogram at near full scale when it reaches the top of the grid, but changes the numbers on the vertical axis as more data is accumulated.

Using Trends

The Trend math function plots a waveform composed of parameter measurements arranged in the order the measurements were made. The vertical units are the source parameter values, and the horizontal unit is the measurement number. The Trend contains a single value for each unique measurement, and therefore may not be time synchronous with the source waveform, where the same measured value may occur successively over time.

Uses of Trends

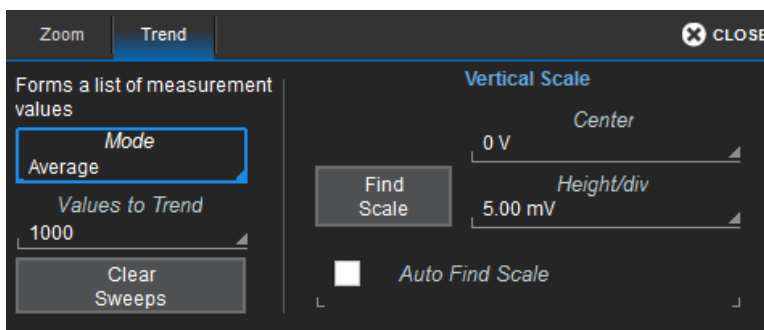
Trends are especially useful for visualizing the history of a parameter over an extended period of time or over multiple acquisitions. Think of Trend as a strip chart recorder for your instrument. Example applications of Trend include:

- [Data logging](#) multiple circuit parameters
- [Power line monitoring](#)
- Measuring [output regulation and ripple](#)
- Characterizing the [dynamic tracking response](#) of PLL-based circuits
- [Locating clock jitter anomalies](#)

Plotting Trends

Although a Trend plots parameter values, it is created as a Math function on the Function (Fn) dialogs.

1. Open the parameter setup (Pn) dialog for the measurement you wish to trend. A quick way to do this is to touch the Measure table cell.
2. Touch the **Trend button** at the bottom of the Pn dialog, then choose the function (**Fn**) in which to draw the plot. The Trend opens in a new grid along with its function descriptor box.
3. Touch the new **Trend descriptor box** to display the Fn dialog, then open the **Trend subdialog**.



4. Choose a computation **Mode** of All (measurements per acquisition) or Average (one measurement per acquisition).
5. Enter the number of measured **Values to Trend**.

Using Tracks

A Track is a waveform composed of parameter measurements that are time synchronous with the source waveform. The vertical units are those of the source parameter and the horizontal units are seconds. Due to the time synchronization, the number of points in the Track function is identical to the number of samples in the source waveform, and a Track is limited to the samples in a single acquisition. The Track may contain many redundant values.

Uses of Tracks

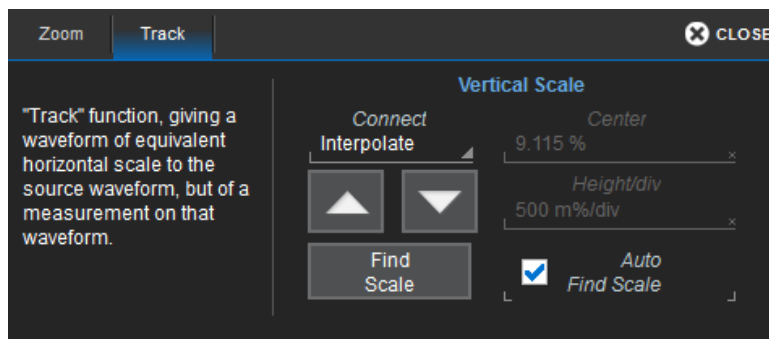
In general, Track is the tool to use if you want to capture a continuous stream of data spaced closely together. It is also useful in applications that require time synchronization, or for locating anomalous parameter values in a long acquisition. Example applications of Track include:

- [Modulation analysis](#) of PWM signals
- [Measuring phase error](#) in PLLs
- [Measuring settling time](#) of waveforms with decaying amplitudes
- Radar measurements to [characterize PRI stagger](#) during walkoff

Plotting Tracks

Although a Track plots parameter values, it is created as a Math function and controlled on the Function (Fn) dialogs.

1. Open the parameter setup (Pn) dialog for the measurement you wish to track. A quick way to do this is to touch the Measure table cell.
2. Touch the **Track** toolbar button at the bottom of the Pn dialog and choose the function (**Fn**) in which to draw the plot.
3. Touch the new **Track descriptor box** to display the Fn dialog, then open the **Track subdialog**.



4. On the Track subdialog, choose a method to **Connect** the points in the track into a waveform: Interpolate points between samples, or Extend the line directly point to point.

Track vs. Trend

The table below summarizes the differences between Track and Trend.

	Track (Parameter value vs. time)	Trend (Parameter value vs. event)
Cumulative?	No, resets after every acquisition	Cumulative over unlimited number of acquisitions, up to two billion events
Time correlates to other data?	Yes	No
Monitors Frequency domain?	Yes	No, points are not evenly spaced in time and therefore cannot be used for an FFT
Monitors parameters over multiple acquisitions?	No, resets after every acquisition	Yes
Preserves all measurement data?	Yes, although maximum time period that can be captured is limited by acquisition memory and sampling rate	No, data can be missed during time oscilloscope takes to re-arm between acquisitions

EMC Pulse Parameter Software Package

The EMC option enhances the oscilloscope's Measure functionality with features designed to ignore undershoot, overshoot, or tail perturbations while measuring rise time, fall time, or width characteristics according to specific EMC/ESD standards.

At Level Parameters

For the parameters Rise@Level, Fall@Level, Width@Level, Time@Level, and dTime@level, in addition to setting the crossing threshold level using the absolute voltage or percentage of amplitude based on the computed Top and Base lines, you may set the level using:

- actual Peak to Peak
- 0V - Max
- 0V - Min

Once the option is activated, the new selections are added to the Level pop-up menu. Otherwise, parameters are configured exactly the same as before.

EMC Parameters

Two parameters designed for EMC measurements are added to the IEC-EMC submenu of the Measure Selector:

- **EMClvlPulse**—EMC Level After Pulse enables you to measure the signal level following the specified pulse transition, omitting earlier portions of the signal.
- **EMCt2Val**—EMC Time to Half Value computes time between interpolated time at 0% on rising edge and crossing time at middle level on falling edge. The interpolated time at 0% is obtained by linear extrapolation using the low crossing and high crossing thresholds.

Math

Math function traces (F_n) display the result of applying a mathematical operation to a source trace. The output of a math function is always another trace, whereas the output of a measurement parameter is a tabular readout of the measurement.

Math can be applied to any channel (C_n), zoom (Z_n), or memory (M_n) trace. It can even be applied to another math trace, allowing you to chain operations (for example, trace F1 can show the average of C1, while trace F2 provides the integral of F1).

On instruments equipped with CustomDSO (XDEV), custom scripts may be used to define a math function. Several scripting "languages" are supported, depending on the application. You can find these options in the Custom submenu of the Math Selector. Scripts may be imported or written in the instrument's Script Editor window and saved for future use. See [Using P Script](#) for a description of the process.

In addition to the extensive math capabilities that are standard with every instrument, enhanced math analysis tools customized for various industries and applications are offered through optional software packages. To learn about math tools available in each optional package, see the product datasheets at teledynelecroy.com.

If you have installed software options, the new capabilities are usually accessed through the Analysis menu, rather than the Math menu, although special math functions will be available when using the standard Math dialogs.

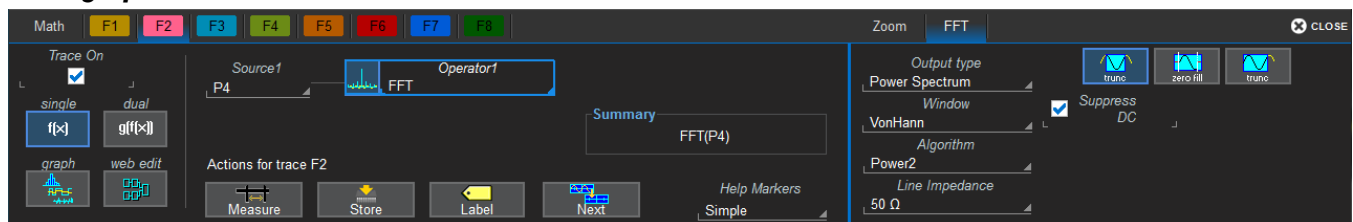
Math Function Set Up

Use the Function dialog to set up math function traces. Math functions take as input one or more channel, zoom, memory or math traces and output a new math trace (F_n). Any additional settings required for the operator will appear on a subdialog at the right of the screen.

Single functions perform one operation on one or two input sources.

Dual functions chain two operations to arrive at a single result. This saves you the effort of having to chain two separate math functions. As with single functions, the number of sources required will vary based on the operation. You may need only one source for Operator1, but two for Operator2 (the result of the first operation counts as one source).

Setting Up New Functions



1. From the menu bar choose **Math > Math Setup**, then open one of the **F_n** tabs.



Tip: You can select **F_n Setup** right from the Math menu.

2. Choose a **single $f(x)$** or **dual $g(f(x))$** operator function.

You can also choose Web Edit, in which case this function is added as a terminal to the processing web. See the instructions for [Using Web Edit](#) to set up the function.

3. In **Operator1**, choose the math operation to perform.



Note: On instruments with the Advanced Customization (XDEV) option, the Operator can be a custom script written in one of several scripting "languages." Choose from the Custom submenu and import or write the script in the Script Editor. See [Using PScript](#) for a description of the process.

4. The choice of operator drives the number of **Source** fields you will see displayed. Make a selection in each field, or drag the source channel descriptor box to the field.

A **Summary** of the function you are building appears on the dialog. Refer to this to be sure your sources are in the proper order to yield the function you want (e.g., C1-C2 vs. C2-C1).

5. If the operator you've selected has any other configurable settings, you'll see a subdialog of the same name as the operator. Touch the tab to open the dialog and make any further settings. These are explained on the dialog.
6. If you're creating a dual function, repeat the procedure for the second operator.
7. Check **Trace On** to display the new math trace.

Following acquisition, you should see a new math waveform appear on the oscilloscope display. Drag-and-drop the *Fn* descriptor box to move it to the desired grid.



Note: If there is a processing error (e.g., overflow) when calculating a math function, a small letter "i" inside a bubble will appear on the *Fn* descriptor box to indicate there is more information regarding the waveform status. See [Finding Waveform Status](#) for instructions on finding the error.

Graphing

The **Graph button** on the Function (*Fn*) dialogs allows you to choose a parameter to plot as a [histogram](#), [track](#), or [trend](#).



Tip: The plots are the same as those created using the toolbar on the Parameter (*Pn*) dialog.

As with other math functions, configurable settings will appear on subdialogs after the plot is selected.

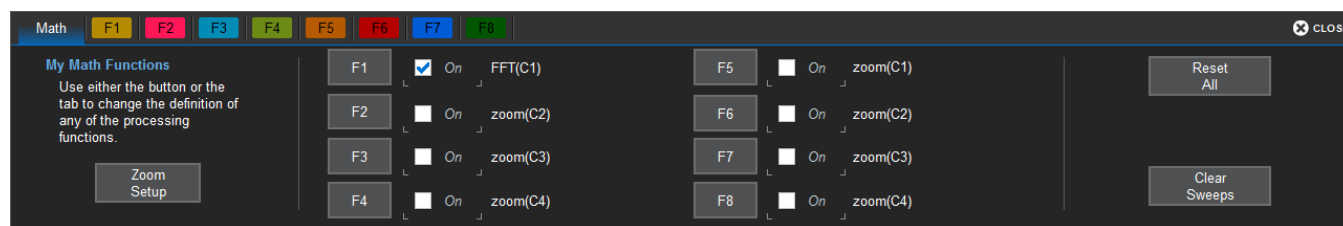
Adjusting Memory or Math Traces

Unlike channel traces, the scale of memory (*Mn*) or math function (*Fn*) traces can be adjusted directly without having to create a separate zoom trace. The same set of [zoom factor controls](#) used for zoom traces appear on the **Zoom subdialog**, but in this context they only rescale the active math or memory trace rather than create a new zoom. This applies to any trace that is created as a math function (*Fn*) trace, including traces generated through analysis options and graphs.

You can, if you wish, create a separate zoom trace from a memory or function trace the same as you would normally create a zoom (draw a selection box, etc.). In this case, you choose one of the zoom locations (*Zn*) in which to draw the trace, but the source trace remains at the original scale.

Math Dialog

Once a math function has been created and saved on the Function (Fn) dialog, use the main Math dialog to quickly enable/disable it. You can also use this dialog to quickly turn on/off zoom traces.



To open the Math dialogs, from the menu bar choose **Math > Math Setup**. Select the **On** checkbox next to each function you wish to display.

To change the function, touch the **Fn** button.

To erase all functions from their locations, touch **Reset All**.

To restart the counter on cumulative functions (like Average), touch **Clear Sweeps**.

List of Standard Math Operators



Note: The installation of software options on the oscilloscope may add math operators to this list.

Standard Operators

Absolute - Calculates distance away from zero for every point in the waveform. For values greater than zero, this is the same as the value. For values less than zero, the magnitude without regard to its sign is used.

Average - Calculates either a summed or continuous average of a selected number of sweeps. See [Average Function](#). The maximum number of sweeps is determined by the oscilloscope model and memory.

Copy - Copies waveform in its unprocessed state to the first available memory location.

Correlation - Calculates a measure of similarity of two waveforms, or a waveform against itself, as a function of a time-lag applied to one of them.

Derivative - Calculates the derivative of adjacent samples using the formula:

$$(next\ sample\ value - current\ sample\ value) / (horizontal\ sample\ interval)$$

Deskew - Shifts trace in time the amount of the deskew factor.

Difference - For every point in the waveform, subtracts the value of Source2 from the value of Source1. Source1 and Source2 must have the same horizontal and vertical units and scale.

Envelope - Calculates highest and lowest vertical values of a waveform at each horizontal value for a specified number of sweeps.

ERes - Applies a noise reduction and smoothing filter by adding a specified number of bits. See [Enhanced Resolution](#).

Exp - Calculates the antilog to the base e of the source; that is, e raised to the power equal to the source.

Exp10 - Same as Exp, using base 10.

FFT - Computes a frequency spectrum with optional Rectangular, Von Hann, Flat Top, Hamming, Blackman-Harris, or Gaussian window. Allows FFT Averaging through use of a second math operator. See [FFT](#).

Floor - Calculates the lowest vertical values of a waveform at each horizontal value for a specified number of sweeps.

Histogram - Plots the number of data points that fall into statistically significant intervals or bins. Bar height relates to the frequency at which data points fall into each interval/bin.

Integral - Calculates the linearly rescaled integral (with multiplier and adder) of a waveform input starting from the left edge of the screen using the formula: *(current sample value + next sample value) * (horizontal sample interval)*. Each calculated area is summed with the previous sum of areas. The multiplier and adder are applied before the integration function.

Interpolate - Inserts points between sampled points (upsamples) according to one of three algorithms: Linear (straight line), Sinx/x (curved), and Cubic (spine). The Interpolation Factor determines the number of points in the upsample.

Invert - For every point in the waveform, the inverse of that point is calculated.

Ln - Performs a natural log of a waveform. Values less than or equal to zero are set to underflow.

Log10 - Performs a log base 10 of a waveform. Values less than or equal to zero are set to underflow.

Phistogram - Creates a histogram based on the displayed pixels of a persistence map falling within a user-defined vertical and/or horizontal box (slice). The source trace must have Persistence turned "on."

Product - For every point in the waveform, the value of Source1 is multiplied by the value of Source 2. Source1 and Source2 must have the same horizontal units and scale.

Ptrace mean - Plots the mean value of each sample point in a persistence map. The source trace must have Persistence turned "on."

Ptrace range - Generates a waveform with a width derived from the population range of a persistence map. The source trace must have Persistence turned "on."

Ptrace sigma - Generates a waveform with a width derived from the sigma (sum) of a persistence map. The source trace must have Persistence turned "on."

Ratio - For every point in the waveform, divides the value of Source1 by the value of Source2. Source1 and Source2 must have the same horizontal units and scale.

Reciprocal - For every point in the waveform, calculates the inverse using the formula: $1 / (\text{sample value})$.

Rescale - For every point in the waveform, multiplies the sample value by the specified Multiplier, then adds the specified Additive Constant value. See [Rescale Function](#).

Roof - Calculates the highest vertical value at each sample point for a specified number of sweeps.

Segment - Selects one segment [#] from a segmented waveform and copies it into the function, enabling it to be rescaled independent of the source trace.

Sinx/x - Performs 10-to-1 interpolation using a $\text{Sin}(x)/x$ filter.

Sparse - "Thins" (decimates) an incoming acquisition by dropping sample points at regular intervals. Sparsing Factor specifies the *N*th sample point in sequence to retain (e.g., factor of 4 drops 3 points and retains the 4th). Sparsing Offset specifies the point at which to begin the sparsing count (e.g., offset of 3 begins count on the 3rd sample point).

Square - For every point in the waveform, calculates the square of the sample value.

Square Root - For every point in the waveform, calculates the square root of the sample value.

Sum - For every point in the waveform, adds the value of Source1 to the value of Source 2. Source1 and Source2 must have the same horizontal and vertical units and scale.

Track - Generates a waveform composed of measurement parameter values that are time synchronous with the source waveform. The vertical units are those of the source parameter value; the horizontal units are seconds. Values are posted at the sampling rate.

Trend - Produces a waveform composed of a series of measurement parameter values in the order the measurements were taken. The vertical units are those of the source parameter; the horizontal unit is measurement number. The trend contains a single value for each unique measurement.

Zoom - Produces a magnified trace of a selected portion of the input waveform. See [Zooming Traces](#).

Custom Math Operators

These "operators" enable you to insert a custom script into the oscilloscope process and view the resulting waveform in real time.

Excel math - Custom math performed in Excel. The operator will transfer one or two waveforms (as a series of time-value pairs) into an Excel spreadsheet and display the resulting waveform.

Fast Wave Port - Provides memory mapped C++ file access for custom math calculations.

Math script - Visual Basic or Java script that produces a waveform from one or two input waveforms.

Mathcad math - Produces a waveform using a custom Mathcad function.

MATLAB math - Produces a waveform using a custom MATLAB function. You may write a MATLAB script on the oscilloscope, or call a pre-existing MATLAB function into a script. MATLAB can run locally on the oscilloscope, or remotely on a host that is accessible to the oscilloscope. See the [MAUI Oscilloscopes Remote Control and Automation Manual](#) for instructions on connecting to MATLAB remotely.

Average Function

The summed or continuous average of all data samples from multiple acquisitions can be displayed as a new waveform trace using the Average function.

Setting Up an Average Function

1. Follow the usual steps to [set up a math function](#), selecting **Average** from the **Basic Math** submenu.
2. On the **Average** subdialog, choose **Summed** or **Continuous**.
3. Touch **Sweeps** and provide the number of sweeps to average.

Summed Averaging

Summed Averaging is the repeated addition, with equal weight, of successive source waveform records. If a stable trigger is available, the resulting average has a random noise component lower than that of a single-shot record. Whenever the maximum number of sweeps is reached, the averaging process stops. In Summed averaging, you specify the number of acquisitions to be averaged. The averaged data is updated at regular intervals.

An even larger number of records can be accumulated simply by changing the number in the dialog. However, the other parameters must be left unchanged or a new averaging calculation will be started. You can pause averaging by changing the trigger mode to Stop. The instrument resumes averaging when you resume the trigger.

You can reset the accumulated average by pushing the Clear Sweeps button or by changing an acquisition parameter such as input gain, offset, coupling, trigger condition, timebase, or bandwidth limit. The number of current averaged waveforms of the function, or its zoom, is shown in the acquisition status dialog. When summed averaging is performed, the display is refreshed at a reduced rate to increase the averaging speed (points/events per second).

Continuous Averaging

Continuous Averaging, the default setting, is the repeated addition, with unequal weight, of successive source waveforms. It is particularly useful for reducing noise on signals that drift very slowly in time or amplitude. The most recently acquired waveform has more weight than all the previously acquired ones: the continuous average is dominated by the statistical fluctuations of the most recently acquired waveform. The weight of 'old' waveforms tends to zero (following an exponential rule) as the number of new waveforms increases.

You determine the importance of new data vs. old data by assigning a weighting factor. The formula for continuous averaging is: **new average = (new data + weight * old average)/(weight + 1)**

By setting a **Sweeps** value, you establish a fixed weight that is assigned to the old average once the number of sweeps is reached. For example, for a sweeps (weight) value of **4**:

Sweep	New Average =
1 (no old average yet)	$(\text{new data} + 0 * \text{old average}) / (0 + 1) = \text{new data only}$
2	$(\text{new data} + 1 * \text{old average}) / (1 + 1) = 1/2 \text{ new data} + 1/2 \text{ old average}$
3	$(\text{new data} + 2 * \text{old average}) / (2 + 1) = 1/3 \text{ new data} + 2/3 \text{ old average}$
4	$(\text{new data} + 3 * \text{old average}) / (3 + 1) = 1/4 \text{ new data} + 3/4 \text{ old average}$
5	$(\text{new data} + 4 * \text{old average}) / (4 + 1) = 1/5 \text{ new data} + 4/5 \text{ old average}$
6	$(\text{new data} + 4 * \text{old average}) / (4 + 1) = 1/5 \text{ new data} + 4/5 \text{ old average, Etc.}$



Note: The number of sweeps averaged is displayed at the bottom of the trace descriptor box.

Copy Function

The **Copy** math function saves a copy of your present waveform in its unprocessed state to the first available memory location. The memory enables faster throughput, in some cases, by preserving the original data, while math and measure processing continues on the original waveform. This benefit of faster throughput, however, comes at the expense of memory usage.

Follow the usual steps to [set up a math function](#), selecting **Copy** from the **Misc** submenu.

On the Wform Copy subdialog, optionally **Reset Count** or **Change BatchSize**.

ERes Function

ERes (Enhanced Resolution) filtering increases vertical resolution, allowing you to distinguish closely spaced voltage levels. The instrument's ERes function is similar to smoothing the signal with a simple, moving-average filter, but is more efficient concerning bandwidth and pass-band filtering. Use ERes:

- On single acquisitions or where the data is slowly repetitive (and you cannot use averaging).
- To reduce noise on noticeably noisy signals when you do not need to perform noise measurements.
- As a low-pass filter. The ERes filter rejects high-frequency components from the signal. The higher the bit enhancement, the lower the resulting bandwidth.
- When performing high-precision voltage measurements (e.g., zooming with high vertical gain).

Setting Up an ERes Function

1. Follow the usual steps to [set up a math function](#), selecting **Eres** from the **Filter** submenu.
2. Touch the **Trace On** checkbox.
3. On the **Eres** subdialog, select the number of **bits** of improvement from the pop-up menu.



Tip: To quickly set up ERes as a pre-processing function, access the channel setup dialog (Cn) and select a **Noise Filter (ERes)** bit size.

How ERes Is Applied

The instrument's ERes feature improves vertical resolution by a fixed amount for each filter. This real increase in resolution occurs whether or not the signal is noisy, or whether it is single-shot or repetitive. The signal-to-noise ratio (SNR) improvement depends on the form of the noise in the original signal. ERes filtering decreases the bandwidth of the signal, filtering out some of the noise.

The instrument's constant phase finite impulse response (FIR) filters provide fast computation, excellent step response in 0.5 bit steps, and minimum bandwidth reduction for resolution improvements of between 0.5 and 3 bits. Each step corresponds to a bandwidth reduction factor of two, allowing easy control of the bandwidth resolution trade-off.

Resolution Increase	-3 dB Bandwidth (x Nyquist)	Filter Length (Samples)
0.5	0.5	2
1.0	0.241	5
1.5	0.121	10
2.0	0.058	24
2.5	0.029	51
3.0	0.016	117

With low-pass filters, the actual SNR increase obtained in any particular situation depends on the power spectral density of the noise on the signal.

The improvement in SNR corresponds to the improvement in resolution if the noise in the signal is white (evenly distributed across the frequency spectrum). If the noise power is biased towards high frequencies, the SNR improvement will be better than the resolution improvement.

The opposite may be true if the noise is mostly at lower frequencies. SNR improvement due to the removal of coherent noise signals—feed-through of clock signals, for example—is determined by the fall of the dominant frequency components of the signal in the passband. This is easily ascertained using spectral analysis. The filters have a precisely constant zero-phase response. This has two benefits. First, the filters do not distort the relative position of different events in the waveform, even if the events' frequency content is different. Second, because the waveforms are stored, the delay normally associated with filtering (between the input and output waveforms) can be exactly compensated during the computation of the filtered waveform.

The filters have been given exact unity gain at low frequency. ERes should therefore not cause overflow if the source data is not overflowed. If part of the source trace were to overflow, filtering would be allowed, but the results in the vicinity of the overflowed data—the filter impulse response length—would be incorrect. This is because in some circumstances an overflow may be a spike of only one or two samples, and the energy in this spike may not be enough to significantly affect the results. It would then be undesirable to disallow the whole trace.



Note: While ERes improves the resolution of a trace, it cannot improve the accuracy or linearity of the original quantization. The pass-band causes signal attenuation for signals near the cut-off frequency. The highest frequencies passed may be slightly attenuated. Perform the filtering on finite record lengths. Data is lost at the start and end of the waveform and the trace ends up slightly shorter after filtering. The number of samples lost is exactly equal to the length of the impulse response of the filter used: between 2 and 117 samples. Normally this loss (just 0.2 % of a 50,000 point trace) is not noticed. However, you might filter a record so short that no data is output. In that case, however, the instrument would not allow you to use the ERes feature.

Fast Wave Port Function

Fast Wave Port is an Advanced Customization (XDEV) function of Teledyne LeCroy X-Stream oscilloscopes that enables you to insert a custom algorithm written in the C/C++ language into the oscilloscope's processing stream as a Math function (Fn). It helps to maximize data throughput from the acquisition system to your custom algorithm for purposes of debugging or external processing. Custom algorithms can be written right on the oscilloscope using the Script Editor.

Because two Windows system processes may share a single region of memory, Fast Wave Port enables high-speed data transfer between the acquisition system and the custom algorithm, which runs in a separate process from the oscilloscope application. A major benefit of Fast Wave Port is that your algorithm may be implemented and, more importantly, debugged independently of the main application.

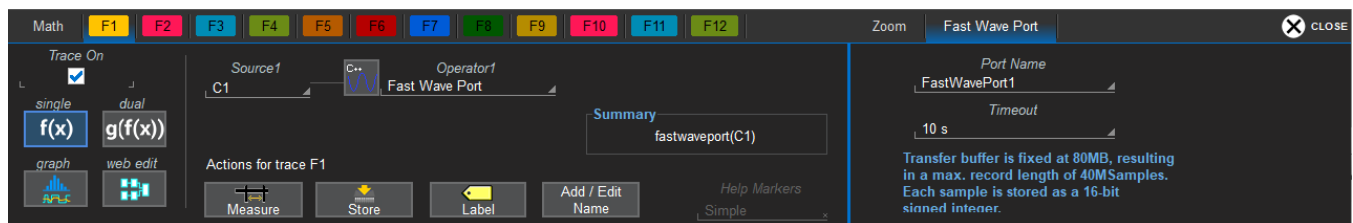
Transferring the results of your algorithm back into the MAUI processing stream is optional. If performance is the primary goal, and further processing or display of the results within the MAUI application is not required, this step may be skipped.

Fast Wave Port was designed for use with the C/C++ programming language. However, it is theoretically possible for the processing to be implemented in any language supporting Windows named events (Mutex) that can open a named memory-mapped file. We do not guarantee the behavior of the function using anything but C/C++.

The size of the memory window is fixed at 80 MB, equating to 40 MS.

Setting Up Fast Wave Port

To use Fast Wave Port, follow the usual steps to set up a math function, selecting **Fast Wave Port** as the Operator, then make the appropriate settings on the **Fast Wave Port** subdialog.



The **Port Name** is critical, indicating the base name of the memory window and the global objects within the Windows O/S. Only change the default value if using multiple Fast Wave Port functions in parallel.



Note: The base name used in the client application must match that configured for the MAUI Automation CVAR `app.Math.Fn.Operator1.Setup.PortName`.

The full names of the default global objects are as follows:

Object	Full Name
Memory Mapped File	FastWavePort1File
Data Available Event	FastWavePort1MutexDataAvailable
Processing Complete Event	FastWavePort1MutexProcessingComplete

The **Timeout** control specifies the amount of time the DSO waits for the custom processing function to complete. This prevents the DSO from waiting indefinitely for a custom processing function which may never arrive. Be careful to set this control to a reasonable value, meaning a time longer by a reasonable margin than the custom processing is ever expected to take.

Example Fast Wave Port Application

This simple C++ application may be used as a starting point for a custom algorithm. It demonstrates how to:

- Create handles to the global objects (the memory window and the two events)
- Read data from the memory window when the DSO flags it as available
- Scale the data into units of volts using data in the header stored at the beginning of the memory window.
- Perform a simple processing function (in this case the absolute value)
- Define the physical units of the output of the processing function (in this case Amps)
- Flag the X-Stream application that processing is complete

```
//-----
// FastWavePortClient.cpp :
//
// Prototype C++ client application for "FastWavePort" Math Processor
//
// Compatibility:
// Microsoft Visual C++ 6.0, 7.1
// MinGW 'gcc' based compiler (free download from www.mingw.org/)
// Compile with: mingw32-c++ -o fastWavePortClient.exe fastwaveportclient.cpp
//-----
#include "windows.h"
#include <stdio.h>
//-----
// FastWavePort header, describes various properties of the waveform passed to the user-processing
// function. Also used to carry the properties of the processed waveform back to the DSO.
//
#define FLAGS_OUTPUT_VALID 0x01
```

```
typedef unsigned __int64 lecTimeStamp;

lecTimeStamp lecTimeStampOneSecond = 1000000000; // 1 ns units in a second

#pragma pack(push, 4) // pack on 4-byte boundaries (Important!)

struct CDescHeader
{
    int descVersion; // header version number

    int flags; // misc. flags indicating the status of input, and how to treat the output

    int headerSize; // size of the header, data starts immediately after the hdr.

    int windowSize; // total size of the window (header + data)

    int numSamples; // total number of samples in the input waveform

    int segmentIndex; // index of this segment, usually zero when input waveform is not a sequence

    int numSweeps;

    int _dummy1; // not used

    double verGain; // scale factor that relates integer sample data values to the vertical units of the waveform.

    double verOffset; // vertical offset (in vertical units, e.g. Volts) of the waveform

    double verResolution; // vertical resolution of the measurement system (also in vertical units)

    double horInterval; // scale factor that relates integer sample indices to the horizontal units of the waveform.

    double horOffset; // horizontal offset (in horizontal units, e.g. seconds) of the waveform

    double horResolution; // horizontal resolution of the measurement system (also in horizontal units)

    lecTimeStamp trigTime; // trigger time, units of 1 ns since 00:00:00 on Jan 1st 2000, 64-bit unsigned integer

    char verUnit[48]; // vertical units of the waveform ("V" for example)

    char horUnit[48]; // horizontal units of the waveform ("s" for example)
};

#pragma pack(pop) // restore packing

//-----

// The buffer size is 80MB (40,000,000 samples, stored as short integers) plus 0x1000 bytes for the header.

const unsigned long HEADER_SIZE = 0x1000

const unsigned long MEM_MAP_FILE_SIZE = 80000000 + HEADER_SIZE; // = 40MSamples, or 80MBytes

int main(int argc, char* argv[])
{
```

```
// names based on 'FastWavePort1' name defined in Processor setup.
char szMapFileName[] = "FastWavePort1File";
char szMutexDataAvailableName[] = "FastWavePort1MutexDataAvailable";
char szMutexProcessingCompleteName[] = "FastWavePort1MutexProcessingComplete";

// Associate shared memory file handle value.
HANDLE m_hMMFile = CreateFileMapping ((HANDLE)0xffffffff, NULL, PAGE_READWRITE, 0, MEM_MAP_FILE_
SIZE, szMapFileName);

if(m_hMMFile == 0)
{
printf("Unable to create file mapping\n");
return 0;
}

// Map a view of this file for writing.
short *m_lpMMFile = (short *)MapViewOfFile (m_hMMFile, FILE_MAP_ALL_ACCESS, 0, 0, 0);
if(m_lpMMFile == 0)
{
printf("Unable to map view of file\n");
return 0;
}

// create/open events used for synchronization

// if the client app. was run before the oscilloscope then these events will be created, if the oscilloscope was run
first then these events

// will just be opened
HANDLE m_hDataAvailable = CreateEvent(NULL, FALSE, FALSE /* initial state */, szMutexDataAvailableName);
HANDLE m_hProcessingComplete = CreateEvent(NULL, FALSE, FALSE /* initial state */,
szMutexProcessingCompleteName);

if(m_hDataAvailable == 0 || m_hProcessingComplete == 0)
{
printf("Unable to open events\n");
return 0;
}

// main loop
```

```
while(1)
{
    int i = 0;

    printf("Waiting for new data...\n");

    // wait an infinite amount of time for data to be available
    DWORD waitSuccess = WaitForSingleObject(m_hDataAvailable, INFINITE);

    // print the first few bytes of the input waveform
    CDescHeader *descHeader = (CDescHeader *) &m_lpMMFile[0];

    short *m_lpWaveform = &m_lpMMFile[descHeader->headerSize / sizeof(short)];

    for(i = 0; i < 4; ++i)

        printf("%f ", (m_lpWaveform[i] * descHeader->verGain) + descHeader->verOffset);

    // compute the mean of all data values, while computing the abs value of the waveform in-place
    double sum = 0.0;

    for(i = 0; i < descHeader->numSamples; ++i)
    {
        sum += (m_lpWaveform[i] * descHeader->verGain) + descHeader->verOffset;
        m_lpWaveform[i] = abs(m_lpWaveform[i]);
    }

    sum /= descHeader->numSamples;

    // modify the output units, set to Amps
    strcpy(descHeader->verUnit, "A");

    // print the mean, number of samples, trigger time in seconds, and the segment index
    printf(" (%f) %d %d %d\n", sum, descHeader->numSamples, (int) (descHeader->trigTime /
    lecTimeStampOneSecond), descHeader->segmentIndex);

    // use to flag that the output is not valid, increasing performance when
    // it is not necessary to read data back into the DSO
    //descHeader->flags &= ~FLAGS_OUTPUT_VALID;

    // flag that processing is complete
    SetEvent(m_hProcessingComplete);
}

return 0;
}
```


Header Description

```
int descVersion; // header version number

int flags; // misc. flags indicating the status of input, and how to treat the output

int headerSize; // size of the header, data starts immediately after the hdr.

int windowSize; // total size of the window (header + data)

int numSamples; // total number of samples in the input waveform

int segmentIndex; // index of this segment, usually zero when input waveform is not a sequence

int numSweeps;

int _dummy1; // not used

double verGain; // scale factor that relates integer sample data values to the vertical units of the waveform.

double verOffset; // vertical offset (in vertical units, e.g. Volts) of the waveform

double verResolution; // vertical resolution of the measurement system (also in vertical units)

double horInterval; // scale factor that relates integer sample indices to the horizontal units of the waveform.

double horOffset; // horizontal offset (in horizontal units, e.g. seconds) of the waveform

double horResolution; // horizontal resolution of the measurement system (also in horizontal units)

lecTimeStamp trigTime; // trigger time, units of 1ns since 00:00:00 on Jan 1st 2000, 64-bit unsigned integer

char verUnit[48]; // vertical units of the waveform ("V" for example)

char horUnit[48]; // horizontal units of the waveform ("s" for example)
```

Fast MultiWave Port

Based on the [Fast Wave Port](#) math function, Fast MultiWave Port allows a client Windows C/C++ application to access oscilloscope data via the shared memory and process it in a separate stream from the oscilloscope application. If desired, the results of the external process may be returned to the oscilloscope application as multiple parameter values (Pn) or math function waveforms (Fn).

Fast MultiWave Port supports:

- Up-to-four waveform and two parameter inputs
- Up-to-eight parameter and four waveform outputs
- Batching an entire sequence of waveforms prior to the exchange between applications
- Client control of how much named memory is mapped and for which named memory spaces, as opposed to the fixed 80 MB limit for Fast Wave Port
- Support for multiple waveform segments and multi-valued parameters at each output pin (when used in the Web Editor)

Requirements

- Fast MultiWave Port is enabled by the DDA and XDEV options.
- A development environment (like MSDEV) is required to develop the client application. Any language that will support a deterministic memory layout may be used. C and C++ are one such choice. For example client application code, see [LAB WM785 - FastMultiWavePort: A new processor for the LeCroy XStream Scopes](#).

Setting Up Fast MultiWave Port

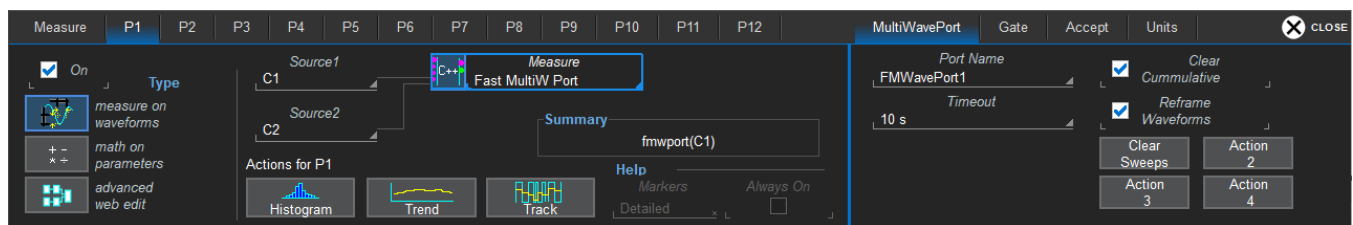
The client application is "linked" to the oscilloscope application via a custom parameter (Pn) configured with the **Fast MultiWave Port** processor.



Note: The Fast MultiWave Port processor is always added as a custom measurement, even if the final output is a waveform.

Single Parameter

If the client application inputs two or fewer waveforms and returns only one parameter (or none), Fast MultiWave Port may be invoked from the user-defined ("MyMeasure") measurement setup dialogs.



On the MultiWavePort subdialog, enter the **Port Name** of the Fast MultiWave Port processor in your client application, if changed from the default FMWavePort1. The base name must match that configured for the Automation CVAR `app.Measure.Pn.Operator.PortName`.

Optionally:

- Enter a **Timeout** at the end of which to return control to the oscilloscope application if the client has not indicated processing is complete.
- Select **Clear Cumulative** to Clear Sweeps automatically before each acquisition. This will reset parameter statistics to only the results of the last acquisition.
- Select **Reframe Waveforms** to check after each acquisition for the value range of waveforms and reframe (rescale) the signal so that it fits vertically into a grid. Otherwise, calculated waveforms may be clipped if the resolution is too high to fit the signal into the full scale range.
- Select **Clear Sweeps** to reset all measurement counters while the process is running.

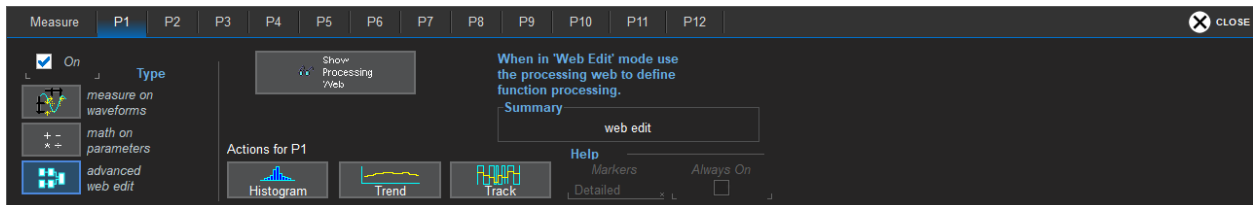
Action 2 through Action 4 are reserved for future use.

Multi-Parameter & Waveform Processing Web

To import multiple waveforms and parameters from MAUI, or to return multiple parameters and waveforms to MAUI from the client application, you must add the Fast MultiWave Port processor to a processing web from within the Web Editor.

1. For each math function and parameter that will receive an output from the client application, choose Type **web edit/advanced web edit**. This will add them to the processing web as output terminals.

If you do not wish to return anything to MAUI, it is sufficient to set it for one parameter slot.



2. Click **Show Processing Web** on any setup dialog when you are ready to edit.
3. In the Web Editor, click **+ Meas.** and choose **Fast MultiWave Port** from the Custom submenu.
4. Connect the oscilloscope data used by the client application to the Fast MultiWavePort node inputs. You may input up-to-four waveforms (Inn) selected from the oscilloscope's channels, math functions, memories or zoom traces, and two parameters (Pin).
5. Connect the outputs of the Fast MultiWave Port processor to the appropriate terminal blocks:
 - To output a waveform, connect a waveform (Wfn) to an Fn terminal.
 - To output a measurement, connect a parameter (Pmn) to a Pn terminal.
 - To change units or rescale the measurement as it is returned to MAUI, connect the output parameter to an intermediate **+ PMath** node configured with **P Rescale**.



Note: Outputs may be used as intermediate inputs to other processing nodes in the web, rather than directly connected to any terminal blocks. Alternatively, you may omit connecting any outputs to processors or terminals, in which case the Fast MultiWave Port processor will simply port the oscilloscope data to your client application.

Processing: || ▶

File Vertical Timebase Trigger Display Cursors Measure Math Analysis Utilities Support

C1 C2 C3 C4 F1 F2 F3 F4 F5 F6 F7 F8 F9 F10 F11 F12 P1 P2 P3 P4 P5 P6 P7

In1 In2 In3 In4 Pt1 Pt2 Pm1 Pm2 Pm3 Pm4 Pm5 Pm6 Pm7 Pm8 W11 W12 W13 W14

In In2 + Out

In y=ax+b Out

P1 P2

Web Editor Math Measure Sum CLOSE

Add Processing Nodes

+ Math Add new math component to the processing web

+ Meas. Add new measurement to the processing web

+ PMath Add new parameter math to the processing web

Add Preview Previewed nodes appear only in the Web Editor.

Delete

Arithmetic waveform processing requires that the two input waveforms have the same horizontal units and scale per division. For addition and subtraction, there is a further requirement that vertical units be identical.

Client Programming Considerations

The program ID is: LeCroy.FastMultiWavePort.1

A waveform descriptor is supplied in the **MultiWavePort.h** header file. There is also a “mini-descriptor” block which contains incremental information to characterize each additional waveform data block.

Likewise, a descriptor header has been provided for parameter results, and a protocol for supplying parameter values.

The client application creates the named memory spaces which are used to communicate between the client and MAUI processes. The base name of the mapped memory is specified in the MAUI Automation control variable **app.Measure.Pn.Operator.PortName** and by default is “FMWavePort1”.

The named spaces are:

- FMWavePort1FileInn—Input/output waveforms; “n” equals 1 to 4
- FMWavePort1FileOutn—Output parameters; “n” equals 1 to 8



Note: The base name for these named memory spaces will need to change from the 1-based name if you want to have two processors of this kind active at the same time.

Once the client application creates whatever named spaces it wishes to use, the oscilloscope processor “opens” them if they’re present, also learning their size from data structures initialized there by the client application.

Context switching between the two processes sharing the memory has an associated cost of around 30 to 50 μ S, so an overall exchange costs between 60 and 100 μ S. This overhead is minimized by handling multiple waveform acquisition in a “per-batch” or per sequence fashion.

There are up-to-four data structures that communicate the state of the input waveforms to the client application, and similar structures for the parameter descriptor and parameter values. These are described in the header file.

Each of the parameter blocks is invalidated every time the control is passed to the client application. If you do not explicitly validate them each time the client application updates, the result will not be passed forward. This is one way to omit returning parameter results to the oscilloscope application when using Fast MultiWave Port solely to access oscilloscope data.

There are two named “mutex”es used to implement a mutual exclusion scenario for shared access to the memory resource.

- FMWavePort1MutexDataAvailable—Signal from the oscilloscope that data is “available” to the client application.
- FMWavePort1MutexProcessingComplete—Signal from the client application indicating the external processing has been completed.

The two processes access the named memory as shared memory in a mutual-exclusion scenario.

FFT Function

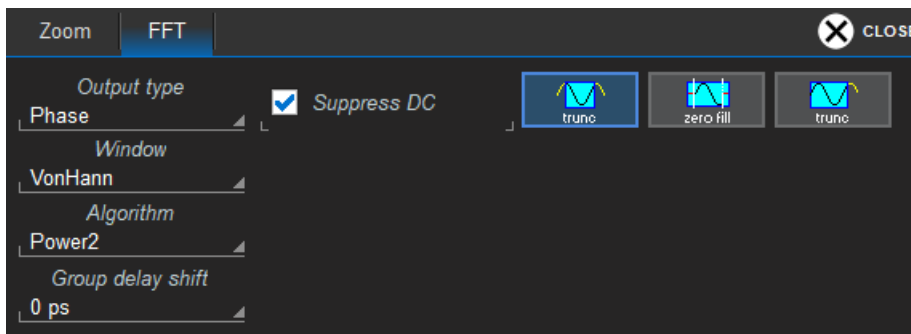
For a large class of signals, you can gain greater insight by looking at spectral representation rather than time description. Signals encountered in the frequency response of amplifiers, oscillator phase noise and mechanical vibration analysis, for example, are easier to observe in the frequency domain.

If sampling is done at a rate fast enough to faithfully approximate the original waveform (usually five times the highest frequency component in the signal), the resulting discrete data series will uniquely describe the analog signal. This is of particular value when dealing with transient signals, which conventional swept spectrum analyzers cannot handle.

While FFT has become a popular analysis tool, some care must be taken with it. In most instances, incorrect positioning of the signal within the display grid will significantly alter the spectrum, producing effects such as leakage and aliasing that distort the spectrum. An effective way to reduce these effects is to maximize the acquisition record length. Record length directly controls the effective sampling rate and therefore determines the frequency resolution and span at which spectral analysis can be carried out.

Setting Up an FFT Function

1. Follow the usual steps to [set up a math function](#), selecting **FFT** from the **Frequency Analysis** submenu.
2. Open the **FFT** subdialog.



3. Choose an **Output type**:
 - **Magnitude** is the amplitude output in linear units. This reads the peak value of a sine at each frequency. This trace is useful as an input to math operations like adding and subtracting spectra.



Note: A Magnitude spectrum will normally display the input source unit on the vertical axis.

- **Phase**
 - **Power Spectrum** is the square of the magnitude spectrum (0 dBm corresponds to voltage equivalent of 1 mW into 50 ohms). This is the representation of choice for signals containing isolated peaks, such as periodic signals. It is a good general purpose view offering wide dynamic range so that you can see small spectral details.
4. If your Output Type is Power Spectrum, also enter **Line Impedance**. By default, the FFT function assumes a termination of 50 Ohms. If an external terminator is being used, this setting can be changed to properly calculate the FFT based on the new termination value.

If your Output type is Phase, enter a **Group Delay Shift** value.

5. Check the **Suppress DC** box to make the DC bin go to zero. Otherwise, leave it unchecked.
6. Optionally, choose a weighting **Window** (see below).
7. Choose the **Algorithm** used to calculate the spectrum:
 - **Least Prime**, the default algorithm, computes FFTs on transform sizes having lengths that can be expressed as factors of $2N \times 5K$. This is very compatible with the record lengths encountered in the oscilloscope, which are often multiples of 1, 2, 4, 5, or 10. Remaining points are discarded based on your truncation selection.
 - **Power (of) 2** computes the FFT on 2^N points of the source record. For example, if you acquired 2 Gpts in your source trace, the FFT would use only 1,073,741,824 points, discarding the remainder based on your truncation selection. The Power of 2 algorithm generally runs faster than the Least Primes algorithm. The price paid is a transform record length that is not the same as that of the acquired signal.
8. When the FFT transform size does not match the record length, you can choose how to truncate the record to perform an FFT on the shorter record (this will increase the resolution bandwidth), or add points to lengthen the record.
 - The first **trunc(ate)** button keeps the center number of points equal to the transform length and discards any excess at the beginning and end.
 - **zero fill** is useful when the source data for the FFT comes from a math operation that shortens the record. This is commonly encountered in filtering operations like enhanced resolution. The missing data points are replaced by data values, whose amplitudes are interpolated to fit between the last data point and the first data point in the record. This guarantees that there is not a first-order discontinuity in the filled data. Since the data at the end of the record is "filled" data, it is advisable to select a weighting window other than rectangular to minimize the effect of the fill on the resulting spectrum.
 - The second **trunc(ate)** button keeps the first number of points equal to the transform length and discards any excess at the end of the record.

Choosing a Window

If you think of an FFT as synthesizing a bank of parallel band-pass filters, weighting functions control the filter response shape and affect noise bandwidth as well as side lobe levels. The window type defines the bandwidth and shape of the equivalent filter to be used in the FFT processing.

The choice of window is dictated by the signal's characteristics. Rectangular windows provide the highest frequency resolution and are useful for estimating the type of harmonics present in the signal. Because the rectangular window decays as a $(\sin X)/X$ function in the spectral domain, slight attenuation will be induced. Functions with less attenuation (Flat Top and Blackman-Harris) provide maximum amplitude at the expense of frequency resolution, whereas Hamming and Von Hann are good for general purpose use with continuous waveforms.

Window Type	Applications and Limitations
Rectangular	Normally used when the signal is transient (completely contained in the time-domain window) or known to have a fundamental frequency component that is an integer multiple of the fundamental frequency of the window. Signals other than these types will show varying amounts of spectral leakage and scallop loss, which can be corrected by selecting another type of window.
Hanning (Von Hann) & Hamming	Reduces leakage and improves amplitude accuracy. However, frequency resolution is also reduced.
Flat Top	Provides excellent amplitude accuracy with moderate reduction of leakage, but with reduced frequency resolution.

Window Type	Applications and Limitations
Blackman-Harris	Reduces leakage to a minimum, but with reduced frequency resolution.
Gaussian	

FFT Window Filter Parameters				
Window Type	Highest Side Lobe (dB)	Scallop Loss (dB)	ENBW (bins)	Coherent Gain (dB)
Rectangular	-13	3.92	1.0	0.0
Von Hann	-32	1.42	1.5	-6.02
Hamming	-43	1.78	1.37	-5.35
Flat Top	-44	0.01	3.43	-11.05
Blackman-Harris	-67	1.13	1.71	-7.53
Gaussian				

Interpolate Function

The Interpolate operator enables you to generate a trace that interpolates data points into the source trace according to your selected method and upsampling factor.

Linear interpolation, which inserts a straight line between sample points, is best used to reconstruct straight-edged signals such as square waves. This is the default interpolation method used by the oscilloscope.

(SinX)/X interpolation, on the other hand, is suitable for reconstructing curved or irregular waveshapes, especially when the sampling rate is 3 to 5 times the system bandwidth.

Cubic interpolation can be used to create a smooth, continuous function by applying a third-degree polynomial.

For each method, you can select an upsample factor of 2 to 50 points to insert between samples.

1. Follow the usual steps to [set up a math function](#), selecting **Interpolate** from the **Filter** submenu.
2. Select an interpolation method.
3. Enter the **Upsample by** number of points.



Tip: You can use the Up and Down buttons to set this value. To make single increment changes, deselect the "Only by 2, 5..." checkbox.

4. In **Half Width** enter the width in taps of the filter.
5. To use a weighting function rather than an upsample factor, select it from **Weighting**. See [FFT](#) for more information about these functions. If using the Kaiser function, also enter the **Beta** value.

Phistogram Function

The Phistogram Math function creates a histogram of the samples within a vertical or horizontal "slice" of a persistence map to reveal the features that are only visible when several acquisitions have been superimposed on one another. Vertically, each bin contains a class of similar amplitude levels; horizontally, each bin contains a class of similar time values.

The source trace must have [Persistence](#) "on" to generate the persistence map. Eye diagrams, which are a type of persistence map, are an especially useful class of traces to which you can apply the Phistogram function.

1. Follow the usual steps to set up a math function, choosing a **Single** operator function using the **Phistogram** operator.
2. On the **Phistogram** subdialog, choose the slice of the persistence map to histogram:
 - **Slice Direction** determines whether the slice transverses an entire vertical level of the map across time (horizontal), or a time on in the map across vertical values (vertical).

For a histogram of...	Use...
A crossover point in time or amplitude on an eye diagram *	Vertical and horizontal slice persistence histogram
Cumulative jitter on an eye diagram *	Horizontal slice persistence histogram
Signal-to-noise ratio on an eye diagram *	Vertical slice persistence histogram

* Requires optional software package capable of creating eye diagrams, such as SDAIII or Serial Decoder TDME software.

- **Slice Center** represents the center level or time of the slice.
- **Slice Width** represents the total amplitude or total time of the slice, half each side of the center. This setting will deepen or widen the total area of the slice of values to be plotted on the histogram. If Help Markers are on, you will see the change in the blue bar representing the slice.



Note: This selection does not affect Center and Width settings made on any existing histograms.

3. Choose **Center Cursor** to place a measurement cursor at the center of the slice.

Ptrace Functions

The Ptrace Mean, Ptrace Range, and Ptrace Sigma math functions (found in the Jitter Functions sub-menu of the Math Operator selector) compute a vector trace based on a persistence map of underlying signal acquisitions without destroying the underlying raw data. Signals sampled at or above 2 GS/s that have accumulated in the persistence map can be traced at a resolution of 10 ps (100 GS/s equivalent sampling). Further measurements or Pass/Fail testing can be performed on the resulting math traces.

The source trace must have [Persistence](#) "on" to generate the persistence map used by each of these functions.

Ptrace Mean

The Ptrace Mean trace helps to see edge detail in a fast signal, or to eliminate noise on a persistence map.

For each time slice of the persistence map, Ptrace Mean calculates and plots a trace corresponding to the mean vertical value. The Ptrace Mean can be further analyzed using the instrument's standard parameters, such as rise time. Optionally, choose to limit the **Num(ber of) Points** plotted.

Ptrace Range

The Ptrace Range trace helps to assess typical noise on a persistence map.

For each time slice on the persistence map, Ptrace Range calculates and plots an envelope corresponding to the range of vertical values.

Enter the **% population range**, the percentage of the population of the persistence map that forms the envelope, enabling exclusion of infrequent events (artifacts). Optionally, choose to limit the **Num(ber of) Points** plotted.

Ptrace Sigma

The Ptrace Sigma trace helps to assess worst case noise on a persistence map. It can be used to create a tolerance mask for Pass/Fail testing.

For each time slice on the persistence map, Ptrace Sigma calculates and plots an envelope corresponding to the standard deviation of vertical values.

The envelope can be scaled to a specified sigma. Enter the **Scale to standard deviations**. This allows you to select a sigma from 0.5 to 10.0 to define the envelope of values plotted. Optionally, choose to limit the **Num(ber of) Points** plotted.

Rescale Function

The Rescale function allows you to create a new function trace that rescales another trace by applying a multiplication factor (a) and additive constant (b). You can also use it as a way to view the function source in a different unit of measure.



Tip: Channel and sensor traces may be rescaled directly using the *Cn* and *SEn* dialogs.

Setting Up a Rescale Function

1. Follow the usual steps to [set up a math function](#), selecting **Rescale** from the **Functions** submenu.
2. Touch the **Rescale** subdialog tab.
3. To modify the scale of output:
 - Check the **First multiply by:** box and enter the number of units equal to 1 V (a , the multiplication factor).
 - Touch **then add:** and enter b , the additive constant.
4. To change the output unit of measure from that of the source waveform:
 - Check **Override units**.
 - In **Output** enter the code for the new unit of measure.

You can combine units following these rules:

- For the quotient of two units, use the character "/"
- For the product of two units, use the character "."
- For exponents, append the digit to the unit without a space (e.g., "S2" for seconds squared)



Note: Some complex units are automatically converted to simple units. For example, V.A is W).

5. You can further override the output unit by selecting from the **Units** dialog. Only units in the equivalent dimension as the unit of the Rescale function trace are available for selection.

Units of Measure

Units are automatically rescaled up or down within the list of standard, SI prefixes based on the relative size of the signal. For example a 1000 V reading is shown as 1 kV, while .1 V is shown as 100 mV. When the multiplication factor is 1 V = 1 Pascal, a 10 millivolt (mV) reading is displayed as 10 mPa rather than .001 Pa or 100e-3 Pa.

Following are the supported SI units of measure and the mnemonics used to represent them on the Rescale dialog.



Note: These same mnemonics can be used in remote control and customization scripts. Specify only the base unit in code, do not add prefixes.



Note: Time and dimensionless units are available only for certain measurements and for use in code where relevant.

Category	Unit	Mnemonic
Mass	gram	G
	slug	SLUG
Volume	liter	L
	cubic meter	M3
	cubic inch	IN3
	cubic foot	FT3
	cubic yard	YARD3
Angle	radian	RAD
	arcdegree	DEG
	arcminute	MNT
	arcsecond	SEC
	cycle	CYCLE
	revolution	REV
	turn	TURN
Force/Weight	Newton	N
	grain	GR
	ounce	OZ
	pound	LB
Velocity	meters/second	M/S
	inches/second	IN/S
	feet/second	FT/S
	yards/second	YARD/S
	miles/second	MILE/S
Acceleration	meters/second ²	M/S2
	inches/second ²	IN/S2
	feet/second ²	FT/S2
	standard gravity	GN
Pressure	Pascal	PAL
	bar	BAR
	atmosphere, technical	AT
	atmosphere, standard	ATM
	Torr	TORR
	pounds/square inch	PSI
Temperature	degrees Kelvin	K
	degrees Celsius	CEL
	degrees Fahrenheit	FAR
Energy	Joule	J
	British Thermal Unit	BTU
	calorie	CAL

Category	Unit	Mnemonic
Rotating Machine	radians/second	RADPS
	frequency (Hertz)	HZ
	revolutions/second	RPS
	revolutions/minute	RPM
	torque N•m	NM
	torque in•oz	INOZ
	torque in•lb	INLB
	torque ft•lb	FTLB
	power, mechanical (Watt)	W
	horsepower	HP
Magnetic	Weber	WB
	Tesla	T
	inductance (Henry)	H
	magnetic field strength	A/M
	permeability	HENRYPM
Electrical	Ampere	A
	Volt	V
	Watt	W
	power, apparent	VA
	power, reactive	VAR
	power factor	PF
	capacitance (Farad)	F
	Coulomb	C
	Ohm	OHM
	Siemen	SIE
	electrical field strength	V/M
	electrical displacement field	CPM2
	permittivity	FARADPM
	conductivity	SIEPM
Time	second	S
	minute	MIN
	hour	HOUR
	day	DAY
	week	WEEK

Category	Unit	Mnemonic
Dimensionless	percent	PCT
	percent min-max	PCTMNMX
	decibel	DB
	decibel milliwatt	DBM
	decibel Volt	DBV
	decibel millivolt	DBMV
	decibel microvolt	DBUV
	decibel microampere	DBUA
	decibel referred to carrier	DBC
	decade	DECADE
	unit interval	UI
	Q-scale	Q
	bit	BIT
	byte	BYTE
	baud	BAUD
	least significant bit	LSB
	poise	POISE
	parts per million	PPM
	pixel	PIXEL
	division	DIV
	event	EVENT
	sample	SAMPLE
	segment	SEG
	sweep	SWEEP

Sparse Function

The Sparse math function allows you to thin out an incoming waveform by skipping points at regular intervals, and by starting acquisition at a particular offset (point). The **Sparsing factor** specifies the number of sample points to reduce the input waveform by. A sparsing factor of 4, for example, says to retain only one out of every 4 samples. A **Sparsing offset** of 3, on the other hand, says to begin on the third sample, then skip the number of samples specified by the sparsing factor (4). In this way, the sample rate is effectively reduced.

For the sparsing factor (interval), you can set a value from 1 to 1,000,000 points. For the sparsing offset you can set a value from 0 to 999,999.

1. Follow the usual steps to [set up a math function](#), selecting **Sparse** from the **Misc** submenu.
2. Touch the **Sparsing factor** control and provide a Bandwidth Limit value.
3. Touch the **Sparsing offset** control and provide a value.

Memories

The instrument is equipped with internal memory slots (Mn) to which you can copy any waveform that is active on the grid. This is a convenient way to store an acquisition for later viewing and analysis. Memories can be used as source inputs for most oscilloscope math and measurements, allowing you to compare historical data to a live acquisition or perform "what if" modeling on saved acquisitions.



Note: If there is a processing error (e.g., no data) when saving or recalling a memory, a small letter "i" inside a bubble will appear on the Mn descriptor box to indicate there is more information regarding the waveform status. See [Finding Waveform Status](#) for instructions on finding the error.

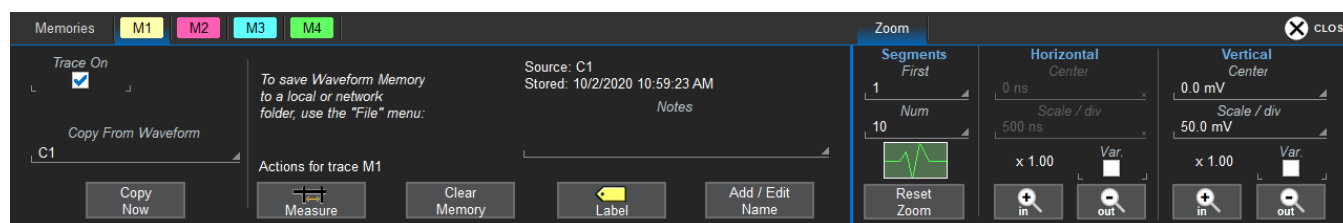
Saving Memories

Store memories on the Memory dialogs (Mn). Memories are created at the same scale as the source trace, but they can be adjusted independently by using the [zoom factor controls](#) that appear next to the Mn dialogs.

Save Waveform to Memory



Tip: Try to choose an empty slot, as anything currently stored in that location will be overwritten. All memories will state if they are empty or an acquisition is stored there.



On oscilloscopes with OneTouch, touch the **Add New box** and choose **Memory**. Drag the descriptor box of the trace you wish to store onto the Mn descriptor box.

Or

1. Press the front panel **Mem** button or choose **Math > Memory Setup**.
2. Touch the **Mn tab** corresponding to the memory slot you wish to use.
3. In **Copy from Waveform**, choose the source trace to copy to memory.
4. Touch **Copy Now**.
5. Optionally, check **Trace On** to immediately display the memory.

Import External Waveform Files into Memory

Trace (.trc) files saved on other Teledyne LeCroy instruments can also be imported into internal memory using the waveform recall feature. Choose **File > Recall Waveform** and to recall the file to an internal memory. Then, you can use the [Memories dialog](#) to place them on the display.


Restoring Memories

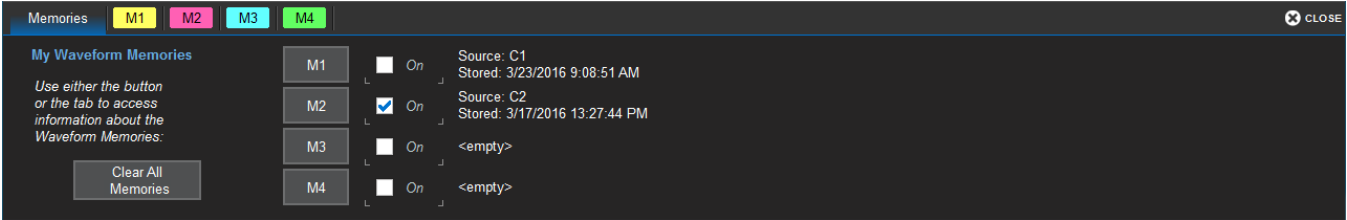
The Memories dialog is a convenient panel for restoring saved memories to the display.

Access the Memories dialog by pressing the front panel **Mem** button or choosing **Math > Memory Setup**.

Check **On** next to the memory trace you wish to display. A description of the memory showing the source channel and creation time appears next to each Mn on the dialog.

Touch **Clear All Memories** to empty the memory banks.

 **Caution:** Memories cannot be restored once they have been erased.



Analysis Tools

Analysis tools complement the standard math/measurements to help you understand the behavior of waveforms.

WaveScan searches single or multiple acquisitions for events that meet specific criteria.

Pass/Fail Testing shows whether waveforms or measurements meet a set of defined criteria.

CustomDSO (XDEV) enables you to insert custom VBScript (VBS) or 3rd-party programs such as Excel™, Mathcad™, and MATLAB™ into the oscilloscope processing stream. It is standard on many high-bandwidth oscilloscopes, optional on others.

Many optional software packages may be purchased for specialized uses, such as power analysis or serial message trigger and decode. In most cases, these options are added to the Analysis menu. Complete documentation for software options can be found at teledynelecroy.com/support/techlib under Manuals > Software Options. In addition, context-sensitive Help for many options available on your platform can be found in the MAUI Support site under the Analysis menu.

WaveScan

The WaveScan® Search and Find tool enables you to search for unusual events in a single capture, or to scan for a particular event in many acquisitions over a long period of time. Each Scan Mode is optimized to find a different type of event. Results are time stamped, tabulated, and can be viewed individually. You customize the presentation by choosing different WaveScan displays, called Scan Views.



Note: The instrument reverts to Real-time sampling mode when WaveScan is enabled.



WaveScan window with different scan "views" turned on.

Scan Modes

The Scan Mode determines the type of search to be performed. Select the **Mode** along with the **Source** trace to be searched on the main WaveScan dialog. For each mode, different controls appear on the WaveScan dialog, providing additional inputs to the search criteria. Make the appropriate entries in these fields before starting the search.

Edge Mode

Edge Mode is used for detecting the occurrence of edges. Events that meet the threshold level are captured and tabulated. When the acquisition is stopped, scan filters can be applied to the edges to find specific characteristics. Edge Mode settings are:

- **Slope.** Choose Pos, Neg, or Both.
- **Level is** (set in...). Choose Percent or Absolute.
- **Percent/Absolute Level.** Enter a threshold value as a percentage of Top to Base or voltage level.

Non-monotonic Mode

Non-monotonic Mode looks for edges that cross a threshold more than once between high and low levels. All events that meet the criteria of slope, hysteresis, and level are presented in a table and highlighted in the source trace. The value displayed in the table is the difference of the max. and min. of the non-monotonicity. This can be confirmed with cursors. The hysteresis value is used to eliminate noise. A non-monotonicity is detected only when its amplitude is greater than the hysteresis. Therefore, when setting a hysteresis level, set a value that is greater than the amplitude of the noise. Settings are:

- **Slope.** Choose Pos, Neg, or Both.
- **Hysteresis is** (set in...). Choose Division, Percent, Absolute.
- **Division/Percent/Absolute.** Enter hysteresis level in the selected unit.
- **Levels are** (set in...). Choose Percent, Absolute, or Pk-Pk%.
- **High/Low Level.** Enter top and bottom thresholds in the selected unit.

Runt Mode

Runt Mode looks for pulses that fail to cross a specified threshold. You can search for positive-going or negative-going runs, or both. An adjustable hysteresis band is provided to eliminate noise.

In the case of negative-going runt pulses, the value displayed in the table is the difference (delta) of the high level of the signal and the runt amplitude (i.e., where the runt bottoms out). This can be confirmed by placing cursors on the runt pulse and reading the delta Y value in the trace labels. In the case of positive-going runt pulses, the value displayed in the table is the absolute value of the amplitude of the runt pulse. Runt Mode settings are:

- **Runt Type.** Choose Both, Pos, or Neg.
- **Hysteresis.** Enter the hysteresis level as a percentage or voltage.
- **Low/High Threshold.** Enter the levels as a percentage or voltage.
- **Absolute Levels.** Check this box to enter levels as absolute voltage instead of percentage.

Measurement Mode

Measurement Mode is used for applying filters to measurements to find those that meet your defined criteria, helping to isolate particular events within many samples. Markers appear over the source trace to indicate the location of measurement, while the table displays values for the selected parameter that meet the criteria.

Measurement Mode settings are:

- **Measurement.** Choose the measurement parameter you wish to search.
- **Filter Method.** Choose the operator that indicates the desired relationship to the Filter Limit. Only measurements that meet this criteria are returned.
- **Filter Limit.** Enter the value that completes the filter criteria.

Alternatively, you can use the **Filter Wizard** to create the filter criteria.

Serial Pattern Mode

Serial Pattern Mode is used for finding 2- to 64-bit patterns in serial data sequences or serial clocks. It is ideal for bursted patterns where a PLL cannot lock. Serial Pattern Mode settings are:

Pattern Time

This is the bit pattern to find.

- **Viewing.** Choose to enter the pattern as Binary or Hex(decimal).
- **Binary/Hex.** Enter the digital pattern to find in either binary or hexadecimal.

For binary patterns, enter the state the line should be in as 1=high, 0=low, X=don't care (not included in pattern), starting from highest to lowest number line.

- **Num. Patterns to detect.** Enter a whole number of pattern locations to mark on the acquisition.

NRZ to Digital

These settings define the serial logic for the bus.

- Check **Data is NRZ** if the data is an NRZ signal.
- Enter the **Base Frequency** of the signal.
- In **Level Type** and **Level**, enter the threshold for logic determination as either a percent amplitude or an absolute voltage.
- Choose the waveform **Slope** used for logic determination.
- Choose if the **Signal Type** being scanned is Data or Clock.

PLL

- If there is any PLL in use on the signal scanned, check **Use PLL**.
- Select the **PLL Type** in use.
- Enter the **PLL Cutoff Divisor** if you are using a Custom PLL. This field normally updates to the standard for the PLL type selected.

Bus Pattern Mode

Bus Pattern Mode (**only on Mixed Signal models**) is used for finding 2- to 16-bit patterns across the digital lines where PLL is not a concern. Bus Pattern Mode settings are:

- **Viewing.** Choose to enter the pattern as Binary or Hex(adecimal).
- **Binary/Hex.** Enter the digital pattern to find in binary or hexadecimal code.

For binary patterns, enter the state the line should be in as 1=high, 0=low, X=not included in pattern, starting from highest to lowest number line. An 8-line bus is assumed. For example, to set the pattern D2=1, D1=0 and D0=1 for 8-line bus D0-D7, you can just enter "101" on the keypad, and the software will complete the full pattern XXXXX101. If you wish to set the pattern on D7, D6 and D5, enter 101XXXXX.

- **Num. Patterns to detect.** Enter a whole number of pattern locations to mark on the acquisition.

Scan Views

Scan Views are different ways to view your WaveScan results. Just check the boxes at the bottom of the WaveScan dialog for those views you wish to display simultaneously.



Note: The number of grids varies depending on which views are enabled. WaveScan handles this function automatically, and you cannot move traces among grids as in normal operation.

Additional controls for Scan Overlay and Zoom views are on their respective dialogs. If you turn on these traces from those dialogs, you must turn them off from there, too.

Source Trace

By default, the source trace is displayed in the top grid, with markers indicating points that meet the search criteria.

Table

Table view displays a table of measurements relevant to your chosen Search Mode next to the source trace. **Times** view adds columns to the table showing Start and Stop Times for each event.

Scan Overlay

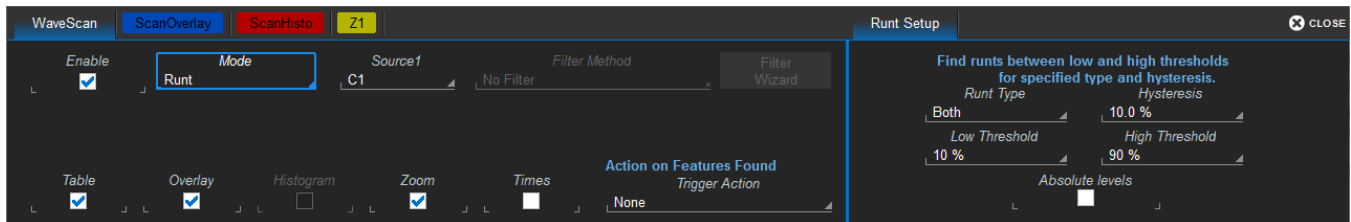
Scan Overlay view uses colored overlays to show the location of events meeting the scan criteria.

Zoom

Zoom view works exactly as it does elsewhere in the oscilloscope software, creating a new trace that is a magnified section of the source trace. A WScanZn tab appears by default when you launch WaveScan.

Setting Up WaveScan

Set up your source channel and triggers before setting up the scan.



1. Press the front panel **Stop button** to stop acquisition.
2. Choose **Analysis > WaveScan** and check **Enable**.
3. Choose the **Source** waveform.
4. Choose the [Scan Mode](#) and enter values for any additional settings that appear at the right of the dialog based on your selection.
5. Select each [Scan View](#) in which you wish to display results by checking the box at the bottom of the dialog. Each view selected is displayed simultaneously.
6. Optionally, choose a **Trigger Action** to take when an event is found that meets your scan criteria.



Tip: Despite the name, these actions occur only when the WaveScan criteria are met, not with every acquisition trigger. Pulse AUX Output will send a pulse over the AUX Out connector. Print Screen will execute whatever you have configured on the Print dialog.

7. Restart acquisition.

WaveScan Search

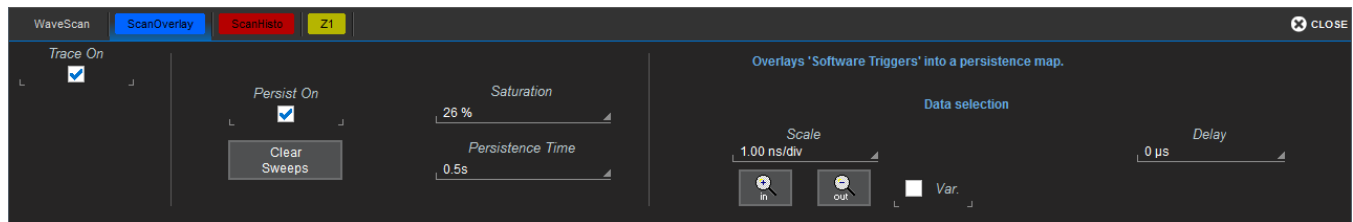
Search is used to find events in zoom (Zn) traces that match user-defined criteria. To search within WaveScan:

1. Select the **Zoom** view.
2. After stopping the acquisition, open the **Z1 dialog** that appears behind the WaveScan dialog.
3. Use the **Prev** and **Next** buttons to move back or forward within the trace to the events that matched your Scan Modes criteria.

Or

If you know the WaveScan table index (row) number of the event you wish to find, enter it in **Idx**.

Scan Overlay



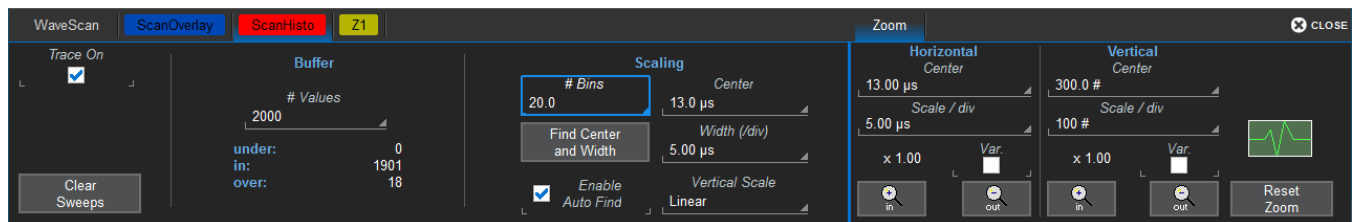
To apply monochromatic persistence to a Scan Overlay:

1. Select **Scan Overlay** when setting up the wave scan, then open the **Scan Overlay** dialog.
2. Check **Persistence On**.
3. Enter a **Saturation** level as a percentage. All samples above the saturation level are assigned the highest color intensity.
4. Choose a **Persistence Time**. The higher the time, the more static the persistence display.

To adjust the scan overlay to "zoom" in or out: touch the **In/Out** buttons, or touch **Scale** and enter new values. Check **Var.** to adjust scale in finer steps than the default 1, 2, 5.

Scan Histogram

Scan Histogram is an additional [WaveScan](#) "view" that generates a histogram to give you a statistical view of edges that meet your search criteria. Set it up as you would any histogram:



1. Enter the total **#Values** in the histogram buffer.
2. Enter the **#Bins** (bars) in the histogram.
3. Enter the **Center** value and **Width** of each bin from center, or check **Enable Auto Find** and let the software **Find Center and Width**.
4. Choose a **Vertical Scale** method:
 - Linear allows the histogram to build vertically as data accumulates. When the histogram reaches the top of the display it rescales the vertical axis to keep it on screen.
 - LinConstMax keeps the histogram at near full scale and rescales the vertical axis as data is accumulated.

PASS/FAIL Testing

PASS/FAIL testing allows you to define a set of qualifying conditions that an acquisition may "PASS" or "FAIL" when tested against, then take actions depending on the result.

- [Mask testing](#) compares sampled values to a pre-defined area of the grid to see if they fall within or without.
- [Parameter comparison](#) compares a measurement result to a pre-defined value (Param compare) or to another measurement (Dual param compare).

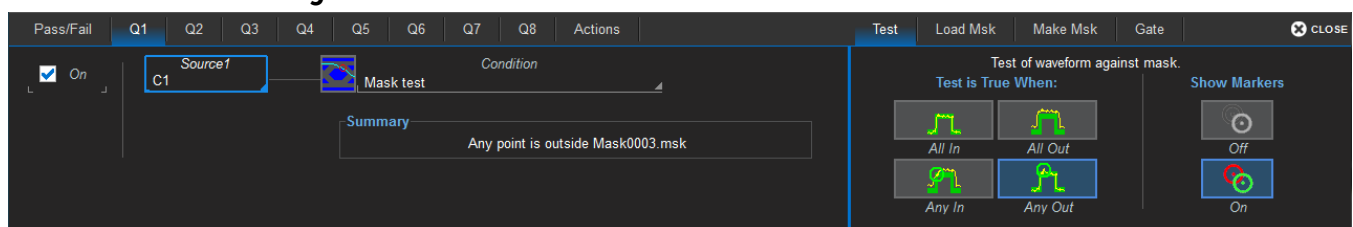
You can preconfigure multiple queries (Qn) using either method, which are then enabled by selecting them on the Pass/Fail dialog and defining what results constitute a "PASS" on the [Actions](#) dialog.

Mask Testing

A mask defines an area of the grid against which a trace is compared. Test conditions define how the waveform is to be compared to the masked area (e.g., some/all values fall within, some/all values fall outside), and a pass or fail result is returned indicating the condition was found to be true or false.

Mask testing can be done using a pre-defined mask or a mask created from a waveform with user-defined vertical and horizontal tolerances. Some industry standard masks used for compliance testing are included with the oscilloscope software. The mask test can be confined to a region of the trace by the use of a measurement gate.

Access Mask Test Dialogs



1. Choose **Analysis > Pass/Fail Setup** to display the **Pass/Fail** dialog.
2. Touch the **Qn** button where you want to set up the query.
3. Select **Condition Mask test**. Make mask settings on the right-hand dialogs.

Make Mask

Use this procedure to create a new mask based on a live waveform. The mask covers the area of the waveform plus the boundaries you enter. It is best used for "all in" testing.

1. Open the **Make Mask** subdialog.
2. If desired, enter a new **Destination File Name** and path, or touch Browse and select a previous file to overwrite. The file name should end with the **.msk** extension.
3. Touch the **Ver Delta** and **Hor Delta** fields and enter boundary values.
4. Touch **Make from Trace**.

Load Mask

Do this instead of Make Mask if you have a pre-defined mask file.

1. Open the **Load Mask** subdialog.
2. To use a saved .msk file, touch **File** and select the mask.
3. Check **View Mask** to display the mask over the trace.

Remove Masks from the Display

Touch the **Delete All Masks** button on the Pass/Fail dialog.

Set Gates

To limit the section of the waveform that is compared to the mask.

1. Open the **Gate** subdialog.
2. Enter the **Start** and **Stop** horizontal divisions that mark the section of the waveform to be tested. These can be a whole division or a fraction of a division. Divisions are numbered 1-*n* left to right.



Tip: You can also drag the gate posts from the left and right edges of the grid to the desired position.

Define "True"

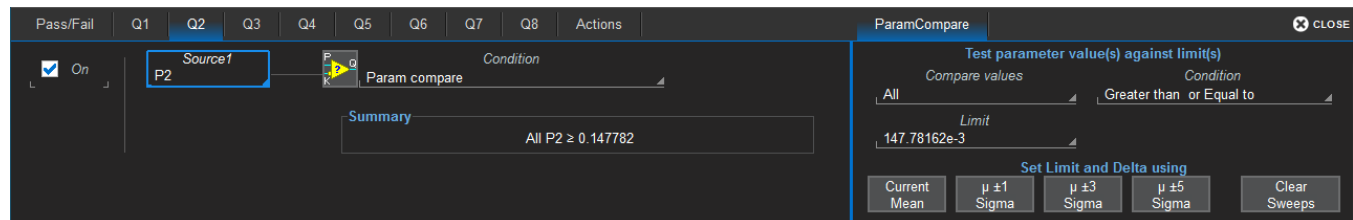
1. Open the **Test** subdialog.
2. Select one of the conditions that, when true (yes), results in a pass or fail.
3. Optionally, turn **On** markers to show where on the waveform mask violations have occurred.

Param(eter) Compare

PASS/FAIL queries (Q_n) can be configured to compare different parameter measurements (P_n) to each other, or to a user-defined limit or statistical range. The Summary field shows the logic represented by the query. Check it to ensure your selections are producing the test you want.

Comparing a Measurement to a Limit

This method compares the result of a selected parameter to a user-defined limit or statistical range.



1. Choose **Analysis > Pass/Fail** to display the **Pass/Fail** dialog.
2. Touch the **Q_n button** where you want to set up a query.
3. From the pop-up menu, choose **Param compare**.
4. On the Q_n dialog, touch **Source1** and choose the parameter.
5. On the ParamCompare subdialog, touch **Compare Values** and select **All** (every value must be within limit to be "true") or **Any** (any value can be within limit to be "true").
6. Touch **Condition** and select a Boolean operator, then touch **Limit** and enter the value that completes the condition. The value entered acquires properties corresponding to the parameters being tested. For example, if you are testing a time parameter, the unit is seconds.
7. If you chose to set a Delta limit, also enter the **Absolute or % Delta** value. You may choose instead to set Limit and Delta using one of the buttons at the bottom of the dialog.

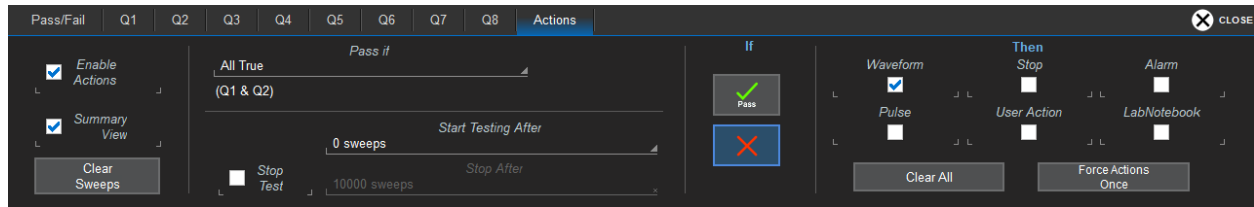
Comparing Parameter Measurements

This method compares one parameter to another, rather than a limit.

1. Choose **Analysis > Pass/Fail** to display the **Pass/Fail** dialog.
2. Touch the **Q_n button** where you want to set up a query.
3. From the Pass/Fail Condition menu, choose **Dual Param Compare**.
4. On the left-hand Q_n dialog, select the parameters to compare in **Source1** and **Source2**.
5. On the ParamCompare subdialog, choose to **Compare All** (every value must meet condition to be "true") or **Any** (any value can meet condition to be "true").
6. Touch **Condition** and select the Boolean operator that expresses the relationship between parameters (e.g., *All P1 values must be less than P2*).

Defining PASS/FAIL Tests

The queries define the conditions that, if met, would result in "true" but don't in themselves determine the test result. You must separately define what constitutes a "PASS" or a "FAIL" on the Actions dialog. Either result can be made to produce various additional actions, such as sending a pulse to another device.



1. After setting up the PASS/FAIL test qualifiers, open the **Actions** tab.
2. Optionally, check **Summary View** to see a running summary of results.
3. Select the test Pass criteria in **Pass If**.

Apply Actions

1. Check **Enable Actions** to turn on actions.
2. Under If, choose to apply actions if the result is a **Pass** or a **Fail**.
3. Under Then, choose all the actions to take:
 - Save **Waveform** file
 - **Stop** the test
 - Sound an **Alarm**
 - Emit a **Pulse** from the AUX OUT connector. When taking this action, also go to **Utilities > Utilities Setup > Aux Output** and choose to **Use Auxilliary Output For Pass/Fail**.
 - **User Action** configured for the front panel User button.
 - Create a **LabNotebook** Entry

Use the **Clear All** button to clear all the action checkboxes, or **Force Actions Once** to take action once regardless of the test results.

Delay Test

You can delay the start of a test by entering the number of sweeps to wait in **Start Testing After**.

Touch **Clear Sweeps** at any time to reset the test counter.

Stop Test

To stop the test following a specified number of sweeps, rather than a PASS or FAIL result, check the **Stop Test** box, then enter the desired number of sweeps in **After**.



CustomDSO Setups/Controls

Custom setups, which can include proprietary math/measurements, are one of the most commonplace uses of Advanced Customization. The CustomDSO Setup dialog, which is enabled with the XDEV option, provides a convenient entry point for either:

- Linking Automation programs saved as .lss or .vbs files to eight [Basic Action](#) buttons
- Installing a [Plug-in](#) that adds a custom dialog and processors to the oscilloscope's MAUI interface



Note: You can only enable either the Plug-in or the Basic Actions at once, which determines which user interface is displayed.

From the oscilloscope menu bar, choose **Analysis > CustomDSO**.

If you do not need to link your custom script to a GUI control, but just want to create a custom processor to be applied as a math function (Fn) or measurement parameter (Pn), you can go directly to that part of the oscilloscope interface to upload or begin scripting it.

Basic Actions

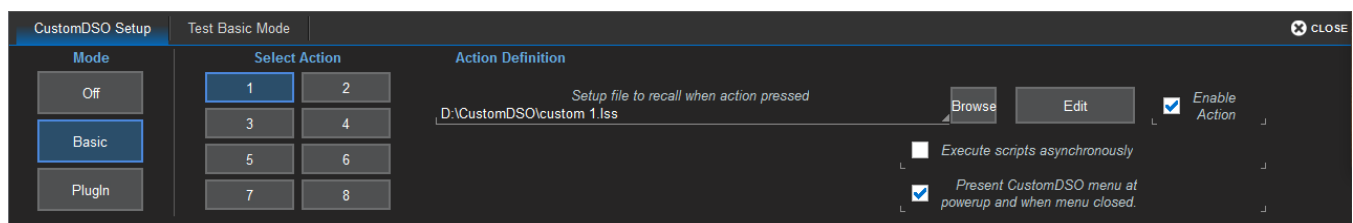
The Basic setup utilizes eight Action buttons, each of which can launch a different setup file written in VBScript. This "menu" of custom Action buttons can be set to appear at the bottom of the oscilloscope touch screen at all times, regardless of whatever dialogs are open, or even if the oscilloscope application is closed and the Windows desktop or other application is open.

Template LeCroy System Setup (.lss) files named custom 1.lss through custom 8.lss are the defaults for each button, ready to be modified in situ, or copied, edited and saved to new files for future use. These default scripts, syntactically identical to VBScripts with a different file extension, are Microsoft COM Automation programs used to apply complex setup instructions to the oscilloscope.

The scripts can program an entire oscilloscope setup, or just a portion of a total setup—such as to recall a waveform file or memory, enable a particular math function, set a trigger and acquire, modify a display setting, etc. Scripts can be run synchronously or asynchronously.

Installing Scripts

To assign scripts to buttons:



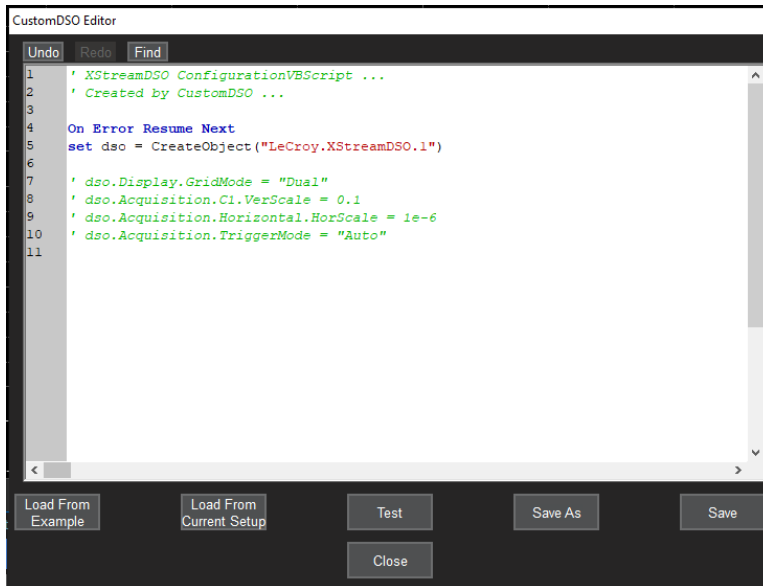
1. Select **Basic**, then select the **Action** button to host the script.
2. Check **Enable Action** to make the button active. If deselected, the program will remain associated with the button, but the button will not function.

3. To allow scripts to run in a separate process from the oscilloscope application, check **Execute Scripts Asynchronously**. This allows the oscilloscope application to perform another function while the script is being executed.
4. To keep the Action buttons visible on the oscilloscope at all times, check **Present CustomDSO menu at powerup and when menu closed**.
5. Either touch **Edit** and modify the template script in the CustomDSO Editor (see below) , or touch **Browse** to select a saved program you wish to launch with this button.
6. Optionally, open the **Test Basic Mode** dialog and test the new button.

Creating/Modifying Scripts

Since the setup files are VBScript (VBS) files, follow the programming rules and recommendations in Customization Using VBScript when scripting.

1. Set up the oscilloscope exactly as you would wish it to be when the button is activated.
2. On the CustomDSO dialog, select the button and click **Edit** to open the CustomDSO Editor window.



3. To copy all current oscilloscope settings into the setup file, select **Load from Current Setup**.

To revert to the original template file, select **Load from Example**.

While not required, starting your script by loading the current setups can help ensure the presence of all settings required for your Action, especially if you have already scripted and activated custom math or measurements you wish to make part of this setup. They will be already embedded in the setup script.

4. Make any further modifications or additions to the script.
5. Optionally, click **Test** to execute the script.
6. When done editing, **Save As** a new file, or just **Save** these changes to the custom *n.lss* file associated with the button. The original template remains unaffected.



Note: The file name is displayed on the button, as shown on the Test Basic Mode dialog, so choose a name that is short and sufficiently descriptive of the action that users know what they are selecting.

Plug-Ins

Any ActiveX (.ocx) or .NET (.dll) control can be inserted into the oscilloscope process by using the CustomDSO Plug-In feature. This is especially useful for programs that are written in languages other than VBScript or designed to interface with other applications, such as Excel or MATLAB.

Plug-ins are launched using whatever custom Windows controls you have included in your program; the plug-in dialog replaces the Basic Action buttons. This is ideal for non-technical personnel using the oscilloscope for testing and production: an entire workflow, including feedback controls, can be embedded in your custom dialog.

Programming Plug-Ins

Plug-ins are programmed as oscilloscope application subroutines that access the oscilloscope's COM Automation interface through VBS processors. The basic structure is:

```
Private Sub control_label_action
Dim app as Object
Set app = CreateObject("LeCroy.XStreamDSO.1")
custom code
End Sub
```

The control label is whatever you have named the UI control that will invoke the program, for example, SingleButton.

The action is the user action associated with the control, for example, Click().

Custom code refers to the Automation commands and processors that are invoked when the control is activated, for example: `app.Acquisition.TriggerMode = "Stopped"`.

So, a very simple plug-in that presents a button to Stop acquisition on the CustomDSO dialog might be:

```
Private Sub SingleButton_Click()
Dim app as Object
Set app = CreateObject("LeCroy.XStreamDSO.1")
app.Acquisition.TriggerMode = "Stopped"
End Sub
```

Using ActiveDSO

If your ActiveX plug-in is created with Visual Studio, C Compiler or similar, you will have to register the plug-in. If you use ActiveDSO as the interface for the CustomDSO plug-in, you can call the already registered C:\Program Files (x86)\LeCroy\ActiveDSO\ActiveDSO.ocx as the CustomDSO plug-in. While not required, ActiveDSO is helpful for creating ActiveX controls for Teledyne LeCroy instruments.

ActiveDSO is available free from the teledynelecroy.com software download page under Oscilloscope > Software Utilities. See the [ActiveDSO Developer's Guide](#) for more information.

Using VB.NET

If you are using Microsoft's VB.NET framework to program your plug-in, see the instructions in our application note, [Plug-ins Using VB.NET](#).

Installing Plug-Ins

To install plug-ins:

1. On the CustomDSO dialog, select **Plug-In**.
2. Select the **COM ProgID of Plug-In** field and enter the program ID on the pop-up keyboard.

The default plug-in, LeCroy.CustomDSODemo.1, demonstrates plug-in functioning. Install it to see how the custom dialog is inserted into the oscilloscope's GUI.

3. To keep the plug-in dialog visible on the oscilloscope at all times, check **Present CustomDSO menu at powerup and when menu closed**.
4. Select **Install**.
5. Open the **Plug-In n** dialog to test your program. Whatever controls you have created for the GUI appear in the PlugIn1 dialog.

To uninstall the plug-in, simply select **Remove**.

MAUI Browser

The MAUI Browser utility (formerly XStreamBrowser™) enables you to view, copy and modify the COM object hierarchy of a Windows-based MAUI oscilloscope. It is essential for writing Automation programs, as it always shows all the Automation objects on the instrument at the exact current configuration—including those objects belonging to software options.


MAUI Browser is installed on all MAUI oscilloscopes for local browsing. It may also be installed with MAUI Studio on remote PCs to view a connected oscilloscope's Automation hierarchy.




Caution: The legacy XStreamBrowser available for download on our website is a 32-bit version. Do not install this on any 64-bit oscilloscopes or PCs. Use only the latest 64-bit MAUI installer to update the oscilloscope MAUI Browser, or use MAUI Studio to install it on your PC.

Connecting to a Local Oscilloscope

To launch MAUI Browser on the oscilloscope:

1. Choose **File->Minimize** to display the Windows desktop.
2. Double-click the **MAUI Browser** icon.
3. Select the  connection icon.

Connecting to a Remote Oscilloscope

1. Be sure the oscilloscope is configured to allow a DCOM connection from the PC.
2. Launch MAUI Browser on the PC.
3. Select the  connection icon.
4. Enter the network **IP Address** of the oscilloscope, then click **OK**.




Note: If the oscilloscope application is not running, initiating the connection from the MAUI Browser will start it; however, it will not power on a device that is powered off. Be sure the oscilloscope is turned on before connecting.

When the connection to an instrument is established, the MAUI Browser window is populated with the oscilloscope [application object hierarchy](#).



Caution: While remote viewing is safe, it is not advisable to use MAUI Browser to change certain settings, in particular remote control CVARs, over a remote connection. Make these changes locally on the oscilloscope.

Refreshing the Display

If you change the state of the oscilloscope in any way while connected to MAUI Browser, select the  icon to refresh the object hierarchy. Settings changed on the oscilloscope must be "pulled" into the MAUI Browser display.

Disconnecting

Only one connection may be made at one time. To disconnect, choose **File > Close Session**.

Use the window closebox or choose **File > Exit** to close the MAUI Browser application.

Viewing MAUI Objects

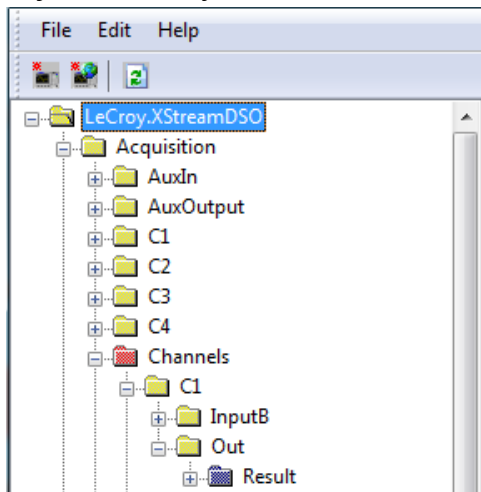
The number of different objects in a complete oscilloscope setup is obviously large and changes with the installation of new firmware and software options. MAUI Browser helps you quickly find the object path and valid values corresponding to any instrument control.

The object hierarchy exposed by MAUI instruments is rooted at the **Application** object. This object is always named **LeCroy.XStreamDSO**.

All major instrument subsystems are available from this object, and many of these subsystems themselves may be broken down further. As new software options are activated on the oscilloscope, these subsystems are added to the Application object hierarchy.

Anything exposed by the object hierarchy can be controlled or read back via Automation.

Object Hierarchy



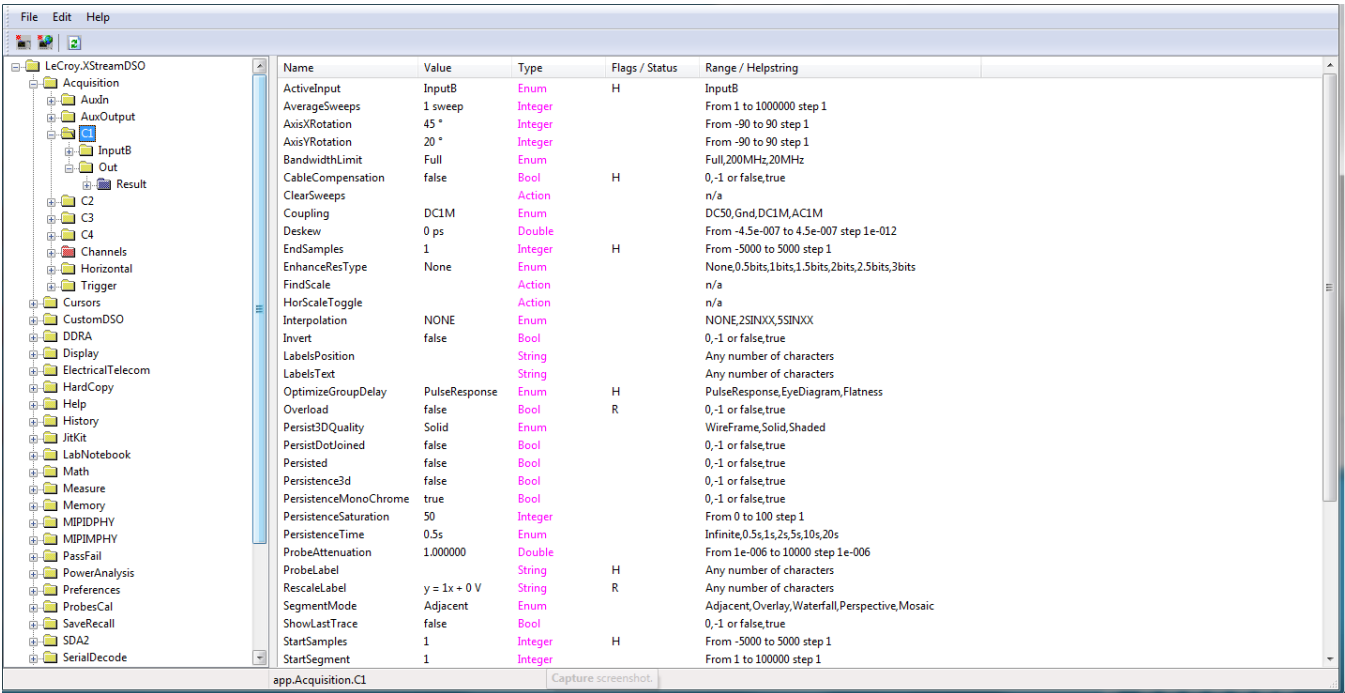
The left-hand pane of the MAUI Browser window contains an expandable navigation "tree." The object hierarchy is tiered; for example, the Acquisition subsystem is comprised of a variety of objects, each with child objects.

The right-hand pane shows the Control Variables or Properties related to the object selected from the navigation tree.

Control Variables

The majority of the items you will find as you expand the navigation tree are Control Variables, or CVARs for short. These are shown as yellow folders in the MAUI Browser window.

CVARs provide an interface for accessing scope configurations and for executing methods and actions. When viewed from MAUI Browser, many CVARs appear to be properties, but are actually objects with properties such as **Name**, **Value**, and **Type**, to name a few.



CVAR properties shown in the right-hand pane of MAUI Browser window.

The **Range/Helpstring** column provides short form information about the possible values the variable can take.

The **Flags/Status** column contains coded information about the object.

Flag/Status	Indicates
R	For CVARs: Read only. For Properties: Readable.
W	For CVARs: Wrapping, incrementing the value will "wrap around" from max. to min., or vice versa. For Properties: Writable.
H	Hidden: not visible on any GUI dialog or menu.
g	Grey: appears "greyed out" on GUI indicating it is disabled or not settable.
B	Backwards: incrementing the CVAR value will decrease the value.
N	Nonvolatile: value is saved in the application's "nonvolatile" settings file. These CVARs are typically user preferences and are not affected by Recall Default Setup.
A	AutoRepeat: the CVAR action should be repeated if a button on the GUI is held down.
M	MultiLine: the CVAR value may be rendered on multiple lines of the GUI.
L	LateUpdate: the CVAR value may be updated when it is read/refreshed.

Actions and Methods

Besides the configuration CVARs, Automation also provides for Actions that may be applied at the application or subsystem level.

For example, to clear sweeps for all subsystems, the Automation command would be:

`app.ClearSweeps`

Methods are similar to Actions but may take parameters from the caller and may possibly return a value, whereas, Actions do not support any parameters or return values. An example of a Method is `app.Acquisition.Acquire`, which takes both "timeout" and "force trigger" arguments.

Result Interfaces

The grey folders are Result Interfaces. Result Interfaces contain more than just the basic results of oscilloscope operations, such as waveform data and measurement values; they include information about horizontal and vertical resolution, event times, number of sweeps, histogram peaks, etc. The **Type** column of the MAUI Browser window shows the result interface type.

Collections

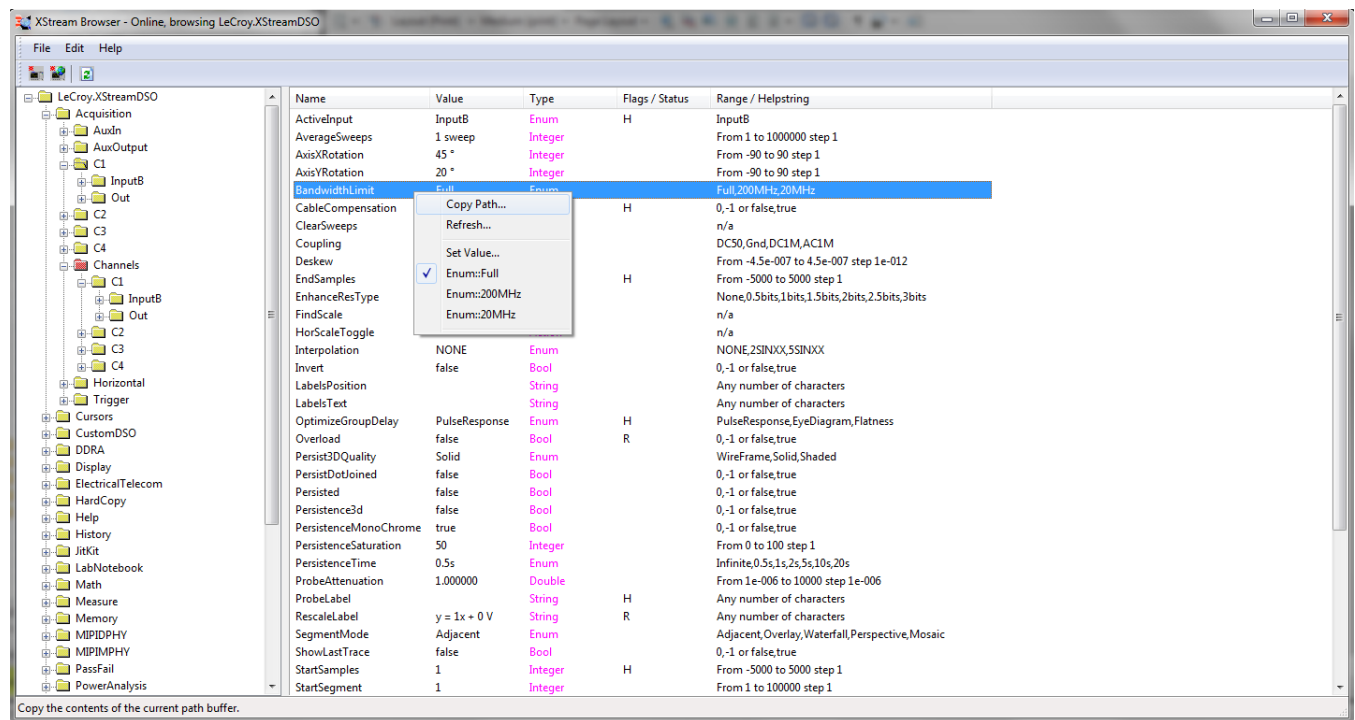
Collections, which are shown as pink folders in MAUI Browser, contain sets of similar objects. For example, the app.Acquisition.Channels collection contains input channel objects (C1, C2, etc.). Objects in Collections folders are dynamically linked to those in the yellow folders; changing the value in either place changes it everywhere. Collection subfolders are referenced by indexing the collection name with the subfolder name.

Copying from MAUI Browser

When a variable is selected from the right-hand pane, the message bar at the bottom of the screen shows the full object path in correct notation for sending as an Automation command:

AxisYRotation	20 °	Integer		From -90 to 90 step 1
BandwidthLimit	Full	Enum		Full,200MHz,20MHz
CableCompensation	false	Bool	H	0,-1 or false,true
ClearSweeps		Action		n/a
Coupling	DC1M	Enum		DC50,Gnd,DC1M,AC1M
Deskew	0 ps	Double		From -4.5e-007 to 4.5e-007 step 1e-012
EndSamples	1	Integer	H	From -5000 to 5000 step 1
EnhanceResType	None	Enum		None,0.5bits,1bits,1.5bits,2bits,2.5bits,3bits
FindScale		Action		n/a
HorScaleToggle		Action		n/a
Interpolation	NONE	Enum		NONE,2SINXX,5SINXX
Invert	false	Bool		0,-1 or false,true
LabelsPosition		String		Any number of characters
LabelsText		String		Any number of characters
OptimizeGroupDelay	PulseResponse	Enum	H	PulseResponse,EyeDiagram,Flatness
Overload	false	Bool	R	0,-1 or false,true
Persist3DQuality	Solid	Enum		WireFrame,Solid,Shaded
PersistDotJoined	false	Bool		0,-1 or false,true
Persisted	false	Bool		0,-1 or false,true
Persistence3d	false	Bool		0,-1 or false,true
PersistenceMonoChrome	true	Bool		0,-1 or false,true
PersistenceSaturation	50	Integer		From 0 to 100 step 1
PersistenceTime	0.5s	Enum		Infinite,0.5s,1s,2s,5s,10s,20s
ProbeAttenuation	1.000000	Double		From 1e-006 to 10000 step 1e-006
ProbeLabel		String	H	Any number of characters
RescaleLabel	y = 1x + 0 V	String	R	Any number of characters
SegmentMode	Adjacent	Enum		Adjacent,Overlay,Waterfall,Perspective,Mosaic
ShowLastTrace	false	Bool		0,-1 or false,true
StartSamples	1	Integer	H	From -5000 to 5000 step 1
StartSegment	1	Integer		From 1 to 100000 step 1
app.Acquisition.C1.BandwidthLimit				

Right-click and choose **Copy Path**. The text is automatically placed in the clipboard, from where it can be easily copied into Automation programs.



Save/Recall Data (File Menu)

The File menu functions allow you to save and recall acquisition setups, waveform data and table data, or to generate screen captures, LabNotebooks, and reports of acquisitions. You can use [Print](#) or [E-mail](#) to share these files.

Save

Oscilloscope setups (configurations), waveform data, tabular data, and the display can all be saved in multiple formats. To save them all as a composite LabNotebook file, see [Save LabNotebook](#).



Note: We strongly recommend that you stop acquisition before saving waveforms or LabNotebooks, especially when running in Auto trigger mode. If you do not first stop, there is no guarantee that what you are capturing is what you want to save.

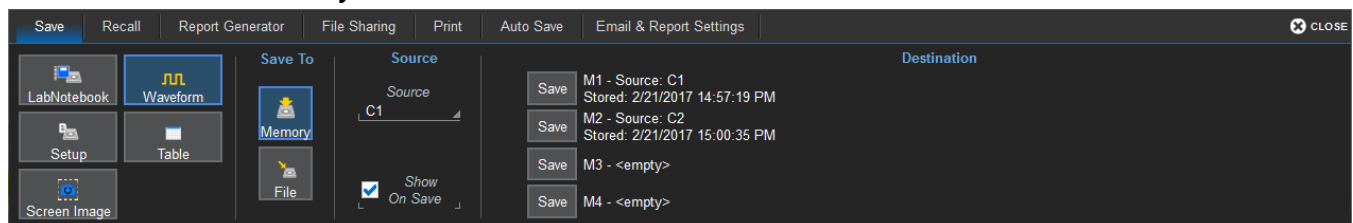
Save Waveform

The Save Waveform function saves trace data either to internal memory (M1-Mn) or to a file in text or binary format. The source waveform can be any type of trace; a channel, math function, zoom, or even another memory. Waveform files can be [recalled](#) into an internal memory, from where they can be restored to the display.



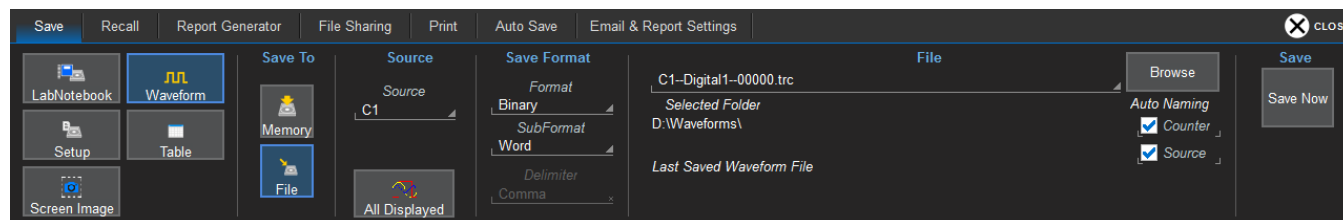
Note: Only traces saved in Teledyne LeCroy proprietary formats can be recalled to the display directly. Use the Binary format (.trc) for analog waveforms, or WaveML (.xml) for digital waveforms. Other waveform types must be recalled into memory before being displayed.

Save Waveform To Memory



1. From the menu bar, choose **File > Save Waveform**.
2. Choose to Save To **Memory**.
3. Choose the **Source** trace you are saving.
4. Optionally, select **Show On Save** to display the memory trace with its source as soon as it is saved.
5. Touch the **Save** button directly to the left of the selected **Destination** memory slot. The date/time stamp of the saved memory will appear at that location.

Save Waveform To File

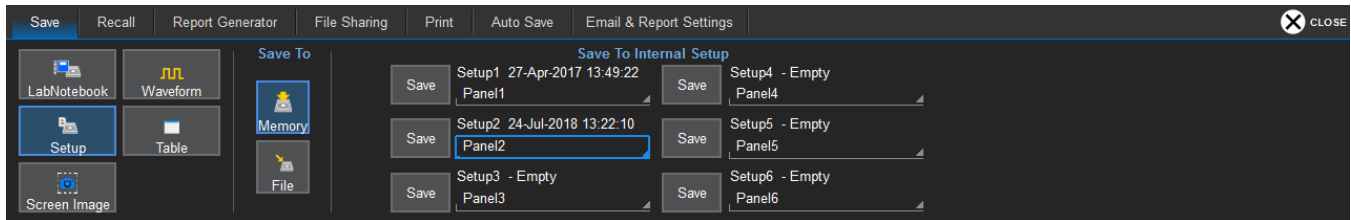


1. From the menu bar, choose **File > Save Waveform**.
2. Choose to Save To **File**.
3. Choose the **Source** waveform. To quickly save all displayed waveforms separate trace files, touch the **All Displayed** button.
4. Select a file **Format**. **Binary** is Teledyne LeCroy's .trc file format. Binary results in the smallest possible file size. Binary files can be converted to ASCII using Teledyne LeCroy utilities such as WaveStudio. **WaveML** is a proprietary .xml format used to save persistence maps, eye diagrams, histograms, and digital traces. This option is only active if the source is compatible.
5. If your Format is ASCII, touch **Delimiter** and select a character from the pop-up menu.
6. Depending on your Format selection, you may also need to specify a **SubFormat**:
 - **Word** (Binary) represents samples using 16 bits. Always use this unless Byte mode is "pre."
 - **Byte** (Binary) represents samples using 8 bits. This option can result in a loss of resolution.
 - **Auto** (Binary) looks at the data and automatically selects either Word or Byte subformat.
 - **Amplitude only** (Text) includes amplitude data for each sample, but not time data.
 - **Time and Amplitude** (Text) includes both types of data for each sample.
 - **With Header** (Text) includes a file header with scaling information.
7. The system will auto name the file <Source>-Trace-<Counter>. To change the file name or Selected Folder, enter the full path and name in **File**, or [use the File Browser](#). By default, trace files are saved to D:\Waveforms on the instrument hard drive.
8. If you do not want to use the **Source** prefix or **Counter** number, deselect them.
9. Touch **Save Now**.

Save Setup

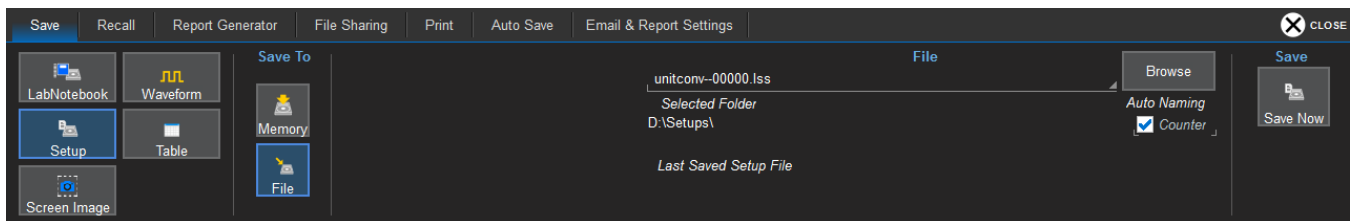
You can quickly save oscilloscope configurations to one of the internal setup panels or to a LeCroy System Setup (.lss) file, a text-based Automation program. Setups can be easily [recalled](#) to restore the oscilloscope to the saved state.

Save Setup to Memory



1. From the menu bar, choose **File > Save Setup**.
2. Choose to Save To **Memory**.
3. If desired, touch one of the **Setup** slots and enter a name for the memory. The default name will be Panel*n*. Try to select an empty slot, as anything currently in it will be overwritten.
4. Touch the **Save** button directly to the left of the selected Setup slot. The save date/time is displayed above the **Setup** field.

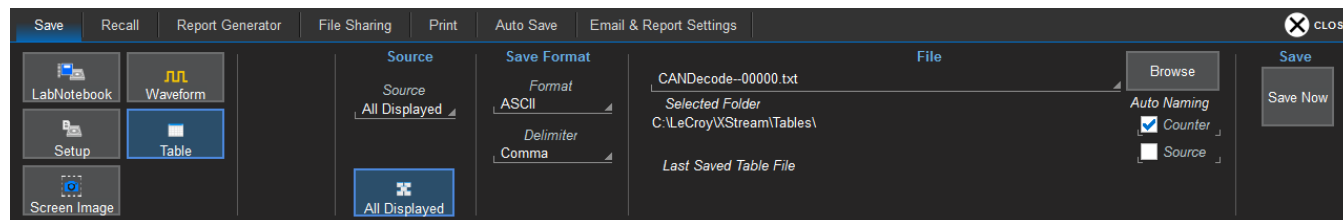
Save Setup to File



1. From the menu bar, choose **File > Save Setup**.
2. Choose to Save To **File**.
3. To change the file name or Selected Folder, enter the full path and name in **File**, or [use the File Browser](#). By default, setup files are saved to D:\Setups on the instrument hard drive.
4. If you do not want to use the **Counter** number, deselect it.
5. Touch **Save Now**.

Save Table

The Save Table function saves tabular measurement data displayed on screen to an Excel or ASCII file.



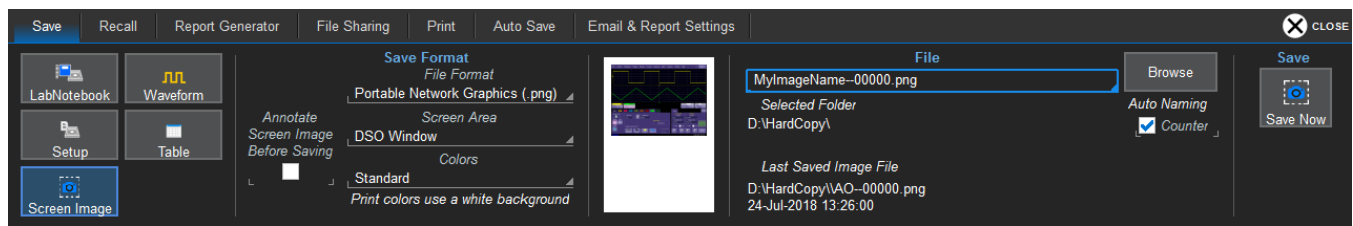
1. From the menu bar, choose **File > Save**, then choose **Table**.
2. To save only one of the tables displayed, touch **Source** and navigate to the selection.

By default, data from all visible tables are saved to separate files. To quickly restore this selection, touch the **All Displayed** button.

3. Choose a format of **ASCII** (.txt) or **Excel** (.csv). If you selected **ASCII** format, also touch **Delimiter** and choose a character.
4. The system will auto name the file "<source>-Table-<counter>". To change the file name or Selected Folder, enter the full path and name in **File**, or [use the File Browser](#). By default, table files are saved to D:\Tables on the instrument hard drive.
5. If you do not want to use the **Source** or **Counter** number, deselect them.
6. Touch **Save Now**.

Save Screen Image

The full touch screen display or selected portions of it can be captured, saved to an image file, and marked with custom annotations.

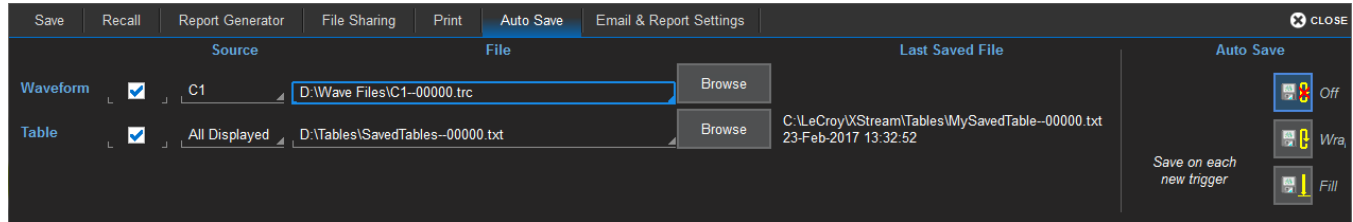


1. From the menu bar, choose **File > Save**, then choose **Screen Image**.
2. Choose a **File Format** of .JPEG, .PNG, .TIF, or .BMP.
3. To mark up the screen image using the drawing tools, select **Annotate Screen Image Before Saving**.
4. Select the **Screen Area** captured:
 - Grid Area Only includes any visible waveform grids, tables, and descriptor boxes.
 - DSO Window includes the above plus any open dialogs, menu bar, and message bar.
 - Full Screen is the full Windows display, including other visible applications and desktop.
5. Choose the **Colors** used in the capture:
 - Standard uses the screen colors on a black background as it appears on the instrument.
 - Print (default) uses your [print color palette](#) (set in Preferences) on a white background to save ink.
 - Black & White captures the image in grayscale.
6. To change the file name or Selected Folder, enter the full path and name in **File**, or [use the File Browser](#). By default, image files are saved to D:\Hardcopy on the instrument hard drive.
7. Touch **Save Now**.
8. If you've turned on annotations, use the [Drawing toolbar](#) to mark up the screen image. Click **Done** when finished.

Auto Save

Data that appears on the oscilloscope display, such as waveforms, measurement readouts and decoder data, can be very dynamic and difficult to read from the oscilloscope unless you stop the acquisition.

Auto Save enables you to automatically store waveform and table data to file with each new trigger. The file can later be recalled to the oscilloscope or saved permanently to external storage.



1. Choose **File > Save** and open the **Auto Save** dialog.
2. Select to save **Waveforms** and/or **Tables**.
3. Select the **Source** from which to save. The All Displayed selection will create a separate file for each trace or table displayed.
4. By default, waveform files are stored in D:\Waveforms and tables are stored in D:\Tables on the instrument hard drive. Optionally:
 - Enter a different root path and name in **File**.
 - Touch **Browse** to open the [File Browser](#) and add or remove the source prefix and counter suffix.
5. Choose one of the **Auto Save** options: **Wrap** (old files overwritten when buffer filled) or **Fill** (no files overwritten, excess is truncated).



Tip: If you have frequent triggers, it is possible you will eventually run out of storage space. Choose Wrap only if you're not concerned about files persisting on the instrument. If you choose Fill, plan to periodically delete or move files off the instrument, or you will lose new data.

6. To confirm these selections, choose **Configure Auto Save** from the pop-up dialog that appears.
7. As soon as there is a trigger, files will begin to be saved. Choose **Disable Auto Save** from the pop-up to stop saving files while the acquisition is in process.

You can also choose **Off** on the Auto Save dialog to disable this feature in between acquisitions.

Waveform File Format

By default, the oscilloscope saves waveform data as binary files (.trc). The properties of the trace file are shown by the waveform descriptor block, which appears immediately after the file header. The waveform descriptor is the key to understanding the data that follows.

There are two waveform file formats and waveform descriptors currently in use:

- WAVEDESC1 defines the waveform file format that has been used since the introduction of 64-bit LeCroy DSOs. This describes all waveform files that are ≤ 2 GB in length.
- WAVEDESC2 defines the extended trace file format that was introduced with the long memory HD oscilloscopes. This descriptor appears only in >2 GB waveform files in a second section of the file following the variables described by WAVEDESC1.

When an acquisition is >2 GB, the TRIGTIME_2, DATA_ARRAY_3 and DATA_ARRAY_4 blocks (all defined in WAVEDESC2) contain the balance of the waveform data that does not fit into the legacy format. To export the complete waveform to other programs, the data in these blocks should be appended to the data in TRIGTIME, DATA_ARRAY_1 and DATA_ARRAY_2, according to the properties that will appear in the WAVEDESC1 and WAVEDESC2.

Waveform File Format

Section	Block ID	Type	Size	Description
1: Legacy file format Only this section is used when the waveform size is ≤ 2 GB. If the waveform size is > 2 GB, this section of the file contains all data up to 2 GB. The WAVEDESC1 block describes the properties of this part of the waveform.	#Nnnnnnnnnnn	Header	11-17	The special character '#'; then one Hexadecimal digit N (0-9, A-F); then N decimal digits that denote the positive integer size of this section. The number of digits 'nnnnnnnnnn' is equal to N , representing the block size of Section 1.
	WAVEDESC1	Block	344	Waveform descriptor of primary section. See table below for a definition of its components.
	USERTEXT	Block	variable	User defined text.
	TRIGTIME	Trigger Time Array	variable	The total size is defined in WAVEDESC1 > TRIGTIME_ARRAY. Each trigger time element is defined as: {double TRIGGER_TIME; double TRIGGER_OFFSET}
	RISTIME	Double Array	variable	The total size is defined in WAVEDESC1 > RIS_TIME_ARRAY. The type of each element is double.
	DATA_ARRAY_1	Array	variable	The total size is defined in WAVEDESC1 > WAVE_ARRAY_1. The data format is defined in WAVEDESC1 > COMM_TYPE.
	DATA_ARRAY_2	Array	variable	The total size is defined in WAVEDESC1 > WAVE_ARRAY_2. The data format is defined in WAVEDESC1 > COMM_TYPE.

Section	Block ID	Type	Size	Description
2: Extended file format If the waveform size is > 2 GB, this section of the file contains all data > 2 GB. The WAVEDESC2 block describes the properties of this part of the waveform.	#Nnnnnnnnnnn	Header	11-17	The special character '#' ; then one Hexadecimal digit N (0-9, A-F); then N decimal digits that denote the positive integer size of this section. The number of digits 'nnnnnnnnnn' is equal to N, representing the block size of Section 2.
	WAVEDESC2	Block	672	Waveform descriptor of extended section. Note: Parts of this block replace equivalent parts of WAVEDESC1; see WAVEDESC2 below.
	USERTEXT	Block	variable	User defined text.
	TRIGTIME_2	Trigger Time Array	variable	The total size is defined in WAVEDESC2 > TRIGTIME_ARRAY. Each trigger time element is defined as: {double TRIGGER_TIME; double TRIGGER_OFFSET}
	RISTIME	Double Array	variable	The total size is defined in WAVEDESC2 > RIS_TIME_ARRAY. The type of each element is double.
	DATA_ARRAY_3	Array	variable	The data in this block follows DATA_ARRAY_1. To get the full waveform, DATA_ARRAY_1 and DATA_ARRAY_3 must be combined. The total size is defined in WAVEDESC1 > WAVE_ARRAY_3. The data format is defined in WAVEDESC1 > COMM_TYPE.
	DATA_ARRAY_4	Array	variable	The data in this block follows DATA_ARRAY_2. To get the full waveform, DATA_ARRAY_2 and DATA_ARRAY_4 must be combined. The total size is defined in WAVEDESC2 > WAVE_ARRAY_4. The data format is defined in WAVEDESC2 > COMM_TYPE.

WAVEDESC1

Offset (bytes)	Size (Bytes)	Type	Variable Name	Description
0	16	string	DESCRIPTOR_NAME	Will contain "WAVEDESC"
16	16	string	TEMPLATE_NAME	Name of the template
32	2	short	COMM_TYPE	Data format: 0 = byte; 1 = word
34	2	short	COMM_ORDER	Data order: 0 = Hi First; 1 = Lo First
The following variables specify the lengths of all blocks of which the entire waveform (as it is currently being read) is composed. If a block length is zero, that block is (currently) not present. Blocks and arrays that are present will be found in the same order as shown below.				
36	4	long	WAVE_DESC_LENGTH	Length in bytes of WAVEDESC1 block
40	4	long	USER_TEXT_LENGTH	Length in bytes of USERTEXT block
44	4	long	RES_DESC1	Reserved
48	4	long	TRIG_TIME_ARRAY	Length in bytes of TRIGTIME array
52	4	long	RIS_TIME_ARRAY	Length in bytes of RISTIME array
56	4	long	RES_ARRAY_1	Reserved
60	4	long	WAVE_ARRAY_1	Length in bytes of first simple data array
64	4	long	WAVE_ARRAY_2	Length in bytes of second simple data array
68	4	long	RES_ARRAY_2	Reserved
72	4	long	RES_ARRAY_3	Reserved
The following variables identify the instrument.				
76	16	string	INSTRUMENT_NAME	

Offset (bytes)	Size (Bytes)	Type	Variable Name	Description
92	4	ULONG	INSTRUMENT_NUMBER	
96	16	string	TRACE_LABEL	Waveform identifier
112	4	long	RESERVED_DATA_COUNT	Reserved
The following variables describe the waveform type and the time at which the waveform was generated.				
116	4	long	WAVE_ARRAY_COUNT	Number of data points in a data array. If there are two arrays (e.g., FFT or Extrema waveform), this number applies to each array separately.
120	4	long	POINTS_PER_SCREEN	Nominal number of data points on the screen
124	4	long	FIRST_VALID	Number of points to skip before first good point. FIRST_VALID_POINT=0 for normal waveforms.
128	4	long	LAST_VALID	Index of last good data point in record before padding (blanking) was started. LAST_VALID_POINT = WAVE_ARRAY_COUNT -1 except for aborted Sequence and Roll Mode acquisitions.
132	4	long	FIRST_POINT	Indicates the data offset relative to the beginning of the trace buffer
136	4	long	SPARSING_FACTOR	Indicates the sparsing into data block
140	4	long	SEGMENT_NO	For Sequence waveforms, index of the segment
144	4	long	SUBARRAY_COUNT	For Sequence waveforms, acquired segment count, between 0 and NOM_SUBARRAY_COUNT
148	4	long	SWEEPS_PER_ACQ	For Average or Extrema waveforms, number of sweeps accumulated, else 1
152	2	short	POINTS_PER_PAIR	For Peak Detect waveforms (which always include data points in DATA_ARRAY_1 and min/max pairs in DATA_ARRAY_2), the number of data points for each min/max pair
154	2	short	PAIR_OFFSET	For Peak Detect waveforms, the number of data points by which the first min/max pair in DATA_ARRAY_2 is offset relative to the first data value in DATA_ARRAY_1
156	4	float	VERTICAL_GAIN	Total gain of waveform, units per lsb
160	4	float	VERTICAL_OFFSET	Total vertical offset of waveform. To get floating values from raw data: $\text{VERTICAL_GAIN} * \text{data} - \text{VERTICAL_OFFSET}$
164	4	float	MAX_VALUE	Maximum allowed value; corresponds to the upper edge of the grid
168	4	float	MIN_VALUE	Minimum allowed value; corresponds to the lower edge of the grid
172	2	short	NOMINAL_BITS	Intrinsic precision of the observation
174	2	short	NOM_SUBARRAY_COUNT	For Sequence waveforms, nominal segment count, else 1
176	4	float	HORIZONTAL_INTERVAL	Sampling interval, the nominal time between successive points in the data
180	8	double	HORIZONTAL_OFFSET	Trigger offset in time domain for zero'th sweep of trigger, measured as seconds from trigger to zero'th data point (i.e., actual trigger delay)
188	8	double	PIXEL_OFFSET	Time from trigger to zero'th pixel of display segment in time domain, measured in seconds (i.e., nominal trigger delay)
196	48	string	VERTUNIT	Vertical axis unit
244	48	string	HORUNIT	Horizontal axis unit
292	4	float	HORIZ_UNCERTAINTY	Uncertainty from one acquisition to the next, of the horizontal offset in seconds

Offset (bytes)	Size (Bytes)	Type	Variable Name	Description
296	16	structure	TRIGGER_TIME	Time of the trigger, listed in the structure: double seconds; char minutes; char hours; char days; char months; short year; short dummy
312	4	float	ACQ_DURATION	Duration of the acquisition (in sec) for multi-trigger waveforms (e.g., Sequence, RIS and Average)
316	2	short	CA_RECORD_TYPE	Type of waveform
318	2	short	PROCESSING_DONE	Indication of any processing done. 0 = no processing; 1 = fir filter; 2 = interpolated; 3 = sparsed; 4 = auto-scaled; 5 = no result; 6 = rolling; 7 = cumulative.
320	2	short	RESERVEDS	
322	2	short	RIS_SWEEPS	For RIS acquisitions, number of sweeps from which waveform is calculated, else 1
**The information below is based on the legacy enumeration list. It may not be valid for newer oscilloscope models.				
324	2	short	TIME_BASE	Enumerated time/div **
326	2	short	VERTICAL_COUPLING	Enumerated channel coupling value
328	4	float	PROBE_ATTENUATION	Probe attenuation value
332	2	short	FIXED_VERTICAL_GAIN	Enumerated vertical gain **
334	2	short	BAND_WIDTH_LIMIT	
336	4	float	VERTICAL_VERNIER	
340	4	float	ACQ_VERTICAL_OFFSET	
344	2	short	WAVE_SOURCE	Waveform source input

WAVEDESC2

Offset (bytes)	Size (Bytes)	Type	Variable Name	Description
0	16	string	DESCRIPTOR_NAME	Will contain "BLOCK2"
16	16	string	TEMPLATE_NAME	Name of the template
32	16	string	VERSION	
The following variables specify the lengths of all blocks of which the entire waveform (as it is currently being read) is composed. If a block length is zero, that block is (currently) not present. Blocks and arrays that are present will be found in the same order as shown below.				
48	8	int64	WAVE_DESC_LENGTH_2	Length in bytes of WAVEDESC2 block
56	8	int64	TRIG_TIME_ARRAY	Length in bytes of TRIGTIME_2 array
64	8	int64	WAVE_ARRAY_3	Length in bytes of data array 3
72	8	int64	WAVE_ARRAY_4	Length in bytes of data array 4
80	8	int64	WAVE_ARRAY_COUNT	Number of data points in each data array. If there are two data arrays (e.g., FFT or Extrema), this number applies to each array separately.
96	8	int64	FIRST_VALID	Number of points to skip before first good point. FIRST_VALID_POINT = 0 for normal waveforms.
104	8	int64	LAST_VALID	Index of last good data point in record before padding (blanking) was started. LAST_VALID_POINT = WAVE_ARRAY_COUNT -1 except for aborted Sequence and Roll Mode acquisitions.
The following variables describe waveform properties of all data in file sections 1 and 2. These values replace equivalents in WAVEDESC1.				
88	8	int64	POINTS_PER_SCREEN	Nominal number of data points on the screen
112	8	int64	FIRST_POINT	Indicates the data offset relative to the beginning of the trace buffer
120	8	int64	SPARSING_FACTOR	Indicates the sparsing into data block
128	8	int64	SEGMENT_NO	For Sequence waveforms, index of the segment

Offset (bytes)	Size (Bytes)	Type	Variable Name	Description
136	4	int	SUBARRAY_COUNT	For Sequence waveforms, acquired segment count, between 0 and NOM_SUBARRAY_COUNT
140	8	int64	SWEEPS_PER_ACQ	For Average or Extrema waveforms, number of sweeps accumulated, else 1
148	4	int	NOM_SUBARRAY_COUNT	For Sequence waveforms, nominal segment count, else 1
152	8	double	HORIZONTAL_OFFSET	Trigger offset in time domain for zero'th sweep of trigger, measured as seconds from trigger to zero'th data point (i.e., actual trigger delay)
160	512	bytes[512]	RESERVED	Reserved for future use

Recall

Setups saved to internal memory or to .LSS file can be recalled to restore the oscilloscope to the saved state.

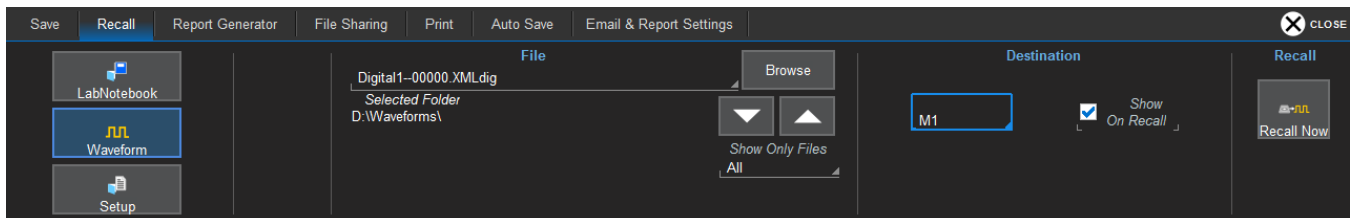
Waveform data stored in Teledyne LeCroy binary (.trc) or WaveML (.xml) format can be recalled directly to the display. Waveform data stored in other binary or ASCII file formats can be recalled into a memory and from there displayed.

To recall and modify saved LabNotebook files, see [Recall LabNotebook](#).

Recall Waveform



Note: Only files saved in Teledyne LeCroy binary (.trc) or WaveML (.xml) format can be recalled directly to the display.



1. Choose **File > Recall Waveform** from the menu bar to open the Recall dialog.
2. Touch **Browse** and navigate to the file.

If the file is in the Selected Folder, you can use the **Up /Down Arrows** to cycle through the available files until the desired file is selected.

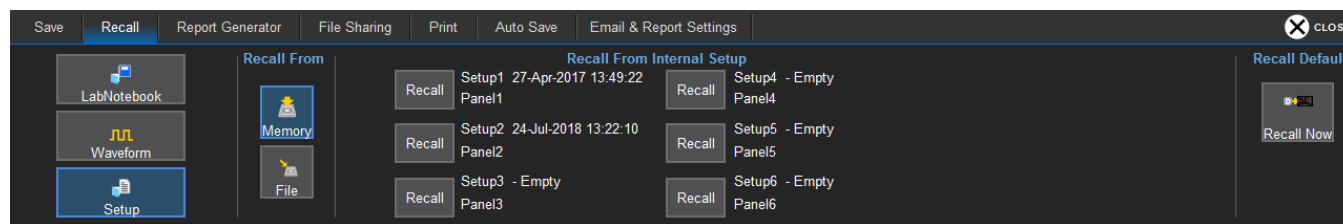
Optionally, touch **Show Only Files** to filter the list by file type.

3. Select a **Destination** memory slot into which to recall the file.
4. Mark **Show on Recall** to display the trace on the grid.
5. Touch **Recall Now**.

Recall Setup

Choose **File > Recall Setup...** from the menu bar.

Recall Setup from Memory

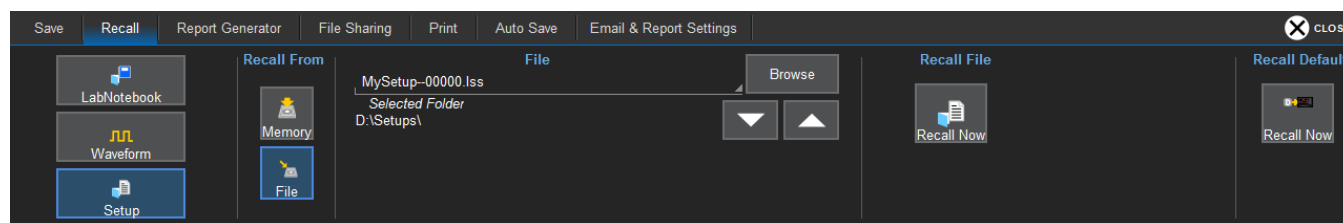


1. On the Recall dialog, select **Setup**.
2. Choose to Recall From **Memory**.
3. Select one of the six **Recall** buttons under **Recall From Internal Setup...**



Note: If a setup has been stored to a location, it is labeled with the save date/time. Otherwise, the slot is labeled **Empty**.

Recall Setup from File



1. On the Recall dialog, select **Setup**.
2. Choose to Recall From **File**.
3. Enter the path to the **File**, or touch **Browse** and navigate to the desired file.

If the file is in the Selected Folder, you can use the **Up /Down Arrows** to cycle through the available files until the desired file is selected.

4. Under Recall File, touch **Recall Now**.

Recall Default Setup

The front panel **Default Setup** button restores all the volatile setups to the factory default state.

You can also restore default settings via the touch screen. Choose **File > Recall Setup** from the menu bar and under Recall Default select **Recall Now**.

LabNotebook

LabNotebook is Teledyne LeCroy's proprietary tool for capturing a composite file containing waveform data, oscilloscope setups and display, which can be output to a preformatted report.

The LabNotebook feature allows you to create and save composite files containing a screen capture of all displayed waveforms, as well as all waveform and setup data at the time of capture. The Flashback feature instantly recalls the setups and waveforms stored with LabNotebook Entries, enabling you to restore the exact state of the instrument at a later date to perform additional analysis.

LabNotebooks saved on oscilloscopes running MAUI firmware v.9.5.x.x. and later will also support enhanced LabNotebook features, recalling the source oscilloscope's model type and software options when recalled in MAUI Studio Pro.

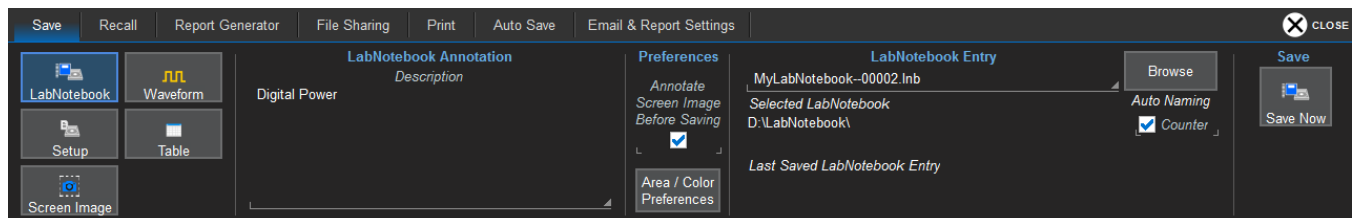
LabNotebooks can be output to a preformatted .PDF, .RTF, or .HTML report.

Save LabNotebook

All LabNotebook files (.LNB) are composed of a screen image (.PNG), a setup file (LSS), and a waveform file (.TRC) for each waveform displayed. When creating LabNotebooks, you choose how to handle the screen image component, which is the basis for the Report Generator output, and to which you can add a description and other hand-drawn annotations.



Note: We strongly recommend that you stop acquisition before saving LabNotebooks, especially when running in Auto trigger mode. If you do not first stop, there is no guarantee that what you are capturing is what you want to save.



1. Choose **File > Save LabNotebook** from the menu bar.
2. Optionally, enter a **Description**. This text appears whenever the file is recalled and on reports.
3. To mark up the image using the drawing tools, select **Annotate Screen Image Before Saving**.

To skip this step, deselect the checkbox. You can recall the LabNotebook later to add a description and annotations.

4. To change the area of the screen captured and the colors used, touch **Area/Color Preferences** and make your selections on the pop-up. Touch **Close** to save your changes.
 - Use Print Colors (default) uses your print color palette (set in Preferences) on a white background to save ink. Deselect this to capture the display using a black background as it appears on the instrument.
 - Grid Area Only includes any visible waveform grids, tables, and descriptor boxes.
 - DSO Window includes the above plus any open dialogs, menu bar, and message bar.
 - Full Screen is the full Windows display, including other visible applications and wallpaper.

5. The system will auto name the file "MyLabNotebook" followed by a counter number. To change this to something more descriptive, enter the name in **LabNotebook Entry**, or touch **Browse** and [use the File Browser](#).



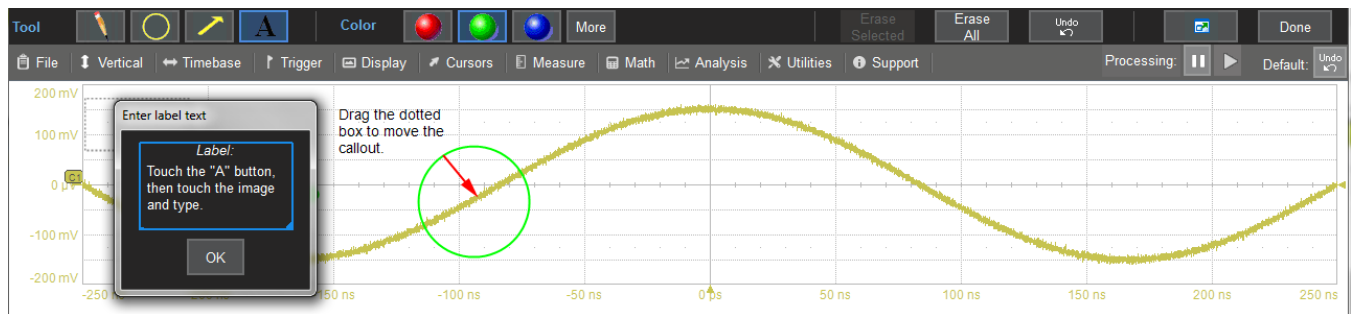
Note: Changing the file path, name or format resets the counter to the next number in that sequence.

6. If you do not want to use autonumbering to identify files, deselect **Counter**.
7. Touch **Save Now**.
8. If annotating, use the [Drawing toolbar](#) to mark up the screen image. Click **Done** when finished.

LabNotebook Drawing Toolbar

The basic LabNotebook is a screen capture of the display as it was at the time of entry, along with the setup and waveform data. If you have selected to Annotate Screen Image Before Saving, the capture is immediately displayed in the Drawing window. You can later add Annotations by [recalling the LabNotebook](#) into the Preview window and choosing to Annotate Screen Image.

Markup tools are available from the toolbar along the top of the window.



To use any tool, touch the icon, then touch on the image where you wish to draw or add text. From left to right, the tools are:

Tool	Function
Pencil	Draw in freehand. Maintain contact with the screen to make a continuous mark. Once you release, you can touch-and-drag the object to any point on the image.
Circle	Draw a circle around a waveform feature that you want to emphasize. Touch-and-drag across the diameter of the circle. When you release, the circle is placed. You can drag the circle to any location on the image.
Arrow	Draw lines with arrowheads for placing callouts. You can rotate these lines through 360 degrees or drag them to any location on the image.
Text	Open a textbox for placing labels/annotations on the image. Touch the point on the image to place the label, then enter the text in the pop-up dialog. Once placed, you can resize the textbox or drag it to any location on the image.
RGB Selectors	Quickly change the line color. Just touch the color icon, then choose the next drawing tool.
More	Activates a Custom line color field. The default color is Yellow. To choose another, touch the color swatch, then select from the Color dialog. You can enter RGB values, or choose from the spectrum. After saving, the new color appears in the Custom field. This remains the markup color until you choose another.
Erase / Erase All	Remove selected drawing objects. Erase All will also undo any Custom color selection.
Undo	Cancel the last action. Use it to restore any objects you inadvertently erased.
Move	Undock the drawing toolbar so you can move it anywhere on the display. This helps to keep tools handy when working on a particular area of a waveform. Touch the button again to restore the toolbar to the top of the Drawing window.
Done	Save the annotations with the image and close the Drawing window.

Recall LabNotebook

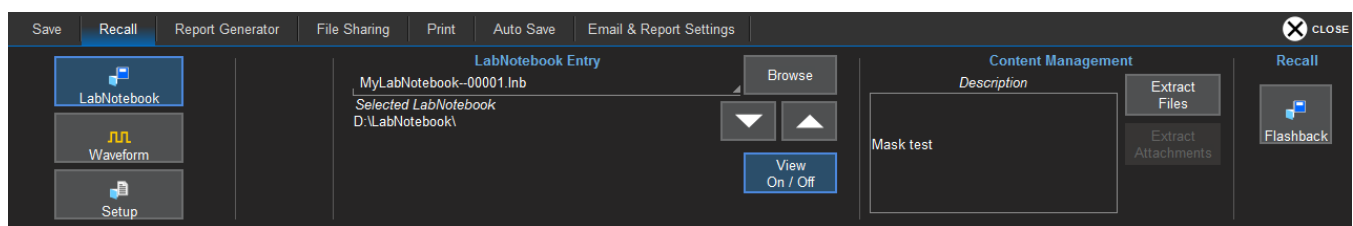
Once a LabNotebook Entry is saved, you can either:

- **Recall** the screen image to view/modify the description, or manage attachments and component files.
- **Flashback** to restore the oscilloscope application to the state saved in the LabNotebook file. If you are using MAUI Studio Pro, this will change the configuration to that of the oscilloscope on which the LabNotebook file was saved, including all its installed software options.



Note: LabNotebooks saved in the legacy .ZIP format do not support MAUI Studio Pro enhanced LabNotebook features. The file must have been created in the new .LNB format using either MAUI Studio Pro, or MAUI firmware v.9.5.x.x or later.

Choose **File > Recall LabNotebook** from the menu bar. The last selected file will open in the Preview window.



Edit Description

You can modify the description and annotations saved with the LabNotebook Entry. Setups and waveform data originally saved with the LabNotebook cannot be changed.

1. Browse to and select the **LabNotebook Entry**.
2. Select **View On/Off** to preview the file.
3. From the top of the preview window, choose **Edit Description**.
4. Touch the pop-up description to open the virtual keyboard and edit the text.
5. Touch **OK** twice to save changes.

Annotate Screen Image

1. Browse to and select the **LabNotebook Entry**.
2. Select **View On/Off** to preview the file.
3. From the top of the preview window, choose **Annotate Screen Image** and use the [drawing tools](#).
4. Click **Done** when finished to close the Drawing window and return to the preview.

Manage Attachments

To append external files to the LabNotebook composite (such as images of the DUT, mask files, test scripts, etc.):

1. Browse to and select the **LabNotebook Entry**.
2. Select **View On/Off** to preview the file.
3. From the top of the preview window, choose **Manage Attachments** and select the files to attach. The file list

will build in the lower part of the File Attachments browser.

4. Click **Update Attachments** to finish.

To later remove appended files, click Manage Attachments and deselect the files from the list. Update Attachments again to refresh the list.

Convert File Format

Individual entries in legacy .ZIP format Notebooks can be converted to the new LabNotebook file format.

1. In the LabNotebook Entry field, **Browse** to and select the legacy .zip file from the File Browser.



Note: Be sure to select the .zip file from the left side navigation pane so that its sub-entries appear in the right pane, the Save buttons are active, and the file name appears in Current Path.

2. To batch convert all into separate LabNotebooks, on the file browser choose **Save All As LNB Files**.

To convert a single entry, select it from the **Name** list (right side), then choose **Save As LNB File**.

New LabNotebooks of the same name as the original entries are created in the D:\XPort folder. These can be selected the same as any other .LNB files for Flashback, editing, reports, or extraction.

Extract Files

The component files that make up the LabNotebook composite (.PNG, .LSS, and .TRC) and any appended files can be extracted into separate files.

1. Enter the path to the **LabNotebook Entry**, or **Browse** to the file.
2. To extract all files, under Content Management, choose **Extract Files**.

To extract only the attachments, choose **Extract Attachments**.

3. Navigate to the folder where you want the files extracted, and choose **Extract Now**. A folder of the same name as the original LabNotebook with the separate files will be created at that location.

Flashback

Flashback restores the waveforms and setups saved with the LabNotebook Entry to the screen. For MAUI Studio Pro users, Flashback will also cause the oscilloscope application to simulate the oscilloscope on which the LabNotebook was originally captured, including all its installed software options.

1. Choose **File > Recall LabNotebook**, then enter the path to the **LabNotebook Entry**, or touch **Browse** and navigate to the file.
2. Select the **Flashback** button.
3. To exit the Flashback, select the **Undo** button at the far right of the menu bar.

Some result data *not* included in the Flashback are:

- **Persistence data**, although it is saved with the .LNB file and appears on reports.
- **Histogram data** over 16 bits.
- **Floating point waveforms** resulting from certain math functions that have much higher resolution than 16 bits. This extra resolution is not preserved when traces are recalled using Flashback.
- **Cumulative Measurements** in process when Flashback is entered. When Flashback is used, they lose their history and show only results from the stored waveforms, not including data taken from interim acquisitions.

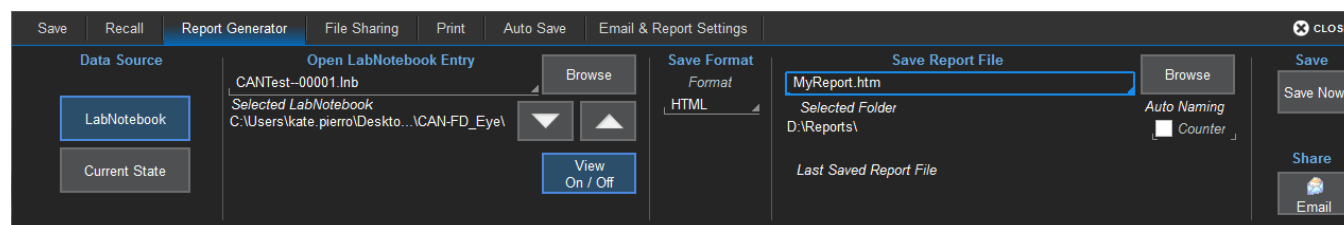
Report Generator

The Report Generator feature allows you to output a preformatted report consisting of an annotated screen image and a summary of the setups in place when it was captured. The report can be sourced from an existing LabNotebook, or it can be newly generated from the current state of the oscilloscope.

The logo and template used to create the report can be changed on the [Email & Report Settings](#) dialog.

Generate from LabNotebook

This procedure outputs an existing source as is. If you want to further annotate or change the description of a LabNotebook file, first [recall the LabNotebook](#).



1. Choose **File > Report Generator** from the menu bar.
2. **Browse** to and select the **LabNotebook Entry**. If it is in the Selected Folder, just use the Up/Down Arrow keys to select it.
3. Optionally, use **View On/Off** to preview the selected file.
4. Choose a **Save Format** of HTML, .RTF, or .PDF.



Note: Only HTML reports can later be saved to .RTF or .PDF format. The .RTF and .PDF reports can only be combined into another report of the same format.

5. By default, the system will auto name the file "Report" followed by a counter number. To change the file name or the Selected Folder, enter the full path and name in **Save Report File**, or touch **Browse** and [use the File Browser](#). By default, report files are saved to the D:\Xport folder on the instrument hard drive.



Note: Changing the file path, name or format will reset the counter to the next number in sequence.

6. If you do not want to use autonumbering, deselect **Counter**.
7. To save the report, choose **Save Now**.

Generate from Current State

If you are creating a report from the current state of the instrument, you will also be able to enter a new **Description**, **Annotate Screen Image**, and select your capture **Area/Color Preferences** as when first creating a LabNotebook. See [Save LabNotebook](#).

However, when generating from Current State, you will not have saved a composite .LNB file that can later be recalled or extracted into its component files. You will only have the preformatted report file.

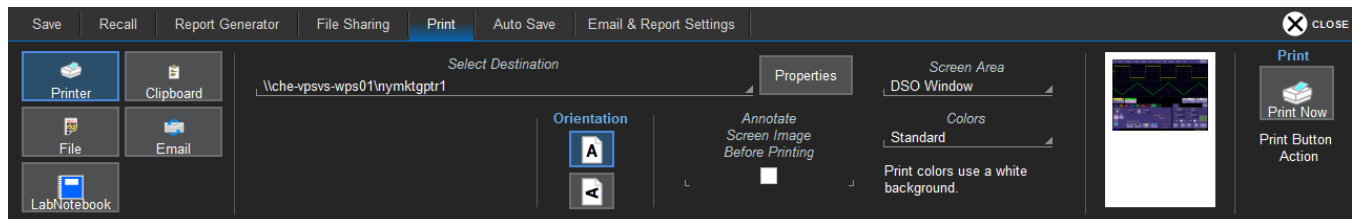
Print

Print dialog settings control how the oscilloscope's front panel Print button behaves.

Print captures an image of the touch screen display, but there are several options as to what it does next with the image:

- Send it to a **Printer** as formatted here.
- Copy it to the Windows **Clipboard**
- Save it to an image **File** using your current [Screen Image Preferences](#)
- **Email** an image file using your current [Screen Image Preferences](#) and [Email Preferences](#)
- Create a new **LabNotebook** file using your current [LabNotebook Preferences](#)

The **Print Now** button at the far right of the dialog can also be used to execute your current Print selection.



Printer Settings

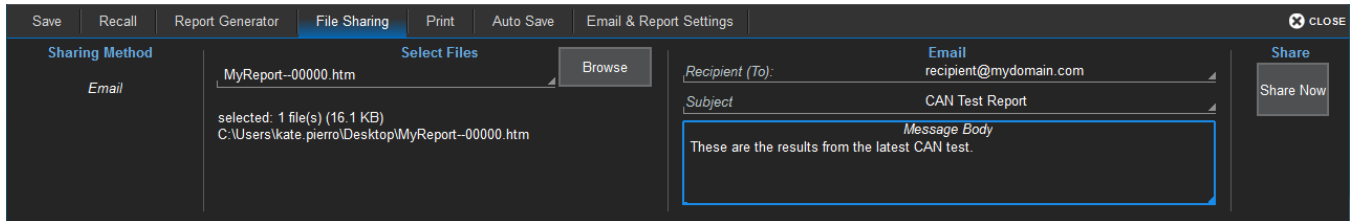
1. Touch **Select Destination** and choose a printer.
2. Touch **Properties** to change any of the printer properties.
3. Choose a paper orientation of **Portrait** or **Landscape**.
4. Select **Annotate Before Saving** to mark up captures before they print. Each time you press Print, the capture will open in the [Drawing Tools](#) window. When you are **Done** drawing, the image prints.

Capture Settings

1. Select a **Screen Area**:
 - Grid Area Only includes any visible waveform grids, tables, and descriptor boxes.
 - DSO Window includes the above plus any open dialogs, menu bar, and message bar.
 - Full Screen is the full Windows display, including other visible applications and wallpaper.
2. Choose the **Colors** used in the capture:
 - Standard uses a black background as it appears on the instrument.
 - Print uses your [print color palette](#) (set in Utilities > Preference Setup) on a white background
 - Black & White captures the image in grayscale.

File Sharing Dialog (send email)

Use the File Sharing dialog to email files from the instrument.



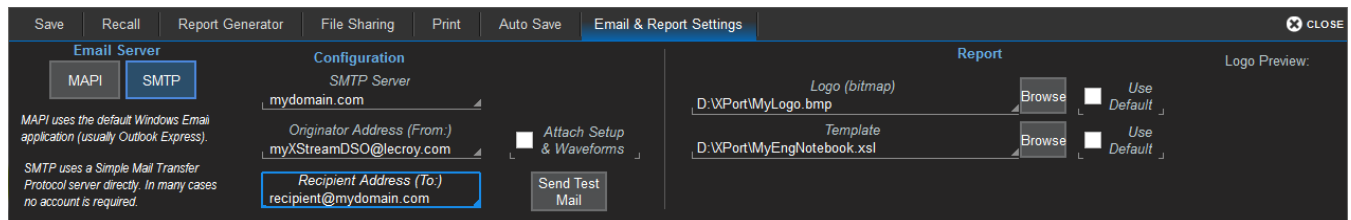
1. Choose **File > File Sharing** from the menu bar.
2. [Use the File Browser](#) to select all the files to be emailed. Use CTRL + Click to select multiple files.
3. Optionally, change the email **Recipient(s)**. This field defaults to whatever is in your email settings.
4. Enter a **Subject** line and **Message Body**, then **Share Now**.

Email & Report Settings

Configure oscilloscope email settings and report output on the Email & Report Settings dialog.



Note: If using MAUI Studio Pro, these email settings can be pushed to a connected oscilloscope, but they will not affect email on your PC. The report settings apply to reports created from LabNotebook files or the current state of a connected oscilloscope.



Email Settings

1. Select to use **MAPI** or **SMTP**.
2. If you chose SMTP, touch **SMTP Server** and enter the network address of your mail server.
3. Touch **Originator Address (From:)** and enter the instrument's e-mail address.
4. Touch **Default Recipient Address (To:)** and enter the recipient's e-mail address.
5. Optionally, select to always **Attach Setup & Waveforms** associated with image files selected for email.
6. Use **Send Test Mail** to send a confirmation message to ensure proper e-mail configuration.

Report Settings

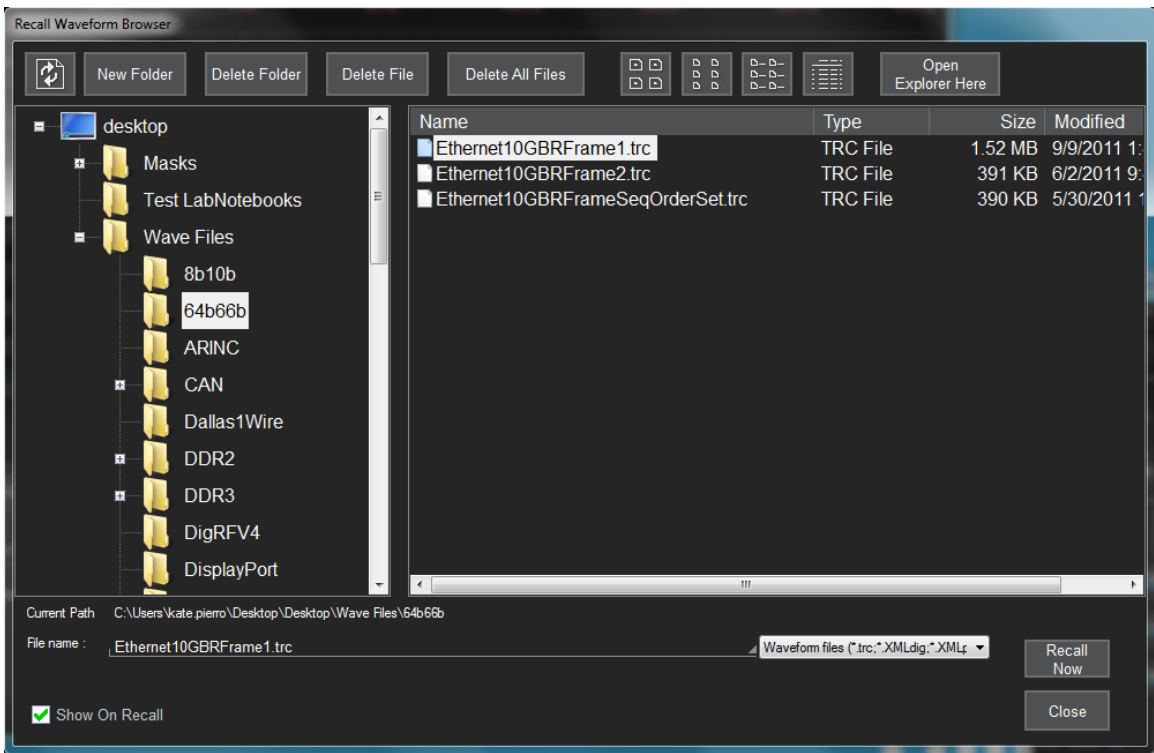
The default report template uses our logo as a placeholder. You can replace this with your logo. Logo files should be in bitmap (.bmp) format and not exceed 100 pixels high by 180 pixels wide. Place the file in the oscilloscope's D:\Xport folder.

You can also use your own report template. Templates must be saved as .xsl or .xslt files and placed in the D:\Xport folder.

Deselect **Use Default** next to each item you want changed, then **Browse** to and select the new files.

Using the File Browser

Selecting **Browse** on any of the File menu dialogs opens a File Browser that enables you to perform basic disk utility functions, as well as making file path/name and format selections.



Disk Utilities

New Folder, **Delete Folder**, **Delete File**, and **Delete All Files** can be used to change your file system prior to saving new files. Be sure to first select the folder from the navigator (left) and file from the file list (right).

The buttons immediately above the file list let you change how items appear in the browser: icons only, details, etc.

File Path and Name

Use the navigator pane to the right to browse directories on the internal hard drive or USB drive. To select an existing file to copy, move, change name, etc, use the file list to the right of the navigator. When an editable file is selected, the **Current Path** and **File Name** are shown immediately below the navigator pane.

If you do not see the file you seek, try using the drop-down next to **File name** to change the file type to "All files (*.*)".

Auto Naming Selections

The checkboxes to turn on/off the **Source** prefix and the **Counter** number suffix used to autogenerate file names will appear on the File Browser when saving files. These selections are linked to those on the underlying dialog, and changing the value in either place causes it to change everywhere.



Note: If you change any part of the file path/name or format on the File Browser or the dialog, the Counter number will reset to the last number in the sequence associated with that value.

Example: Changing "Decode1-Table-0002" to "Decode1-CANFDTTable-..." will reset the counter to "Decode1-CANFDTTable-0000" if there is no prior file named "Decode1-CANFDTTable-..." .

Actions

The **Close** button accepts the selections you made on the File Browser and closes the browser window. If you do not need to make further entries on the dialog to complete your task, you can choose to Save, Recall, Flashback, Email, etc. right from the File Browser.

Utilities & Preferences

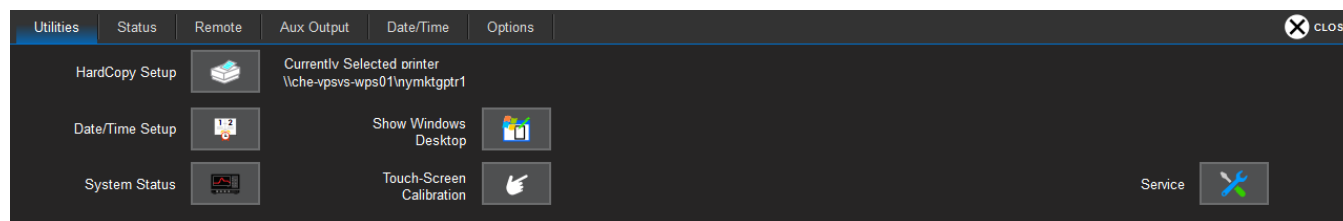
The settings in this group allow you to customize the appearance and performance of the oscilloscope.

Utilities

Utilities settings primarily control the instrument's interaction with other devices and systems.

To access the Utilities dialogs, choose **Utilities > Utilities Setup...** from the menu bar.

Utilities Dialog



Hardcopy (Print) Setup, Date/Time Setup and System Status buttons open their corresponding setup dialogs.

Show Windows Desktop minimizes the oscilloscope application window. Maximize the application by touching the display icon located at the lower-right of the desktop.

[Touch-Screen Calibration](#) launches a sequence of display calibration screens. You will be prompted through a series of actions to improve the precision and accuracy of the touch screen.

The **Service** button to the far right of the dialog launches a section of the application reserved for qualified Teledyne LeCroy service personnel. An access code is required to enter this section.

Status

The Utilities Status dialog displays information about your instrument including model number, serial number, firmware version, and installed hardware and software options.

Choose **Utilities > Utilities Setup** from the menu bar, then touch the **Status tab**.

Or

Choose **Support > About** from the menu bar.

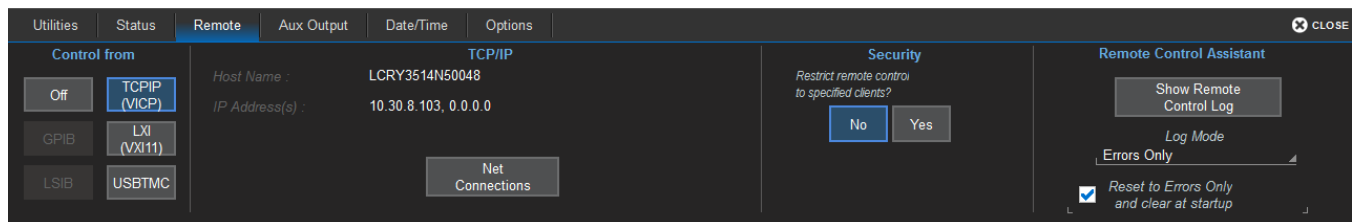
Remote Control

The Remote dialog contains settings to configure remote control of the instrument and also network access. Supported remote control protocols are:

- **TCPIP (Ethernet)**. Choose this if you wish to connect to the oscilloscope remotely from MAUI Studio Pro. The instrument uses Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) as its default addressing protocol. You can assign a static IP address using the standard Windows network setup menus.
- **LXI (Ethernet)**. To use this option on Windows 10 oscilloscopes, you must supply the Admin. user password.
- **USBTMC**
- **GPIB**. This selection is active if you are using the USB2-GPIB adapter. Connect the adapter from any USB port on the oscilloscope to the GPIB port on the controller.



Note: See the [MAUI Oscilloscopes Remote Control and Automation Manual](#) for full instructions on making the remote connection and sending remote commands, particularly if you wish to do so using fully automated remote control/automation programs, instead of MAUI Studio Pro. A commented copy of the Waveform Template (.tpl) file is installed on the oscilloscope in C:\Program Files\LeCroy\XStream. Open this ASCII file using any text editor to better understand the MAUI architecture for transferring waveform data to and from the oscilloscope.



Set Up Remote Control

1. From the menu bar, choose **Utilities > Utilities Setup**, then touch the **Remote** tab.
2. On the **Remote** dialog, make a **Control From** selection.
3. If using TCPIP and wish to restrict control to specific network clients, choose **Yes** under Security. Enter the IP addresses or DNS names of the authorized controllers in a comma-delimited list.

Remote Control Assistant Event Log

The Remote Control Assistant monitors communication between the controller and instrument. You can log all transfers or errors only, and the log can be output to an ASCII file.

1. From the menu bar, choose **Utilities > Utilities Setup**, then touch the **Remote** tab.
2. Under **Remote Control Assistant**, touch **Log Mode** and choose **Off**, **Errors Only**, or **Full Dialog**.
3. To always clear the log at startup, check **Reset to Errors Only and clear at startup**.

Export Contents of the Event Log

1. From the menu bar, choose **Utilities > Utilities Setup**, then touch the **Remote** tab.
2. Touch the **Show Remote Control Log** button. The Event Logs pop-up is shown.

3. Enter a log file name in **DestFilename**, or touch Browse and navigate to an existing file.

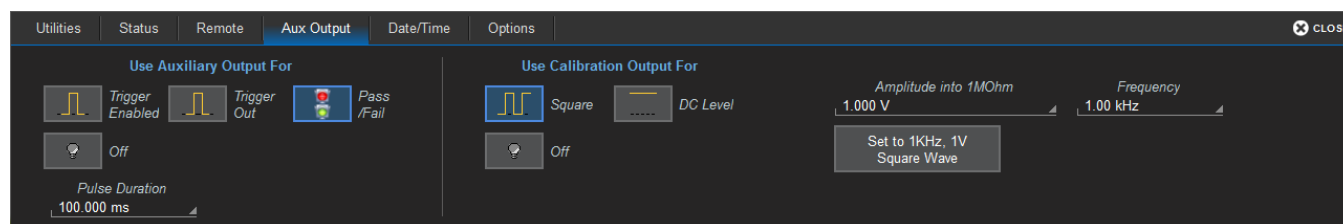


Note: New contents will overwrite the existing content; it is not appended.

4. Touch **Export to Text File**.

Auxiliary Output

Use the Aux Output dialog to configure the output of the **Aux Out** port and **Cal Out** port.



Auxiliary Output

The Aux Out port outputs a configurable pulse of up to 1 V into high impedance following the selected event:

- **Trigger Enabled** sends a pulse when the trigger is ready (Ready indicator lit), but not necessarily triggered. It can be used as a gating function to trigger another instrument.
- **Trigger Out** sends a pulse upon a trigger (TRIG'D Indicator lit). If available, enter the desired **Pulse Duration**.
- **Pass/Fail** sends a pulse when Pass/Fail test conditions are met. Enter the desired **Pulse Duration**. Be sure to also select Pulse Aux Out on the Pass/Fail [Actions](#) dialog.

Off disables output.

Calibration Output

On models equipped with a Cal Out hook on the front of the instrument, use these settings to configure the output signal :

- For a **Square** wave signal, enter the **Frequency** and **Amplitude into 1 MΩ**, or choose to **Set to 1 kHz, 1 V Square Wave**.
- For a reference **DC Level**, enter an **Amplitude into 1 MΩ**.

Off disables output.

Date/Time

Date/Time settings control the instrument's timestamp. These numbers appear in the message bar and on tables/records internal to the oscilloscope application, such as History Mode and WaveScan.



Note: On Windows 10 oscilloscopes, you must run MAUI with elevated privileges to change the Windows Date/Time settings. Consult your IT department for the current Admin. password.

To run with elevated privileges:

1. Exit MAUI by choosing **File > Exit** from the menu bar.
2. Right-click on the **Start DSO** icon and choose **Run as administrator**.
3. Enter the Admin. user **LCRYADMIN** and current Admin. **password**.
4. After MAUI has restarted, access the Date/Time dialog by choosing **Utilities > Utilities Setup** from the menu bar, then touch the **Date/Time** tab.

Manual Method

Enter the **Hour**, **Minute**, **Second**, **Day**, **Month**, and **Year**, then touch the **Validate Changes** button.

Internet Method

This method uses the Simple Network Time Protocol (SNTP) to read the time from time-a.nist.gov. The instrument must be connected to an internet access device through a LAN (Ethernet) port.

If your oscilloscope has an active internet connection, simply touch the **Set from Internet** button.

Windows Method

To set date and time using the internal Windows system clock, touch the **Windows Date/Time** button. This displays the standard Windows **Date and Time Properties** pop-up dialog, where you can further configure these settings.

Options

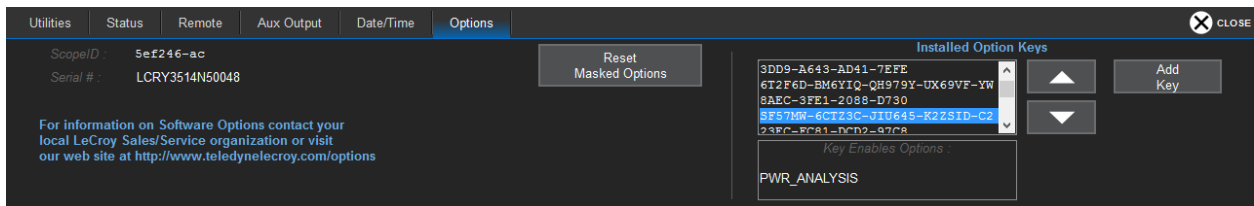
Many optional software packages are available to extend the Analysis functions of the instrument. When you purchase an option, you will receive a key code by email that activates the new functionality. Use the oscilloscope **Options** dialog to activate options by installing the key code.



Note: This dialog also displays the **ScopeID** and **Serial #**, which may need to be supplied when purchasing an option.

To install a key code:

1. From the menu bar, choose **Utilities > Utilities Setup**, then open the **Options** tab.



2. Touch **Add Key**. The Virtual Keyboard appears onscreen.
3. Use the Virtual Keyboard to type the key code in the **Enter Option Key** field.



Note: For oscilloscopes using firmware version 8.1.x.x or earlier, the legacy 16-digit key code must be used.

4. Touch **OK** or press Enter to enter the information. The key code is added to the list of Installed Option Keys.



Tip: You can use the Up/Down buttons to scroll the list of keys. The software option that each key activates is displayed below the list.

5. If finished, choose **Yes** to restart the oscilloscope application, or click **Cancel** to enter additional option keys. Restart the oscilloscope after entering the last key code.
6. After restarting, check the list of installed software options by choosing **Help > About** from the menu bar. If the installed options are not listed, then a firmware upgrade may be required.

The latest firmware is available on our website at: [Resources > Software Downloads](#).

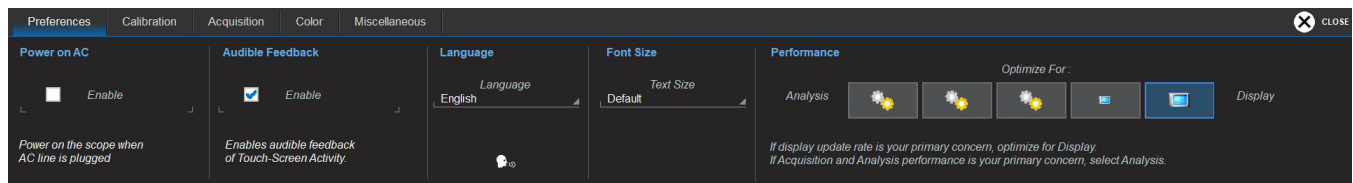
If you have any problems installing key codes on your Teledyne LeCroy oscilloscope, please call 1-800-5-LeCroy (1-800-553-2769) or email support@teledynelecroy.com for further assistance.

Preferences

Preference settings have mostly to do with the appearance and performance of the instrument itself, rather than its interaction with other devices/systems. Most of these settings are called "non-volatile," because they are not lost when the oscilloscope is restarted and do not change when a setup panel is recalled.

Access the Preferences dialogs by choosing **Utilities > Preference Setup...** from the menu bar.

Preferences Dialog



On the main Preferences dialog:

Power on AC will turn on the oscilloscope and launch the software as soon as you connect to AC power, without having to first press the Power button.

Audible Feedback controls the instrument's audio output. Select this box to hear a beep each time you touch a screen or front panel control.

Language sets the language used on the touch screen display.

Font Size changes the size of the text that appears on the touch screen display.



Tip: The best way to change font size and other screen settings on Windows 10 oscilloscopes is to swipe from the right of the touch screen to display the Action Center, then choose All Settings > System Settings and make your selections.

Performance settings let you optimize performance for either **Analysis** (speed of acquisition and calculation) or **Display** (speed of update/refresh). For example, if you are concerned with persistence or averaging, you might optimize for Analysis, giving higher priority to waveform acquisition at the expense of display update rate. Choices are presented as a spectrum.

Calibration

Calibration ensures that the output from the analog-to-digital converters (ADCs) accurately represents the input. The oscilloscope is calibrated at the factory prior to shipment at all possible horizontal and vertical settings at 23 °C (± 2 °C). This calibration remains on the oscilloscope as a baseline and is never deleted. It is used in default of any more current calibrations.

So that the oscilloscope maintains specified performance, both cached and dynamic calibration routines are used during operation, depending on model.



Note: After power on, warm the oscilloscope for at least 20 min. to ensure it reaches a stable operating temperature. A message on the Calibration dialog alerts you when the oscilloscope is still in the warm-up phase. Specifications are not guaranteed during warm up.

High Definition Oscilloscopes (HDO, HD and MDA models) utilize Temperature Dependent Calibration to maintain gain accuracy. To avoid dynamic recalibration and minimize disruptions, the oscilloscope uses cached calibration files that cover a particular combination of vertical and horizontal settings over a temperature range.

Whenever you acquire, the oscilloscope checks the current temperature. If the temperature has changed beyond the calibration threshold (shown in the table below) since last acquisition, it loads the most recent calibration within threshold of the current temperature. If there is no calibration within threshold of the current temperature, it loads the calibration closest to the current temperature (regardless of age), and you will receive a message on the Calibration dialog that manual calibration is recommended. Depending on the model, additional dynamic calibrations may occur when outside threshold.

Model	Calibration Threshold...	Action at Acquisition...
HDO4000A HDO6000B	± 5 °C of last temperature at current acquisition settings	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Checks temp and if outside threshold loads most recent cached cal file within threshold of current temp• If no cal file within threshold of current temp, loads closest temp and recommends manual calibration
MDA/WaveRunner 8000HD	± 5 °C of last temperature at current acquisition settings	Automatic Calibration checked on Preferences dialog: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Checks temp and if outside threshold loads most recent cached cal file within threshold of current temp• If no cal file within threshold of current temp, loads closest temp and recommends manual calibration Automatic Calibration unchecked on Preferences dialog:* <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Stops temperature check• Continues to use last cal file loaded for current setup; cal file changes only when acquisition settings change, using closest to last temperature recorded when Automatic Calibration disabled
WavePro HD	± 5 °C of last temperature at current acquisition settings	For acquisitions ≤ 1 GHz: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Checks temp and if outside threshold loads most recent cached cal file within threshold of current temp• If there is no cal file within threshold of current temp, dynamically recalibrates current setup For acquisitions > 1 GHz, checks temp and if outside threshold dynamically recalibrates current settings.
WaveMaster 8000HD	± 3 °C of last temperature at current acquisition settings	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Within range of ~ 20-35 °C, checks temp and if outside threshold loads most recent cached cal file within threshold of current temp• Outside range of ~ 20-35 °C, dynamically recalibrates current setup whenever temperature varies by ± 3 °C of the last calibration temperature

* This is also the behavior on oscilloscopes where Temperature Dependent Calibration was turned off using COM Automation.

It is also possible to manually re-calibrate the oscilloscope prior to acquisition for maximum accuracy. We recommend manually re-calibrating when:

- The ambient temperature is known to have ranged outside the calibration threshold since last acquisition
- Your last manual calibration was performed:
 - Over one month ago for HDO4000A and HDO6000B
 - Over six months ago for MDA/WaveRunner 8000HD, WavePro HD and WaveMaster 8000HD

From the menu bar, choose **Utilities > Calibration**. The Status section of the Calibration dialog will tell you if "Calibration is recommended" for the current acquisition settings and environmental conditions.

There are two manual calibration routines available for selection:

- **Calibrate All** calibrates all possible combinations of vertical and horizontal settings. This calibration is valid for the current temperature plus/minus the calibration threshold and may take over an hour.



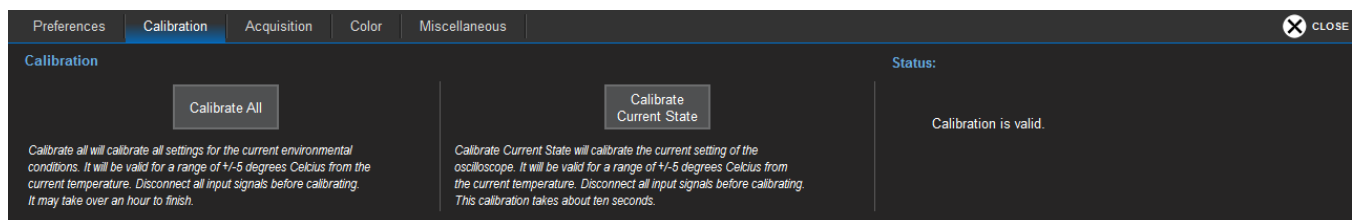
Tip: To avoid deleting good calibration files, be sure your Windows clock is set correctly before Calibrate All.

- **Calibrate Current Setting** calibrates the current vertical and horizontal settings. This calibration is valid *for these settings only* at the current temperature plus/minus the calibration threshold and takes ~10 seconds.



Caution: Remove all inputs prior to calibrating the oscilloscope.

The Calibration dialog will inform you when the calibration is complete and valid.



Calibration Status Messages

Following are Calibration messages you may see on oscilloscopes with Temperature-Dependent Calibration:

Message...	Means...
System is warming up...	The oscilloscope has not reached a stable operating temperature. Specifications are not guaranteed.
Calibration is valid	Calibration status is good; no action is required.
Calibration is recommended	The temperature is outside threshold of any available cal file, <i>or</i> it has been more than six months since the last calibration (WaveRunner 8000HD, WavePro HD and WaveMaster 8000HD). You should perform a manual calibration of at least the current setup.
The calibration database has encountered a problem. Please contact service department.	The calibration data table is corrupted. Cease operation and contact Service.

Disabling Temperature Dependent Calibration

Temperature Dependent Calibration can be de-activated using COM Automation by setting the CVAR:

`app.Acquisition.AutoCal = 0`

This stops the temperature check and substitution of the calibration file in use at time of acquisition. The system will continue to run with the last set of calibration files at the last temperature recorded.

If you need to ensure the use of a particular calibration temperature for testing, we recommend that you:

1. Bring the oscilloscope to temperature (and maintain it there).
2. Make a short acquisition to reset the temperature.
3. Disable Temperature Dependent Calibration.
4. Invoke Calibrate All.

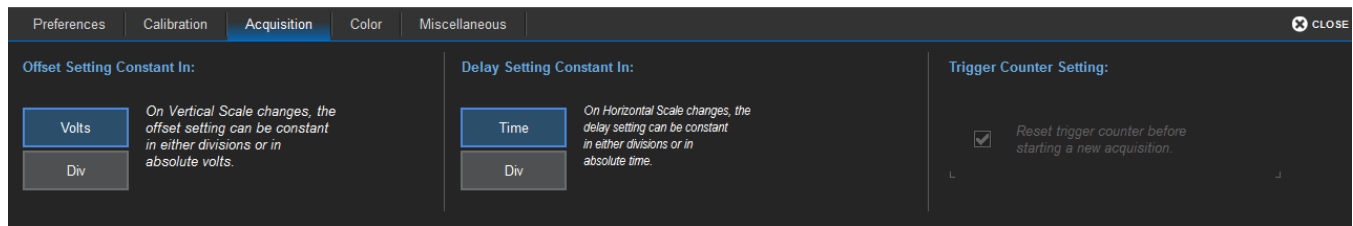
This will ensure the correct temperature calibration remains in use at all settings.



Note: The Automatic Calibration setting cannot be saved to the oscilloscope's non-volatile setup panel and will revert to "On" (1) with each start up. You must reset this anytime you power on the oscilloscope either manually or through Automation command.

Acquisition

The Acquisition preference settings determine how traces behave as Vertical Offset or Horizontal Delay changes. Choose **Utilities > Preference Setup** to open the **Acquisition** dialog.



Offset Setting constant in:

- **Volts** keeps the amount of Offset in the amount of Volts specified, regardless of the V/div setting. As the Offset is adjusted, the trace will appear to move up or down relative to the zero level.
- **Div(isions)** keeps the Vertical Offset level indicator stationary. The waveform remains on the grid as you change V/div, but your Offset value will change.

Delay Setting constant in:

- **Time** keep the Horizontal Delay at the amount of time specified, regardless of the Time/div setting. The Horizontal Delay indicator moves relative to the 0 point at the center of the grid.
- **Div(isions)** keeps the Horizontal Delay indicator stationary. The trigger point remains on the grid as you increase the timebase; whereas, if Time is selected, the trigger point could move off the grid.



Note: Whenever Div is selected, values are scaled proportional to the change in gain or timebase, thereby keeping the division of the grid constant.

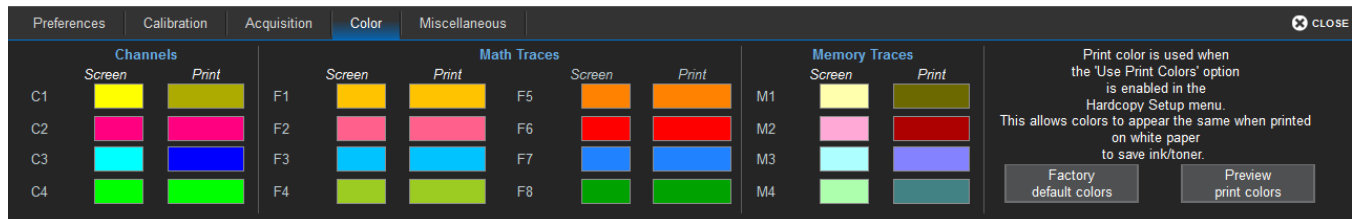
Trigger Counter Setting is selected by default. It clears the trigger counter each time a new acquisition command is sent. It is only made active for deselection when trigger Holdoff is set.

Color

Color dialog settings assign the colors used for channel, math, and memory traces. All dialogs, tables, and trace descriptor boxes will match the color of the trace assigned here. You can choose different colors to be used on the instrument and in print.



Note: Print colors are used only when the Colors control is set to Print on any of the File menu dialogs (Save Screen Image, Print, etc.). Otherwise, the Screen colors are used for print output as well as on screen.



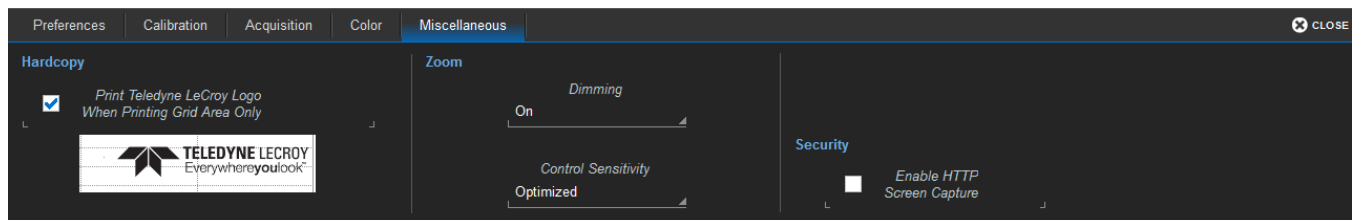
To make any setting, just touch the color swatch for either Screen or Print next to the trace number, and make a selection from the Color pop-up menu.

For convenience, you can **Preview print colors** to see how the settings will appear in print output.

Touch **Factory default colors** to recall the original color settings for your instrument.

Miscellaneous

These other Preference settings are located on the **Miscellaneous** dialog.



To add the Teledyne LeCroy logo to print output, check **Print Teledyne LeCroy Logo When Printing Grid Area Only**. This identifies the instrument as the source of the image.

Dimming darkens/shades those areas of the source waveform that are not part of the Zoom trace.

Control Sensitivity adjusts the sensitivity of the front panel knobs. **Optimized** applies an acceleration algorithm to the knobs. **Legacy** detects rotation of the front panel knobs in a manner similar to our legacy oscilloscopes.

Serial Decode Annotation Position: If you have Serial Trigger or Decode options installed on your instrument, this control determines the placement of annotation labels relative to the trace line. It does not appear if there are no installed options.

- **On Trace** places the label close to the line.
- **On Noisy Trace** sets the label further away to accommodate potential noise spikes in the trace.

Check **Enable HTTP Screen Capture** to enable remote capture of the touch screen display over a network. This setting is required to use the instrument with the WaveStudio software.

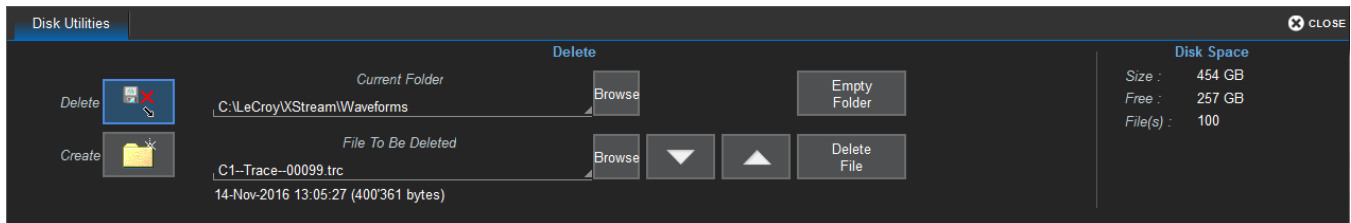
Disk Utilities

Use the Disk Utilities dialog to manage files and folders on your instrument's hard drive. Disk Space information is shown at the far right of the dialog for convenience.



Note: These tasks can also be accomplished using the standard Microsoft Windows file management tools. Choose **File > Minimize** to access the Windows desktop and task bar.

Access the **Disk Utilities** dialog by selecting **Utilities > Disk Utilities** from the menu bar.



Delete a Single File

1. Touch the **Delete** button.
2. **Browse** to the current folder containing the file.
3. **Browse** to the file to be deleted, or use the **Up** and **Down** arrow buttons to scroll through the files in the folder.
4. With the desired file selected, touch **Delete File**.

Delete All Files in a Folder

1. Touch the **Delete** button.
2. **Browse** to the current folder containing the file.
3. With the desired folder selected, touch **Empty Folder**.

Create a New Folder

1. Touch **Create**.
2. Touch **Current folder** and provide the full path to the new folder, including the folder name.
3. Touch **Create Folder**.

Digital Voltmeter

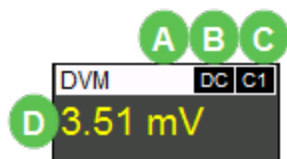
The Digital Voltmeter option activates an integrated 4-digit digital voltmeter and 5-digit frequency counter that operates through the same probes already attached to the oscilloscope channels.



Note: You do not need to display the source channel trace to see the voltage readout on the DVM descriptor box and dialog.

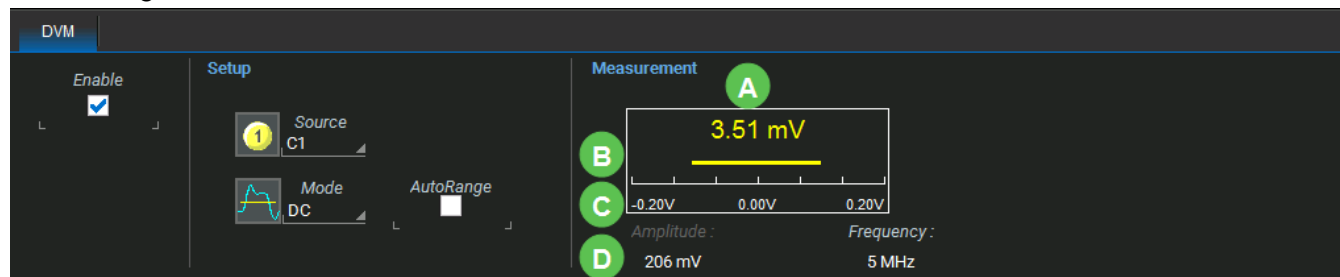
DVM Readout

DVM Descriptor Box



- A. AutoScale indicator; "A" when on, blank when off
- B. Mode
- C. Input channel measured
- D. Voltage readout, color coded to match input channel

DVM Dialog



- A. Last measured voltage
- B. Histogram of measured voltage
- C. Vertical range (in +/- divisions) of signal
- D. Amplitude and Frequency readout

Set Up DVM

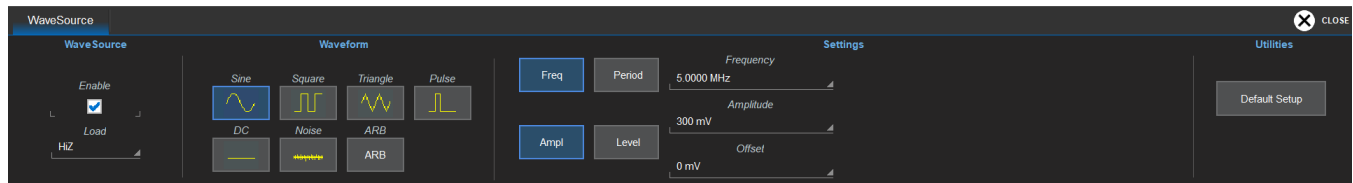
1. From the menu bar, choose **Utilities > DVM**.
2. Mark **Enable** to turn on the DVM function.
3. Touch **Source** and select the input channel to be measured.
4. Touch **Mode** and choose the waveform parameter to display on the readout. Options are:
 - DC
 - DC RMS
 - AC RMS
 - Frequency
5. Optionally, turn on **AutoRange**, which automatically adjusts the Vertical range and offset of the waveform as the amplitude changes so that measurements are always taken at the optimal resolution. When this option is selected, the letter A appears on the DVM descriptor readout.

WaveSource Arbitrary Function Generator

The WaveSource Arbitrary Function Generator allows you to output custom sine, square, triangle, pulse, DC, noise, and arbitrary waveforms from the oscilloscope.

Connect a BNC cable from the WaveSource output on the back of the oscilloscope to the external device. Output is continuous once WaveSource is enabled.

Output Standard Waveform



1. Choose **Utilities > WaveSource**.
2. Select the **Load** level.
3. Choose a **Waveform** type.
4. Depending on the type, waveforms may be configured using different groups of **Settings** (e.g., Frequency or Period, but not both). When you see buttons offering this choice, first select the group of settings to use.
5. Adjust settings (e.g., Frequency) by touching the field and turning the front panel Adjust knob, or touch twice and use the soft keypad to enter new values.

Touch **Default Setup** to restore the default waveform settings.

6. Check **Enable** to begin output.

Import and Output Arbitrary Waveform

You may import files defining arbitrary waveforms to be output from the function generator. Waveform files must be saved in **.csv** format to be loaded into WaveSource. Transfer the file to the oscilloscope from a USB drive or through MAUI Studio.

1. Choose **Utilities > WaveSource**.
2. Select the **Load** level.
3. Choose **Waveform** type **ARB**.
4. Touch **Browse** next to the File Name field and select the arbitrary waveform file. Touch **OK**.
5. Touch **Upload**.
6. Check **Enable** to begin output.



Note: When outputting arbitrary waveforms, the Frequency shown on the WaveSource dialog is the pattern repetition rate, not the actual frequency of any source waveform from which the waveform file was created. See the parameter definitions below.

Arbitrary Waveform File Syntax

	A	B
1	data length	16384
2	frequency	1000
3	amp	2
4	offset	0
5	phase	0
6		
7		
8		
9		
10		
11		
12		
13	xpos	value
14	1	0
15	2	-0.00012
16	3	-0.00024
17	4	-0.00037
18	5	-0.00049

Waveform files for use with WaveSource must be set up with header and data as shown in the image at left.

Following the header, each line contains the sample point Xpos number and vertical value.

Header Fields

Data Length - Total number of values that define the waveform. This total length will continue to repeat as long as the waveform is output.

Frequency - Waveform frequency in Hz. The waveform sample point interval will be $1/\text{frequency}$.

Amplitude - Waveform amplitude in Volts peak-peak (Vpp).

Offset - Waveform offset from 0 value, in Volts.

Phase - Waveform phase, in degrees.

Data Fields

Xpos - Index number of the sample point. Note Xpos defines a series; it does not define the actual X-axis value of the sample point.

Value - Vertical value of sample point, in Volts.

This information may be set up in a spreadsheet, as shown, then output to a comma-delimited .csv file for import.



Note: You must use a comma, not any other delimiter character, when saving the .csv file.

Maintenance

Topics in this section describe procedures for keeping the instrument in optimal working condition.

Cleaning

Clean only the exterior of the instrument using a soft cloth moistened with water or an isopropyl alcohol solution. Do not use harsh chemicals or abrasive elements. Under no circumstances submerge the instrument or allow moisture to penetrate it. Dry the instrument thoroughly before connecting a live voltage source.



Caution: Unplug the power cord before cleaning. Do not attempt to clean internal parts.

Restart/Reboot Instrument

To restart the oscilloscope application, choose **File > Exit** from the menu bar, then touch the **Start DSO** icon.

To reboot the instrument, which includes restarting the Windows OS:

1. From within the oscilloscope application, choose **File > Shutdown**.
2. Wait 10 seconds after the oscilloscope has fully shut down, then press the **Standby Power button** on the front of the instrument.

Restore Default Setup


The front panel **Default Setup** button restores all the volatile setups to the factory default state.

You can also restore default settings via the touch screen:

1. Choose **File > Recall Setup** from the menu bar.
2. Choose to Recall From **File**.
3. Under Recall Default touch **Recall Now**.

Changing Screen Settings

On Windows 10 instruments, MAUI software font size and other screen settings are now changed using the standard Windows controls, rather than through the MAUI application. The text font is set to display at 125% by default.

1. Swipe the touch screen from the right to display the Action Center.
2. Touch the **All Settings**  icon.
3. Choose **System** settings.
4. Make your selections from the Settings dialog. If prompted, enter the current oscilloscope Admin. password.
5. Swipe from the right again to return to MAUI.
6. Choose **File > Shutdown**, then press the Power button to reboot.



Touch Screen Calibration

Periodically calibrate the touch screen to maintain its accuracy and responsiveness. We recommend that you use a stylus rather than your finger for this procedure.

1. From the menu bar, choose **Utilities > Utilities Setup**.
2. On the Utilities main dialog, touch **Touch-Screen Calibration**.
3. Following the prompts, touch as close as possible to the center of each cross that appears on the screen until the calibration sequence is complete.

Switching Windows Users

To maintain the highest security profile, the oscilloscope is shipped to run as the Standard user, LeCroyUser. If you need to run as an Administrator, do the following to switch to LCRYADMIN. This will put the oscilloscope into a "legacy" mode where it will run most like it did on Windows 7.

1. Choose **File > Exit** to exit the oscilloscope application.
2. Open the Windows **Start menu** .
3. Hover over the Teledyne LeCroy logo  and select **user LCRYADMIN**.
4. Enter the current **LCRYADMIN password**.

To return to the default LeCroyUser account, repeat this procedure selecting **LeCroyUser** and entering the current user password.

You may create as many other new user accounts on the oscilloscope as you wish, provided you are logged in as LCRYADMIN when doing so.



Note: The oscilloscope will always reboot into the last active Standard user. The only way to change this is to make LeCroyUser (and all other users) an Administrator.

MAUI Firmware Update

Free MAUI® firmware updates are released periodically. You must register an account to download the software from our website. Registered users will receive an email notification when a new version is released.

The MAUI Software Setup Wizard can be used to install MAUI Studio® desktop software, MAUI oscilloscope firmware—including required DLLs, device drivers and low-level microcode for integrated circuits—or WavePulser software. The update *does not* modify or delete any saved panel setups, waveforms, screen captures, calibration constants, or other data stored on the oscilloscope D: drive.

Do **not** install MAUI Studio on an oscilloscope.



Note: To install software on Windows 10 oscilloscopes, you must supply the current oscilloscope LCRYADMIN password. On oscilloscopes shipped with unique passwords, a sticker on the oscilloscope body shows the password at time of shipment. Oscilloscopes without stickers were shipped with default password SCOPEADMIN. Check with your IT department/lab manager if passwords have been changed since receipt.

Download Instructions

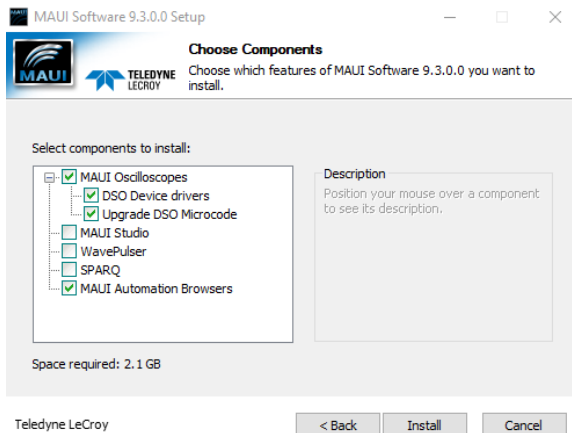
1. Visit the [software download page](#).
2. Select your **series** and **model number**.
3. Enter your registration **login** information, or create a new account. You cannot proceed without an account.
4. Click the **download** link, and choose to **Save** the installer to the oscilloscope Desktop or to a USB storage device for transfer to the instrument.

Installation Instructions



Caution: The installation can take several minutes. **Do not power down at any point during the process.**

1. From the oscilloscope menu bar, choose **File > Exit** to close MAUI.
2. Browse to **mauiinstaller64_<version>.exe** and double-click it to launch the setup wizard.
3. Enter the current **LCRYADMIN Password**.
4. Click **Next** to begin installation.
5. Review and accept the license agreement. Click **Next**.
6. For an oscilloscope update, select the checkboxes for:
 - **MAUI Oscilloscopes**, including **DSO Device Drivers** and **Upgrade DSO Microcode**
 - **MAUI Browsers**
 - Optionally, select **SPARQ** or **WavePulser** if you wish to drive that instrument from the oscilloscope.



7. Click **Install**.
8. If you receive Windows security warnings, **trust** and **Install** the file.
9. If you see the Hardware Programmers screen, accept all code installations, then click the **closebox** *after* you see that programming has completed.
10. When installation is complete, choose **Reboot now** and click **Finish**.

Release Notes

Release Notes are provided for each new version. They can be found on the web page from which you downloaded the installer.


Note to QualiPHY/QualiPHY 2 Users

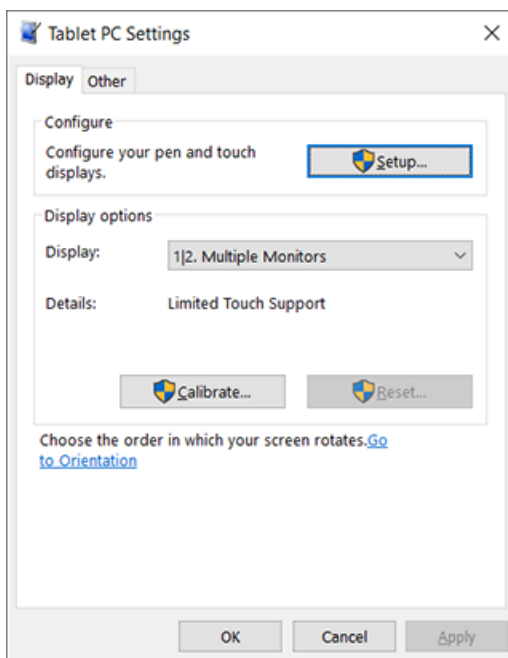
MAUI/MAUI Studio Pro and QualiPHY/QualiPHY 2 software versions must match to the second decimal to function properly. If you are upgrading your oscilloscope firmware or PC MAUI Studio Pro installation, upgrade your version of QualiPHY as soon as possible.

Windows 10 External Display Setup

The Windows 10 default is to treat any external monitor connected to a Windows 10 PC as the primary touch screen. On Windows 10 oscilloscopes with an external monitor attached, you will have to manually change the display settings so that the oscilloscope is recognized as a touch screen.

If the external monitor is touch screen enabled and you wish to use it along with the oscilloscope to control the oscilloscope application, you will need to repeat this procedure to also identify it as a touch screen.

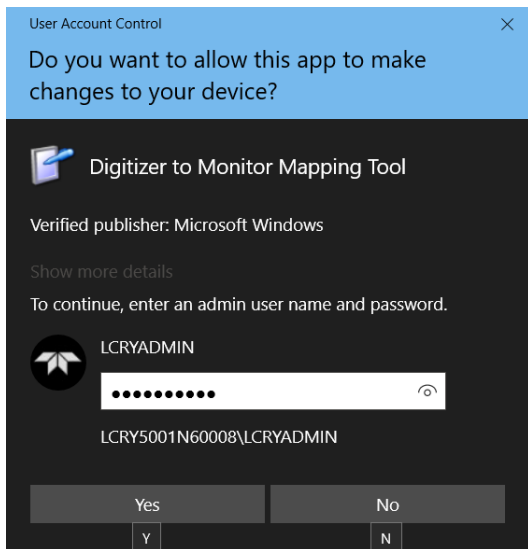
1. Follow manufacturer's instructions to connect your monitor to the oscilloscope.
2. Choose **File > Minimize** to display the Windows Desktop.
3. Choose **Start**  and in **Search** enter "**Tablet PC Setup**." You should see the Tablet PC Settings dialog.



If the monitor is *not* touch screen enabled, **Display 1|2 Multiple Monitors** is OK.

If the monitor *is* touch screen enabled, be sure **Display 1** (the oscilloscope) is selected.

4. Touch the **Setup** button.
5. When prompted, enter the **LCRYADMIN password** and touch **Yes**.



6. When you see the oscilloscope display turn white with the text "Touch this screen to identify it as the touch screen. . .", touch the oscilloscope display.
7. When you see "Press Enter to proceed to the next step to complete your configuration," press **Enter**.
8. If you wish to also configure the external display as a touch screen, repeat this procedure selecting the external monitor name from the Display field on the Tablet PC Setup dialog.

Windows 10 File Management

Due to the increased security of Windows 10, many more operations require Administrator permissions than did with previous versions of Windows. When doing any of the following from either the default LeCroyUser account, you will be asked to supply the current LCRYADMIN password:

- Installing third-party software and MAUI updates
- Accessing third-party applications or running an application as an administrator
- Admitting third-party applications to make changes to the MAUI application
- Using Device Manager and making changes within it (such as installing new device drivers)
- Moving, deleting or copying certain files
- Changing global settings, such as Date/Time (this also requires running MAUI with elevated permissions)

Oscilloscope System Recovery

Mid- and high-bandwidth Teledyne LeCroy oscilloscopes run on the 64-bit MAUI® software installed over a Microsoft Windows® platform. While the instrument is designed to operate reliably for many years, the loading or incomplete removal of additional Windows applications can cause problems with the stability of the operating system. Severe cases may require you to reload the base operating system and firmware.

For this purpose, Teledyne LeCroy provides a recovery application and a backup image. Windows 10 oscilloscopes utilize the Acronis True Image 2019 OEM recovery software with an F10 startup utility script that automates the recovery process. The entire process takes about 17 minutes to complete and is easy to perform.



Caution: This procedure will destroy all data on the C: drive. If your drive is accessible, first back up any files you may want to restore after recovering. Be prepared to reinstall third-party software.

Before Recovery...

Check if the oscilloscope was shipped with or without unique passwords shown on a label on the body of the oscilloscope.

The recovery procedure for oscilloscopes with unique passwords requires you to reset the unique Windows LeCroyUser and LCRYADMIN account passwords at the end of recovery.



Note: The passwords on the label can be reused at the end of recovery, or you can create new passwords.

Instruments shipped before unique passwords (~Q4 2024) were delivered with shared default passwords:

- User LeCroyUser password is lecroysevice (all lowercase)
- User LCRYADMIN password is SCOPEADMIN (all uppercase)



Note: For security reasons, we strongly recommend changing both accounts to unique passwords after recovery is complete. Use the standard Windows 10 networking tools.

Connect a keyboard and mouse to the oscilloscope before recovery. You will need to enter key commands.

After Recovery...

The recovery process restores a disk image of the software at the time of manufacture. It does not automatically update the Windows operating system, virus scan definition files, external device drivers, etc.



Note: On oscilloscopes shipped with unique passwords, MAUI firmware is restored to the last installed version after recovery.

After completing system recovery, we recommend that you reinstall/upgrade software to current revision levels. [Download the latest oscilloscope firmware](#) for your model. You will need to register an account to complete the firmware download.

User and calibration data stored on the D: drive are not overwritten during recovery. You do not need to restore them.

Recovering Oscilloscopes with Default Passwords




Note: On oscilloscopes with default passwords (no password label):
Local user LeCroyUser = lecroyservice
Administrator LCRYADMIN = SCOPEADMIN

Before You Start

- Find your Windows license key in case you need to re-activate Windows
- Connect a keyboard and mouse to the instrument.

Run Recovery Script

1. If still in the oscilloscope application, choose **File > Exit** to close and show the Windows desktop.
2. From the Windows  **Start menu**, choose **Restart**.



Note: You must be able to restart and enter the boot sequence to run recovery. If you cannot do this, return the oscilloscope to Teledyne LeCroy for recovery.

3. During the boot sequence, watch for the message "Starting Acronis Loader..." When you see the Acronis message, press the **F10 key**.




Note: Do not press F10 before you see "Starting Acronis Loader..." If a boot menu dialog appears, press Cancel or Esc.

4. When you see the Acronis window, select **Recover** and press **Enter**. It may take awhile for the license screen to appear.
5. Accept the Acronis license agreement.
6. Allow the recovery process to run. This may take several minutes.
7. When the MAUI Setup Wizard appears, enter password **SCOPEADMIN** and follow the installer prompts. If you see a message that Windows can't verify the publisher of the driver software, choose "Install this driver software anyway" and click Install.
8. Choose **Yes** to reboot the instrument at the conclusion of installation.


Check Windows Activation

Your Windows license may or may not need to be reactivated following recovery. Reactivation sends a digital license key stored with the recovery image to Microsoft via the Internet, so the instrument must be networked to do this. Have your Windows license key ready; it is listed on a sticker on the oscilloscope body.

To check activation status:

1. Choose **File > Exit** to close the oscilloscope application and show the Windows desktop.
2. From the Windows **Start menu**, choose  **Settings > Update & Security > Activation**.
3. The activation status appears at the top of the dialog. An Activate button appears if reactivation is required. Click the button and follow the Microsoft reactivation procedure.

Re-enable Windows Defender

1. From the **Windows Start** menu, hover over the  Teledyne LeCroy logo and select **User LCRYADMIN**. Enter the password **SCOPEADMIN**.
2. Once logged on as admin., search for the program **gpedit.msc** (Edit Group Policy).
3. Navigate to **Administrative Templates > Windows Components > Windows Defender**.
4. Select **Windows Defender** from the navigation pane so the settings appear at the right of the window.
5. From the settings pane, right-click on **Turn Off Windows Defender** and select **Edit**.
6. Select **Disable**. (By disabling "Turn Off," you turn on the software.)

Reset Serial Number

To apply option keys to the instrument in the future, you must restore the correct instrument serial number after recovering the hard drive. The number is found on the back panel product sticker or removable hard drive.


1. From the Windows **Start Menu**, choose **Control Panel > System**.
2. Scroll down to **Computer name, domain, and workgroup settings**, then click **Change Settings**.
3. On the System Properties dialog, click **Change** and enter the oscilloscope serial number in **Computer name**.
4. Click **OK** twice to return to the desktop.
5. Double-click the **StartDSO** desktop icon.

Recovering Oscilloscopes with Unique Passwords

Before You Start

- For optimal security, devise new unique passwords for LCRYADMIN and LeCroyUser accounts. Unique passwords at time of shipment are on a label on the body of the oscilloscope.
- Connect a keyboard and mouse to the instrument.

Run Recovery Script

1. If still in the oscilloscope application, choose **File > Exit** to close and show the Windows desktop.
2. From the Windows **Start menu** , choose **Restart**.



Note: You must be able to restart and enter the boot sequence to run recovery. If you cannot do this, return the oscilloscope to Teledyne LeCroy for recovery.

3. During the boot sequence, watch for the message "Starting Acronis Loader..." When you see the Acronis message, press the **F10** key.



Note: Do not press F10 before you see "Starting Acronis Loader..." If a boot menu dialog appears, press Cancel or Esc.

4. When you see the Acronis window, select **Recover** and press **Enter**. It may take awhile for the license screen to appear.
5. Accept the Acronis license agreement.
6. Allow the recovery process to run. This may take a few minutes to complete.

Reset Account Passwords

1. When you see the message "Password incorrect..." click **OK**.
2. From the bottom left of the screen, select the **LCRYADMIN account**, then enter password **ADMIN** (all uppercase). This puts you into an Administrator account so you can make the other necessary account changes.
3. When you see the message "User's password must be changed...", click **OK**.
4. At the next change password prompt, enter a unique **LCRYADMIN password** twice, then click **OK**. Click **OK** again to log in.




Tip: You can reuse the original unique passwords on the label or create new passwords.

5. On the desktop, right-click the **This PC** icon and select **Manage**.
6. Double-click on **Local Users and Groups**, then double-click the **Users** folder. You should see LCRYADMIN and LeCroyUser accounts.
7. Right-click on **LCRYADMIN** and select **Properties**.
8. Check **Password Never Expires**, then click **Apply** and **OK**.
9. Right-click on the **LeCroyUser** account and select **Set Password**. Proceed when prompted.
10. Enter the unique **LeCroyUser password** twice, click **OK**.
11. Right-click on **LeCroyUser** and select **Properties**.
12. Check **Password Never Expires**, then click **Apply** and **OK**.
13. **Close** the Computer Management dialog.

This concludes the password reset.

Set Up Auto Login

The oscilloscope normally runs from the local user account, LeCroyUser. Auto Login will enable you to boot into that account without having to enter a password. You will still need to enter the Administrator password to install firmware or change Windows settings.

1. Press the **Windows key**  + **R** on the keyboard.
2. Enter **netplwiz** and click **OK**.
3. While still in the LCRYADMIN account, check "Users must enter user name and password...". Click **Apply**.
4. Select the **LeCroyUser** account and *uncheck* "Users must enter user name and password...". Click **Apply**.

5. When prompted, enter the unique **LeCroyUser** password twice, then click **Apply**.
6. Click **OK** to accept all changes.

Reset Serial Number

To apply option keys to the instrument in the future, you must restore the correct instrument serial number after recovering the hard drive. The number is the found on the back panel product sticker or removable hard drive.

1. From the Windows **Start Menu**, choose **Control Panel > System + Security > System** .
2. Scroll down to **Computer name, domain, and workgroup settings**, then click **Change Settings**.
3. On the System Properties dialog, click **Change** and enter the oscilloscope serial number in **Computer name**.
4. Click **OK** once, then click **OK** again when prompted to reboot.

Returning a Product for Service

Contact your local Teledyne LeCroy service center for calibration or other service. If the product cannot be serviced on location, the service center will give you a **Return Material Authorization (RMA) code** and instruct you where to ship the product. All products returned to the factory must have an RMA.

Return shipments must be prepaid. Teledyne LeCroy cannot accept COD or Collect shipments. We recommend air-freighting. Insure the item you're returning for at least the replacement cost.

1. Remove all accessories from the instrument.
2. Label the instrument with:
 - The RMA
 - Name and address of the owner
 - Description of failure or requisite service
3. Pack the instrument in its original shipping box, or an equivalent carton with adequate padding to avoid damage in transit. Do not include the manual.
4. Mark the outside of the box with the shipping address given to you by Teledyne LeCroy. Be sure to add the following:
 - ATTN: *<RMA code assigned by Teledyne LeCroy>*
 - FRAGILE
5. **If returning a product to a different country:** contact Teledyne LeCroy Service for instructions on completing your import/export documents.

Extended warranty, calibration, and upgrade plans are available for purchase. Contact your Teledyne LeCroy sales representative to purchase a service plan.

For a complete list of Teledyne LeCroy offices by country, including our sales and distribution partners, visit:
teledynelecroy.com/support/contact

Technical Support

Live Support

Registered users can contact their local Teledyne LeCroy service center at the number listed on our website.

You can also submit Technical Support requests via the website at:

teledynelecroy.com/support/techhelp

Resources

Teledyne LeCroy publishes a free Technical Library on its website. Manuals, tutorials, application notes, white papers, and videos are available to help you get the most out of your Teledyne LeCroy products. Visit:

teledynelecroy.com/support/techlib

The Datasheet published on the product page contains the detailed product specifications.

Service Centers

For a complete list of offices by country, including our sales & distribution partners, visit:

teledynelecroy.com/support/contact

Teledyne LeCroy
700 Chestnut Ridge Road
Chestnut Ridge, NY, 10977, USA
teledynelecroy.com

Sales and Service:

Ph: 800-553-2769 / 845-425-2000
FAX: 845-578-5985
contact.corp@teledynelecroy.com

Support:

Ph: 800-553-2769
customersupport@teledynelecroy.com

Certifications

Teledyne LeCroy certifies compliance to the following standards as of the time of publication.

European Council



The instrument bears this mark to indicate it conforms to all applicable European Council standards. Please see the EC Declaration of Conformity document shipped with your product for current certifications.

EMC Directive

The instrument meets the intent of EC Directive 2014/30/EU for Electromagnetic Compatibility. Compliance was demonstrated to the following specifications as listed in the Official Journal of the European Communities:

EN IEC 61326-1:2021 EMC requirements for electrical equipment for measurement, control and laboratory use

EN IEC 61326-2-1:2021 Particular requirements for sensitive test and measurement equipment for EMC unprotected applications ^{1, 2, 3}

1 To ensure compliance with all applicable EMC standards, use high-quality shielded interface cables.

2 Emissions which exceed the levels required by this standard may occur when the instrument is connected to a test object.

3 This product is intended for use in nonresidential areas only. Use in residential areas may cause electromagnetic interference.

Low Voltage Directive

The instrument meets intent of EC Directive 2014/35/EU for Product Safety. Compliance was demonstrated to the following specifications as listed in the Official Journal of the European Communities:

EN 61010-1:2010+A1:2019 Safety requirements for electrical equipment for measurement, control and laboratory use—Part 1: General requirements

EN 61010-2:030:2021 Safety requirements for electrical equipment for measurement, control, and laboratory use—Part 2-030: Particular requirements for testing and measuring circuits

The design of the instrument has been verified to conform to the following limits:

Mains Supply Connector: Overvoltage Category II, instrument intended to be supplied from the building wiring at utilization points (socket outlets and similar)


Measuring Circuit Terminals: No rated measurement category. Terminals not intended to be connected directly to the mains supply.

Unit: Pollution Degree 2, operating environment where normally only dry, non-conductive pollution occurs. Temporary conductivity caused by condensation should be expected.

End-of-Life Handling/ WEEE



The instrument bears this mark to indicate that it complies with the applicable European Union requirements to Directives 2012/19/EU and 2013/56/EU on Waste Electrical and Electronic Equipment (WEEE) and Batteries.

 The instrument is subject to disposal and recycling regulations that vary by country and region. Many countries prohibit the disposal of waste electronic equipment in standard waste receptacles. For more information about proper disposal of your Teledyne LeCroy product, visit teledynelecroy.com/recycle.

Restriction of Hazardous Substances (RoHS)

Unless otherwise specified, all materials and processes are compliant with RoHS Directive 2011/65/EU in its entirety, inclusive of any further amendments or modifications of said Directive.

European Contact:*

Teledyne GmbH, European Division
Im Breitspiel 11c
D-69126 Heidelberg, Germany
Tel: + 49 6221 8270

United Kingdom



The instrument bears this mark to indicate conformity with health, safety, and environmental protection standards for products sold within Great Britain (England, Wales and Scotland). The design of the product has been verified to conform to the applicable harmonized standards and technical specifications, and with the relevant Union harmonization legislation.

Australia and New Zealand



The instrument bears this mark to indicate it complies with the EMC provision of the Australian Communication and Media Authority (ACMA) Radio Communications Act:

AS/NZS CISPR 11:2015, Radiated and Conducted Emissions, Group 1, Class A.

AUSTRALIA / NEW ZEALAND CONTACTS:*

RS Components Pty Ltd.
Suite 326 The Parade West
Kent Town, South Australia 5067

RS Components Ltd.
Unit 30 & 31 Warehouse World
761 Great South Road
Penrose, Auckland, New Zealand

* Visit teledynelecroy.com/support/contact for the latest contact information.

United States and Canada



The oscilloscope has been certified by Underwriters Laboratories (UL) to conform to the following safety standards and bears the UL/cUL Listing Mark:

UL 61010-1 Third Edition – Safety standard for electrical measuring and test equipment.

UL 61010-2-030 Ed. 2-2018 – Particular requirements for equipment having testing or measuring circuits.

CAN/CSA-C22.2 No. 61010-1-12 – Safety requirements for electrical equipment for measurement, control and laboratory use.

CAN/CSA-C22.2 No. 61010-2-030:18 – Particular requirements for equipment having testing or measuring circuits

China



Unless otherwise specified, all materials and processes are compliant with the latest requirements of China RoHS 2.

ISO Certification

Manufactured under an ISO 9000 Registered Quality Management System.

Intellectual Property

All patents pertaining to the HDO6000B can be found on our website at:

teledynelecroy.com/patents/

Index

A

acquisition

optimization 187

pre-processing 15, 32

sampling mode 39

settings 191

action toolbar 17

activating traces 20

altitude 2

analog

inputs 9

persistence 73

arbitrary function generator 196

at level measurements 87

attenuation 8

auto naming 181

auto save 166

auto zero 34

AUX connectors 11, 184

averaging 15, 32, 119-120

B

bandwidth

limiting 15, 31

BNC connectors 8

C

cable de-embedding 33

calibration 10, 184, 187, 208

channel 30

descriptor box 15

frequency 9

setup 31

cleaning 198

clock

external 43

reference 43

sample 43

color 192

persistence 73

compliance 210

cooling 2

copy function 120

coupling 8, 15, 31

cursor 79

controls 82

readout 16

custom measurements 87

D

date and time 185

DBI 39

de-embedding 9, 33

default setup 172, 198

degauss 34

delay 40, 191

post-trigger 41

pre-trigger 40

derated voltage 2

descriptor box 13, 15, 20

deskew 15, 32

dialogs 17

display 11, 69, 198

controls 69, 192

extended 11, 72

- grid 14, 69
- optimization 187
- persistence 73

E

- EC compliance 210
- email 178-179
- enhanced resolution 16, 32, 120
- enhanced sample rate 15, 32
- Ethernet 11
- extended display 11
- external monitor 11, 201
- external trigger 9

F

- FFT 132
- file browser 180
- file structure 180, 193, 202
- filtering 16
 - bandwidth 31
 - LabNotebook entries 180
 - measurements 93
 - noise 32, 120
- firmware 12, 199, 202
 - update 199
 - version 182

- Flashback Recall 173, 175
- foreground trace 20
- frequency 120
 - response 9, 132
- front panel 192

G

- gain 31, 191
- gating measurements 84

- GPIB 183
- grid 14, 46
 - auto grid 69
 - indicators 14
 - intensity 15, 70
 - style 69

H

- hard drive 193
- histograms 108, 135
 - WaveScan 148
- holdoff 56
- horizontal
 - controls 39

- humidity 2

I

- impedance 8
- import
 - .trc files 171
 - setup panels 172
- input impedance 8
- inputs
 - analog 9
- intensity
 - grid 70
- interfaces 9
 - ProBus 8
- interleaving 39
- interpolation 32, 134
- inversion 16, 32
- IP address 10, 183

L

- labelling traces 22, 174

LabNotebook 13, 173-174

 recall 175

 save 173, 178

language selection 18

logs

 remote control event 183

LXI 183

M

markers 86

mask testing 149

math 114, 116

 descriptor box 16

 function setup 114

 graphing 115

 on parameters 103

 operators 114

measurements 83, 100-101

 cursors 79

 custom 87

 filtering 93

 gating 84

 graphing 108, 111-112

 level 87

 markers 86

 pass/fail testing 149, 151

 processing web 105

 readout 102

 statistics 84

measurements; status 102

measuring terminals 2

memory 141-142, 161, 163

 descriptor box 16

memory length 41

multi-grid display 14

multi-stage triggers 54

multi-zoom 75, 78

N

noise 16

O

offset 191

operating environment 2

optimization 187

options 12, 186

P

parameter compare 149, 151

parameter math 103

pass/fail testing 149, 151-152

passwords 199, 202

pattern trigger 52

persistence 73

 histogram 135

 trace styles 73

 WaveScan 148

position

 cursors 7

 trace 77

post-trigger delay 41

power

 ratings 2

 standby 10

preferences 187

pre-processing 15

pre-trigger delay 40

printing 11, 178, 192

probes 9

 settings 34

 tip selection 34

ProBus interface 8

processing web editor 105

Q

Q-Scape display 14, 69

qualified measurements 93

qualified trigger 54

R

real-time sampling mode 39

recall

 LabNotebooks 175

reference clock 11, 43

remote control 11, 183, 192

reports 173, 177

rescaling 32, 94, 137

restart/reboot 198

restore

 waveforms 142

returns 208

RH 2

RIS sampling mode 39

rise and fall time 101

RoHS 211

roll sampling mode 40

S

sample clock 11, 43

sample points 41, 140

sample rate 39, 41

sampling mode 39

 real-time 39

 RIS 39

 roll 40

 sequence 40

save

 data 173

 setup panels 173

 waveforms 141

screen capture 165, 178

search 143

sequence sampling mode 40, 70

serial triggers 192

service 208-209

setup panels 163, 172-173

sin x 15, 32

software assisted trigger 66

software options 12, 186

sound 187

sparse function 140

support 208-209

system

 hibernate 10

 on/off 10

 status 182

 timestamp 185

T

tables 164

 auto save 166

TCP/IP 11

technical support 208-209

- temperature 2
- third-party software 202
- timebase 39, 191
 - clock 43
 - controls 39
 - descriptor box 16
- top and base 100
- touch screen 11, 13
 - calibration 199
 - language 18
- traces
 - 3D 73
 - activating 19
 - color 192
 - context menu 16
 - copy 120, 141
 - descriptor boxes 15
 - label 22, 86, 173-174
 - line style 70
 - persistence 73
 - recall 171, 173
 - save 161, 173
 - turn on/off 19
- track 112-113
- TRC files 141
- trend 111, 113
- trigger 46
 - automating 67
 - controls 46, 48, 56
 - counter 56, 191
 - delay 40
 - descriptor box 16
 - holdoff 56
 - software assisted 66
 - time 56
- TriggerScan 67
- U**
 - UL compliance 211
 - undo 13
 - units 32, 94, 137
 - USBTMC 11, 183
 - user passwords 199, 202
 - utilities 182
- V**
 - vertical 30
 - controls 31
 - offset 31
 - resolution 120
 - sensitivity 30-31
- W**
 - waveform files 141, 162
 - auto save 166
 - recall 171
 - WaveScan 143
 - WaveSource 196
 - WaveStudio 192
 - Windows
 - networking 10
 - power settings 10
 - recovery 203
 - Windows 10 198-199, 201-202
- X**
 - XY plots 70

Z

zoom 28, 75

controls 77, 192

descriptor box 16

multi-zoom 75

undo 13



700 Chestnut Ridge Road
Chestnut Ridge, NY 10977
USA

teledynelecroy.com